ANATOMY OF THE HUMAN BODY: From Cells to Systems

ANATOMY OF THE HUMAN BODY:

From Cells to Systems

A Comprehensive Guide for Paramedical and Allied Health Students

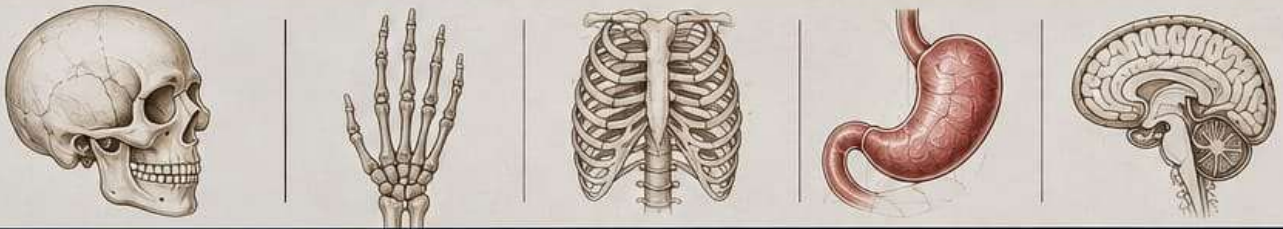


Editor in Chief

Dr. Oly Banerjee

Authors

1. Mr. Wasim Firoz Molla
2. Ms. Puja Porel
3. Mr. Bikrom Maity
4. Dr. Puja Roy



ISBN Number : 978-93-5679-869-4

ANATOMY

OF THE

HUMAN BODY:

From Cells to Systems

A Comprehensive Guide for Paramedical and Allied Health Students

Editor in Chief -

Dr. Oly Banerjee

Authors -

1. Mr. Wasim Firoz Molla

2. Ms. Puja Porel

3. Mr. Bikrom Maity

4. Dr. Puja Roy

ISBN Number : 978-93-5679-869-4

CONTENTS

Table of Contents (Chapter 1 to Chapter 13)	Pages
➢ Chapter 1 : Introduction to Human Anatomy and Anatomical Terminology (Ms. Puja Porel)	➢ 01 - 28
➢ Chapter 2 : Cells and Tissues : Building Blocks of the Human Body (Mr. Abhinaba Gupta)	➢ 29 - 44
➢ Chapter 3 : The Integumentary System : Skin and Its Appendages (Ms. Atrayee Nandy)	➢ 45 - 57
➢ Chapter 4 : The Skeletal System : Framework of the Human Body (Dr. Rajen Dey)	➢ 58 - 83
➢ Chapter 5 : The Muscular System : Structure and Movement (Mr. Bikrom Maity)	➢ 84 - 103
➢ Chapter 6 : The Cardiovascular System : Heart and Blood Vessels (Dr. Oly Banerjee)	➢ 104 - 127
➢ Chapter 7 : The Lymphatic and Immune System (Dr. Barnini Bhattacharjee)	➢ 128 - 139
➢ Chapter 8 : The Respiratory System : Anatomy of Breathing (Mr. Wasim Firoz Molla)	➢ 140 - 160
➢ Chapter 9 : The Digestive System : From Mouth to Intestine (Mr. Manojit Bysack)	➢ 161 - 187
➢ Chapter 10 : The Urinary System : Kidneys and Urinary Tract (Mr. Soumadip Sur)	➢ 188 - 215
➢ Chapter 11 : The Nervous System and Special Senses (Mr. Ankur Adak)	➢ 216 - 231
➢ Chapter 12 : The Endocrine System : Hormone-Producing Organs (Dr. Priya Nandy)	➢ 232 – 251
➢ Chapter 13 : The Reproductive System : Male and Female Anatomy (Dr. Puja Roy)	➢ 252 - 274

Table Of Contents

Chapter 1 : Introduction to Human Anatomy and Anatomical Terminology

1.1 Introduction to human anatomy **03**

1.2 Branches and methods of studying anatomy **04**

1.3 Levels of structural organization **05**

1.4 Anatomical position and body orientation **11**

1.5 Directional and relational terminology **12**

1.6 Regions of the human body **14**

1.7 Body planes sections and axes **15**

1.8 Body cavities and membranes **18**

1.9 Abdominal quadrants and nine regions **20**

1.10 Terminology of movement **22**

1.11 Anatomical language in imaging and laboratory practice **25**

1.12 Chapter summary and key terms **27**

References **28**

Chapter 2 : Cells and Tissues : Building Blocks of the Human Body

2.1 Introduction **31**

2.2 Cellular Structure and Organelles **33**

2.3 Epithelial, Connective, Muscle and Nervous Tissues **34**

2.4 Cell Communication, Junctions and Extracellular Matrix **37**

2.5. Cell Cycle, Differentiation, Death and Tissue Repair **38**

2.6 Clinical Significance of Cells and Tissues **40**

2.7 Summary **40**

2.8 Conclusion **41**

References **43**

Chapter 3 : The Integumentary System : Skin and Its Appendages

3.1 Introduction **48**

3.2 Functions of the Skin **48**

3.3 Parts of the Skin **49**

3.4 Cleavage Lines (Lines of Langer) **51**

3.5 Skin Creases **51**

3.6 Appendages of the Skin **51**

3.7 Nerve Supply of the Skin **52**

3.8 Clinical Importance of the Skin **53**

3.9 The Mammary Gland **53**

3.10 Areola and Nipple **53**

3.11 Architecture of the Mammary Gland **53**

3.12 Nerve and Hormonal Control **54**

3.13 Blood Supply **54**

3.14 Lymphatic Drainage **55**

3.15 Development of the Mammary Gland **55**

3.16 Anomalies of Development **56**

3.17 Clinical Importance of the Mammary Gland **56**

3.18 Summary **56**

Reference **57**

Chapter 4 : The Skeletal System : Framework of the Human Body

4.1 Introduction and anatomical reasoning **59**

4.2 Organisation and classification of the skeleton **60**

4.3 Gross architecture of a bone **62**

4.4 Microscopic architecture and material organization **63**

4.5 Vascular supply and attachment interfaces **64**

4.6 Development and growth **65**

4.7 Skull and craniofacial framework **66**

4.8 Vertebral column and intervertebral connections **67**

4.9 Thoracic cage **69**

4.10 Pectoral girdle and humerus **70**

4.11 Forearm, wrist and hand **71**

4.12 Pelvic girdle and pelvic cavity **72**

4.13 Femur, patella and knee framework **73**

4.14 Leg, ankle and foot **74**

4.15 Joints and articular tissues **75**

4.16 Limited physiological foundations **77**

4.17 Repair, ageing and structural failure **78**

4.18 Surface anatomy, imaging and laboratory relevance **79**

4.19 Critical perspectives and future directions **79**

4.20 Summary and key points **80**

References **81**

Chapter 5 : The Muscular System : Structure and Movement

5.1 Introduction **86**

5.2 Types of muscle tissue **87**

5.3 Organisation of skeletal muscle **89**

5.4 How skeletal muscle contracts **92**

5.5 Force control and muscle energetics **93**

5.6 Muscle architecture and movement **95**

5.7 Major skeletal muscles by region **97**

5.8 Adaptation and clinical correlations **99**

5.9 Chapter summary and key terms **101**

References **103**

Chapter 6 : The Cardiovascular System : Heart and Blood Vessels

6. Introduction **105**

6.1. Position, Orientation and External Morphology of the Heart **106**

6.2. Pericardium and Layers of the Cardiac Wall **107**

6.3. Chambers, Septa and Internal Landmarks **109**

6.4. Cardiac Valves and Fibrous Skeleton **110**

6.5. Coronary Circulation and Cardiac Veins **112**

6.6. Conducting System and Cardiac Innervation **114**

6.7. Classification and Histological Structure of Blood Vessels **115**

6.8. Arteries, Arterioles and the Microcirculation **116**

6.9. Veins, Venules and Venous Return **118**

6.10. Major Systemic and Pulmonary Vessels **119**

6.11. Fetal Circulation and Postnatal Remnants **121**

6.12. Applied Anatomy and Relevance to Medical Laboratory Technology **122**

6.13. Summary **124**

References **125**

Chapter 7 : The Lymphatic and Immune System

7.1 Introduction **130**

7.2 Anatomy of the Lymphatic System **130**

7.3 Mechanics of Fluid Homeostasis **132**

7.4 Overview of the Immune System **132**

7.5 Innate Immunity: The First and Second Lines of Defense **133**

7.6 Adaptive Immunity: Highly Specific Defense **134**

7.7 Humoral Immunity: B Cells and Antibodies **135**

7.8 Cellular Immunity: T Cells and Cell-Mediated Defense **136**

7.9 Immunological Memory and Clinical Applications **137**

7.10 Clinical Correlations and Homeostatic Imbalances **137**

7.11 Summary **138**

References **139**

Chapter 8 : The Respiratory System : Anatomy of Breathing

8.1 Introduction and overview **142**

8.2 Nose and nasal cavity **143**

8.3 Paranasal sinuses and pharynx **144**

8.4 Larynx and the protected airway **145**

8.5 Trachea and bronchial tree **146**

8.6 Gross anatomy of the lungs **147**

8.7 Bronchopulmonary segments and surface anatomy **149**

8.8 Pleura and pleural cavities **150**

8.9 Microscopic anatomy of the respiratory tract **151**

8.10 Alveoli and the blood air barrier **152**

8.11 Diffusion and the pulmonary circulation **153**

8.12 Lymphatics innervation and airway defence **154**

8.13 Thoracic wall diaphragm and breathing **156**

8.14 Development and changes across life **157**

8.15 Applied anatomy and chapter synthesis **158**

References **159**

Chapter 9 : The Digestive System : From Mouth to Intestine

9.1. Introduction **162**

9.2. Developmental organization and adult topology **163**

9.3. The common wall plan **164**

9.4. Oral cavity and its boundaries **165**

9.5. Teeth, tongue and salivary glands **167**

9.6. Pharynx and the swallowing junction **168**

9.7. Esophagus and gastroesophageal junction **168**

9.8. Stomach anatomy **169**

9.9. Peritoneum mesentery and abdominal spaces **171**

9.10. Duodenum **172**

9.11. Jejunum, ileum and the mesenteric root **173**

9.12. Intestinal mucosa and the absorptive unit **174**

9.13. Cecum, appendix and colon **176**

9.14. Rectum, anal canal and continence anatomy **177**

9.15. Accessory organs at the duodenal interface **178**

9.16. Arteries, veins and lymphatic routes **180**

9.17. Enteric and autonomic innervation **181**

9.18. Mucosal defense and limited physiological integration **182**

9.19. Summary **183**

References **183**

Chapter 10 : The Urinary System : Kidneys and Urinary Tract

10.1. Introduction **190**

10.2. Components of the urinary system **190**

10.3. Kidneys **192**

10.4. External anatomy of the kidney **192**

10.5. Renal hilum **193**

10.6. Coverings of the kidney **193**

10.7. Internal structure of the kidney **193**

10.8. Renal calyces and renal pelvis **194**

10.9. Nephron: functional unit of the kidney **195**

10.10. Renal corpuscle **196**

10.11. Glomerular filtration barrier **197**

10.12. Proximal convoluted tubule **197**

10.13. Loop of henle **198**

10.14. Distal convoluted tubule **198**

10.15. Collecting duct system **198**

10.16. Types of nephrons **199**

10.17. Blood supply of the kidney **199**

10.18. Efferent arterioles and peritubular capillaries **199**

10.19. Renal venous drainage **200**

10.20. Nerve supply of the kidney **200**

10.21. Lymphatic drainage **200**

10.22. Juxtaglomerular apparatus **200**

10.23. Renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system **201**

10.24. Ureters **201**

10.25. Narrowings of the ureter **202**

10.26. Histology of the ureter **202**

10.27. Urinary bladder **202**

10.28. Parts of the urinary bladder **203**

10.29. Detrusor muscle **203**

10.30. Urethra **203**

10.31. Histology of the urinary tract **204**

10.32. Urine formation **204**

10.33. Glomerular filtration rate **205**

10.34. Regulation of water balance **205**

10.35. Regulation of electrolytes **205**

10.36. Acid–base regulation **206**

10.37. Endocrine functions of the kidney **206**

10.38. Concentration of urine **207**

10.39. Micturition **207**

10.40. Development of the urinary system **207**

10.41. Ascent of the kidneys **208**

10.42. Clinical anatomy of the urinary system **208**

10.43. Renal calculi **209**

10.44. Urinary tract infections **209**

10.45. Hydronephrosis **210**

10.46. Acute kidney injury **210**

10.47. Chronic kidney disease **210**

10.48. Polycystic kidney disease **211**

10.49. Renal transplantation and applied anatomy **211**

10.50. Clinical importance of urinalysis **211**

10.51. Important anatomical relationships **212**

10.52. Summary of urine flow **212**

10.53. Structure–function relationship **213**

10.54. Conclusion **213**

References **213**

Chapter 11 : The Nervous System and Special Senses

11.1 Abstract **217**

11.2 Introduction to the Nervous System **217**

11.3 Scope and Importance of the Nervous System **218**

11.4 Organization of the Nervous System **219**

11.5 Central Nervous System **219**

11.6 Peripheral Nervous System **220**

11.7 Autonomic Nervous System **222**

11.8 Neurons and Neuroglia **222**

11.9 Nerve Impulse and Synaptic Transmission **223**

11.10 Meninges and Cerebrospinal Fluid **223**

11.11 Major Parts of the Brain **224**

11.12 Spinal Cord and Reflex Activity **226**

11.13 Special Senses: An Introduction **226**

11.14 Eye and Vision **226**

11.15 Ear and Hearing **227**

11.16 Vestibular Apparatus and Balance **227**

11.17 Smell and Olfaction **228**

11.18 Taste and Gustation **228**

11.19 Receptors and Sensory Pathways **229**

11.20 Clinical Importance and Laboratory Diagnosis **229**

11.21 Conclusion **230**

References **230**

Chapter 12 : The Endocrine System : Hormone-Producing Organs

12.1 Introduction to the Endocrine Architecture **234**

12.2 The Hypothalamo-Hypophyseal Complex **235**

12.3 The Epithalamic and Cervical Endocrine Organs **238**

12.4 Thoracic and Abdominal Endocrine Glands **239**

12.5 The Adrenal (Suprarenal) Glands **241**

12.6 Gonadal and Peripheral Endocrine Structures **244**

12.7 Applied and Clinical Anatomy for Medical Laboratory Technology **246**

12.8 Conclusion **247**

References **247**

Chapter 13 : The Reproductive System : Male and Female Anatomy

13.1 Introduction **254**

13.2 Male reproductive anatomy **255**

13.3 Sperm formation and male reproductive function **260**

13.4 Female internal reproductive organs **262**

13.5 External genitalia perineum and mammary glands **267**

13.6 Female reproductive function and developmental anatomy **269**

13.7 Comparative anatomy and clinical correlations **272**

13.8 Chapter summary and key terms **273**

References **274**

CONTENT

- Chapter 1 –

Introduction to Human Anatomy and Anatomical Terminology

1.1 Introduction to human anatomy.....03
1.1.1 Learning objectives
1.1.2 Scope and relevance to health sciences
1.2 Branches and methods of studying anatomy……..….04
1.2.1 Gross anatomy and regional anatomy
1.2.2 Systemic surface and living anatomy
1.2.3 Microscopic anatomy and histology
1.2.4 Developmental embryological and clinical anatomy
1.2.5 Anatomical variation and responsible study
1.3 Levels of structural organization…….05
1.3.1 Chemical cellular and tissue levels
1.3.2 Four basic tissue types
1.3.3 Organs systems and the organism
1.3.4 Major organ systems
1.3.5 Homeostasis and structural integration
1.4 Anatomical position and body orientation.....11
1.4.1 Standard anatomical position
1.4.2 Right left and the observer
1.4.3 Supine prone and lateral positions
1.5 Directional and relational terminology……..…12
1.5.1 Superior inferior anterior and posterior
1.5.2 Medial lateral and intermediate
1.5.3 Proximal distal superficial and deep
1.5.4 Internal external ipsilateral and contralateral
1.6 Regions of the human body…….14
1.6.1 Axial and appendicular divisions
1.6.2 Head neck and trunk regions
1.6.3 Upper and lower limb regions

1.7 Body planes sections and axes…….……15
1.7.1 Median sagittal and parasagittal planes
1.7.2 Coronal transverse and oblique planes
1.7.3 Longitudinal sections and three-dimensional interpretation
1.7.4 Axes and their relationship to movement
1.8 Body cavities and membranes……..…18
1.8.1 Posterior and anterior body cavities
1.8.2 Thoracic cavity and mediastinum
1.8.3 Abdominal pelvic and retroperitoneal relationships
1.8.4 Serous membranes and potential spaces
1.8.5 Other membranes and specialised spaces
1.9 Abdominal quadrants and nine regions……..20
1.9.1 Four abdominal quadrants
1.9.2 Nine abdominal regions
1.9.3 Applying surface maps carefully
1.10 Terminology of movement……..22
1.10.1 Flexion extension and lateral flexion
1.10.2 Abduction adduction and circumduction
1.10.3 Medial and lateral rotation
1.10.4 Pronation and supination
1.10.5 Movements of the foot jaw and thumb
1.11 Anatomical language in imaging and laboratory practice…….25
1.11.1 Imaging methods and orientation
1.11.2 Describing a specimen site
1.11.3 Common errors and precise communication
1.12 Chapter summary and key terms……....27
1.12.1 Chapter summary
1.12.2 Key terms
References.....28

CHAPTER 1

Introduction to Human Anatomy and Anatomical Terminology

Ms. Puja Porel

Department of Medical Laboratory Technology, School of Allied Health Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Barasat Rd, Telinipara, Malir Math, Bara Kanthalia, West Bengal 700121, India

1.1 Introduction to human anatomy

Human anatomy is the study of the structure of the human body and the relationships among its parts. It describes structures at scales ranging from cells and tissues to organs, systems and the whole person. Anatomy provides the spatial framework needed to understand normal function, recognise structural abnormalities and communicate observations accurately in healthcare. Its terminology allows a finding to be described without depending on everyday expressions such as “above here” or “on this side”. [1, 6]

Physiology explains how living structures function. Although anatomy and physiology can be studied separately, their meanings become clearer when they are connected. The thin wall of a pulmonary alveolus supports gas exchange, the layered wall of an artery withstands pressure, and the arrangement of a joint influences its movements. Structure establishes possibilities and constraints, while function helps explain why a particular organisation is useful. [6, 10]

1.1.1 Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, the learner should be able to describe the branches of anatomy and levels of body organisation; identify the major organ systems; demonstrate anatomical position; use directional and regional terms correctly; distinguish body planes and sections; locate the principal body cavities; describe common movements; and apply anatomical terminology to images, specimens and clinical communication.

1.1.2 Scope and relevance to health sciences

For students of medical laboratory technology, anatomy connects a specimen with the organ, tissue or compartment from which it originated. Blood, cerebrospinal fluid, pleural fluid and tissue biopsies represent different anatomical sources and cannot be described interchangeably. An accurate site description supports appropriate specimen handling, test

selection and interpretation. The same principles help students understand diagrams, clinical notes and pathology reports. [8, 9]

Anatomy also provides a common language for physicians, nurses, therapists, radiographers and laboratory personnel. A statement such as “a swelling on the medial aspect of the right forearm” identifies a region and a side far more precisely than “a swelling inside the arm”. Precision reduces ambiguity, especially when information is passed between people who are not examining the patient together. [2, 3]

1.2 Branches and methods of studying anatomy

1.2.1 Gross anatomy and regional anatomy

Gross or macroscopic anatomy concerns structures visible without a microscope. It includes bones, muscles, nerves, vessels and organs, together with their positions and relationships. Regional anatomy studies all the structures in one body region, such as the neck, thorax or upper limb. This approach is especially useful when several systems occupy a small space and must be considered together. [1, 2]

For example, the cubital fossa at the front of the elbow contains important vessels, nerves and a tendon. Its meaning cannot be understood from the venous system alone. Regional study places these structures within boundaries formed by muscles and fascia and relates them to the overlying skin. A region is therefore a three-dimensional arrangement rather than merely an area drawn on the surface. [2, 3]

1.2.2 Systemic surface and living anatomy

Systemic anatomy follows an organ system throughout the body. A study of the cardiovascular system traces the heart and blood vessels, whereas a study of the nervous system follows central and peripheral neural structures. Systemic and regional approaches complement each other: one emphasises continuity of a system, and the other emphasises local relationships among several systems. [4, 6]

Surface anatomy relates visible or palpable landmarks to deeper structures. Living anatomy considers these relationships in a living person, where posture, movement, breathing and tissue tone influence what can be observed. A bony prominence may provide a useful landmark, but the position of a soft organ may change with respiration or filling. Surface landmarks should therefore be interpreted with the individual's position and normal variation in mind. [2, 14]

1.2.3 Microscopic anatomy and histology

Microscopic anatomy examines structures too small to resolve adequately with the unaided eye. Cytology focuses on cells, while histology studies tissues and their organisation within

organs. A histological section is a thin sample through a three-dimensional structure; its appearance depends on the plane of section, tissue preparation and staining method. [8, 9]

A hollow tube cut transversely may appear circular, while the same tube cut obliquely appears elliptical and a longitudinal section shows a channel. Fixation, dehydration and sectioning can introduce shrinkage, folds or tears. Recognising these effects helps distinguish preparation artefacts from normal anatomy or disease. Microscopic interpretation is strongest when the organ of origin and orientation of the tissue are known. [8, 9]

1.2.4 Developmental embryological and clinical anatomy

Developmental anatomy examines structural changes across the lifespan. Embryology focuses on development before birth and explains how adult structures arise from earlier tissues. It helps account for relationships that may otherwise seem unusual, such as the abdominal origin of the testicular blood vessels despite the adult scrotal position of the testes. [12, 13]

Clinical or applied anatomy uses structural knowledge to explain examination findings, imaging appearances, injuries and procedures. It should begin with normal relationships before considering disease. Development, function and clinical application are connected: a congenital variation may change the course of a vessel, and an injury may affect neighbouring nerves because they occupy the same anatomical compartment. [2, 3]

1.2.5 Anatomical variation and responsible study

Variation is a normal feature of human anatomy. People differ in body proportions, vessel branching, muscle attachments and the shape or position of organs. Age, biological development, body composition and previous surgery can further alter appearances. A diagram usually presents a typical arrangement and should not be treated as a photograph of every individual. [1, 2]

Anatomical study requires respect for donors, patients and human material. Cadaveric dissection and specimen handling must follow institutional requirements for consent, dignity, identification and safe practice. Images or specimens should be described objectively, with appropriate protection of personal information. Respectful study is compatible with precise scientific observation and is part of professional anatomical education. [2, 14]

1.3 Levels of structural organisation

1.3.1 Chemical cellular and tissue levels

The body is organised through interacting levels. At the chemical level, atoms combine into molecules such as water, proteins, lipids and nucleic acids. These molecules form cellular components. A cell is the basic structural and functional unit of living tissue, maintaining a

boundary, processing information and participating in metabolism. Different cell types specialise in functions such as contraction, secretion, conduction or transport. [6, 7]

A tissue consists of cells and their associated extracellular material organised for related functions. The extracellular matrix is especially prominent in connective tissues and can contain fibres, fluid or mineralised material. Tissue function depends both on individual cells and on their arrangement. An epithelial sheet, a bundle of muscle fibres and a branching neuronal network illustrate different forms of organisation. [8, 9]

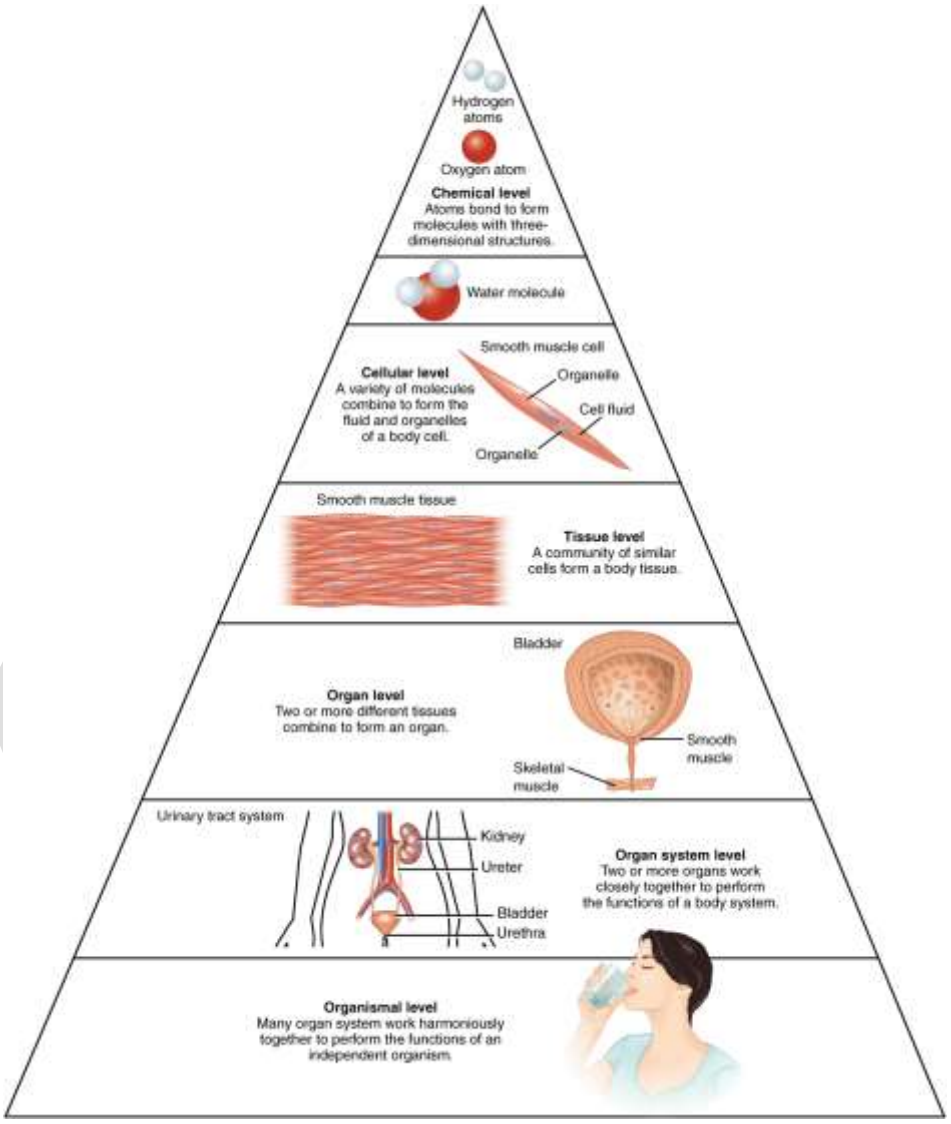


Figure 1.1. Levels of structural organisation from chemical components to the whole organism

1.3.2 Four basic tissue types

Epithelial tissue covers surfaces, lines passages and forms glands. Its cells are closely arranged and rest on a basement membrane. Connective tissue supports, binds and protects

structures and includes loose connective tissue, adipose tissue, cartilage, bone and blood. Muscle tissue develops force through contraction. Nervous tissue receives, processes and transmits information through neurons and supporting glial cells. [8, 9]

These categories describe tissues, not whole organs. A blood vessel includes an endothelial epithelial lining, connective tissue and, in many vessels, smooth muscle. The stomach contains epithelial glands, connective-tissue layers, smooth muscle and nerves. Identifying the tissue components of an organ explains how several functions are combined within one structure. [8, 9]

Table 1.1 Four basic tissue types [8, 9]

Tissue	Key structural feature	Representative role
Epithelial	Closely arranged cells on a basement membrane	Covering, absorption and secretion
Connective	Cells within an extracellular matrix	Support, binding, storage and transport
Muscle	Elongated cells with contractile proteins	Force and movement
Nervous	Neurons with supporting glia	Communication and integration

1.3.3 Organs systems and the organism

An organ is a recognisable structure composed of more than one tissue type that performs integrated functions. The heart, kidney, skin and liver are examples. An organ system is a group of organs whose activities contribute to a broad function, such as digestion or circulation. At the organism level, these systems interact to sustain the living person. [6, 7]

System boundaries are useful for study but are not absolute barriers. The pancreas has both digestive and endocrine functions. Bone supports the body, stores minerals and contains marrow involved in blood-cell formation. A single organ can therefore contribute to several physiological processes, and a disturbance in one system can influence many others. [6, 10]

1.3.4 Major organ systems

The integumentary system forms the external protective covering. Skeletal and muscular systems support posture and movement. Nervous and endocrine systems coordinate activity by different forms of signalling. Cardiovascular and lymphatic systems distribute fluids and participate in exchange and defence. Respiratory, digestive and urinary systems exchange

materials with the external environment, while reproductive organs support the production of offspring. [6, 7]

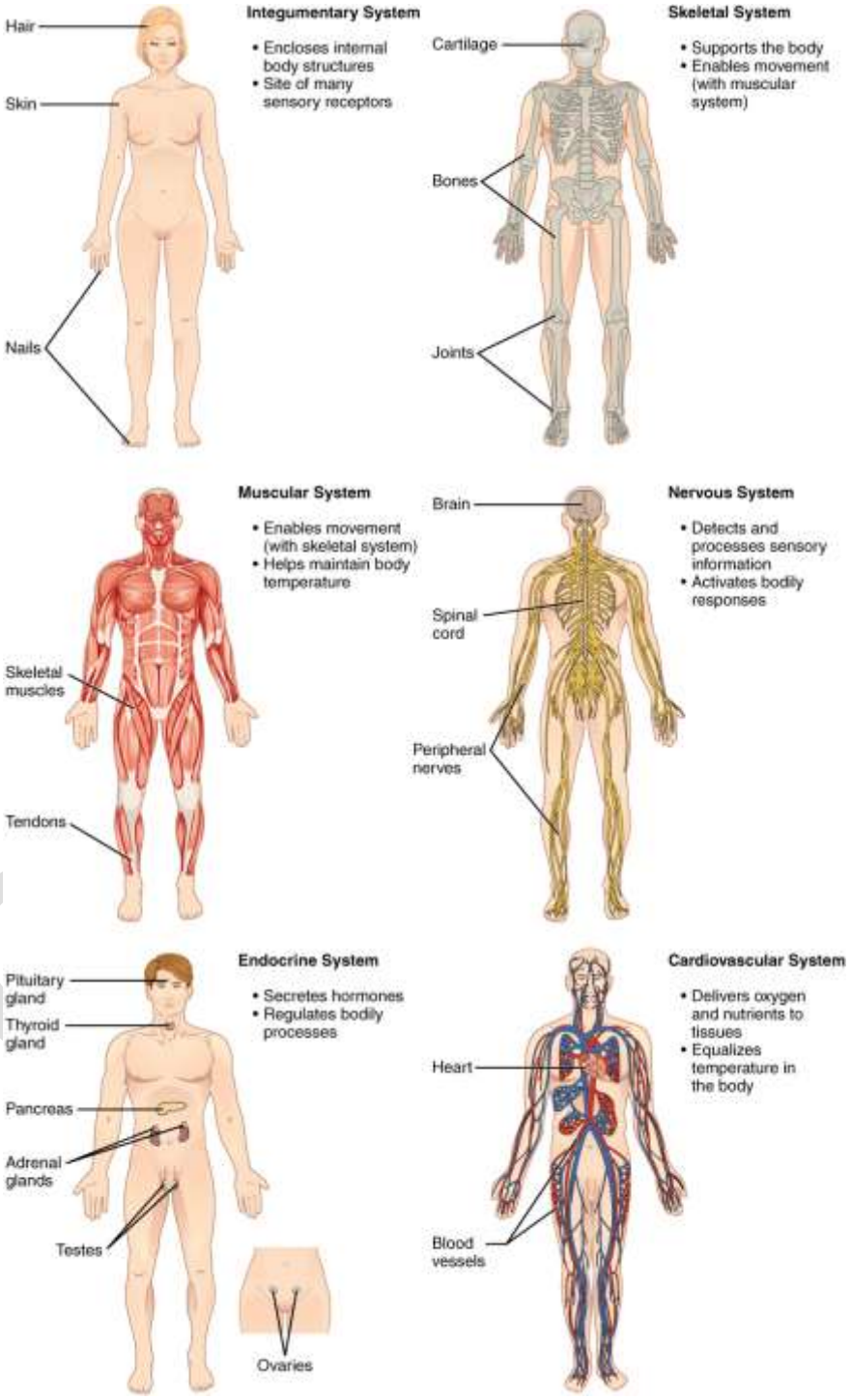


Figure 1.2. Major organ systems and representative organs, first group

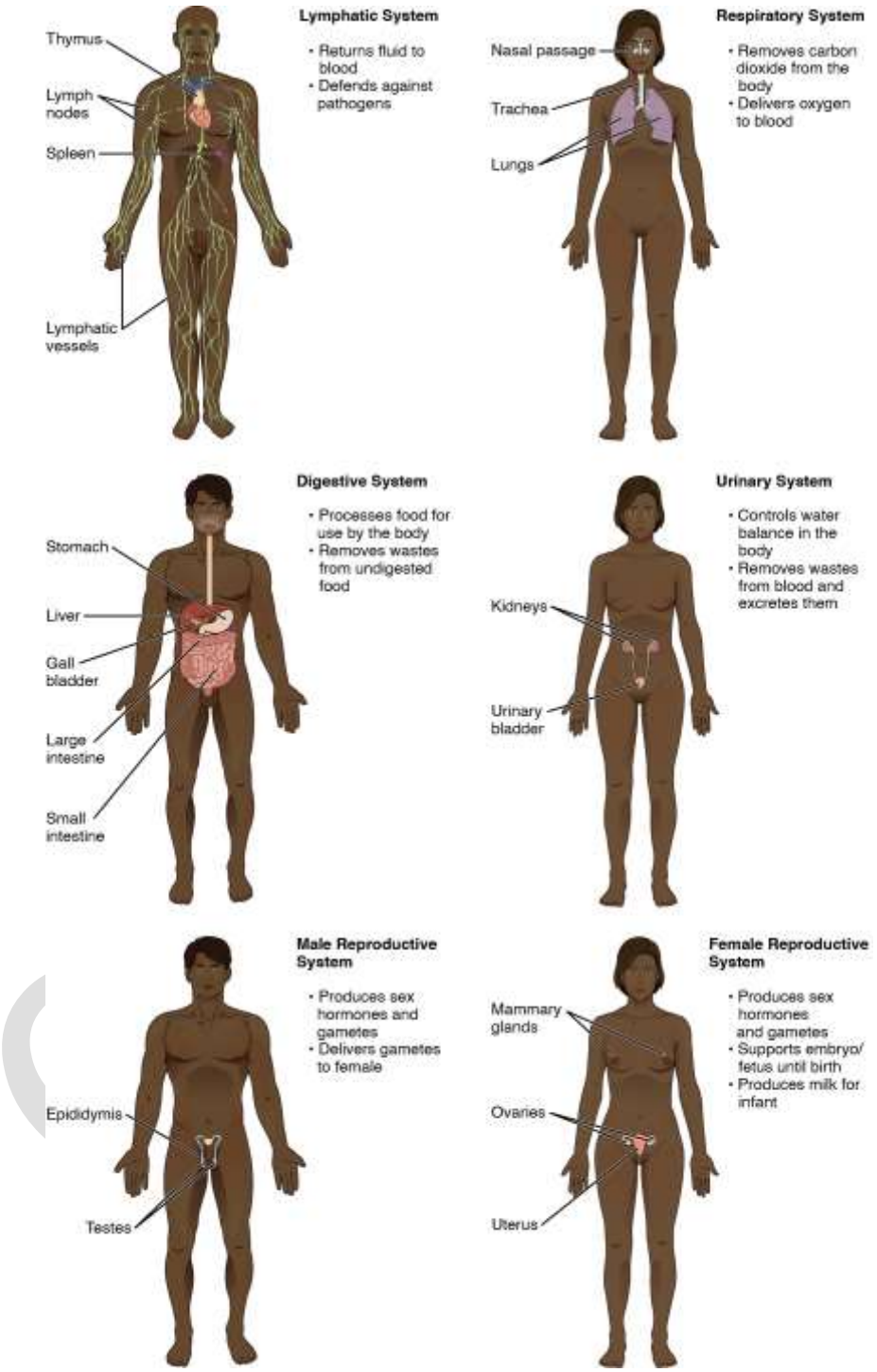


Figure 1.3. Major organ systems and representative organs, second group

Table 1.2 Major organ systems [6, 7]

System	Representative structures	Principal roles
Integumentary	Skin, hair, nails and skin glands	Protection, sensation and temperature regulation

System	Representative structures	Principal roles
Skeletal	Bones, cartilage and ligaments	Support, protection and mineral storage
Muscular	Skeletal muscles and tendons	Movement, posture and heat production
Nervous	Brain, spinal cord, nerves and receptors	Rapid signalling and coordination
Endocrine	Pituitary, thyroid, adrenals and other endocrine tissues	Hormonal regulation
Cardiovascular	Heart and blood vessels	Distribution of blood and transported substances
Lymphatic and immune	Lymph vessels, nodes, thymus and spleen	Fluid return and immune defence
Respiratory	Airways and lungs	Gas exchange and contribution to acid–base balance
Digestive	Alimentary canal, liver and pancreas	Digestion and nutrient absorption
Urinary	Kidneys, ureters, bladder and urethra	Excretion and fluid regulation
Reproductive	Gonads, ducts and accessory reproductive organs	Gamete production and reproduction

1.3.5 Homeostasis and structural integration

Homeostasis is the regulated maintenance of internal conditions within ranges compatible with function. It does not mean that every variable remains perfectly constant. A control system commonly includes a receptor, an integrating centre and an effector. In negative feedback, the response opposes a deviation; body-temperature regulation is one example. In positive feedback, the response amplifies the initiating change until a terminating event occurs. [10, 11]

Anatomical arrangements enable these regulatory processes. Blood vessels connect tissues with organs of exchange, nerves carry signals between receptors and effectors, and endocrine glands release hormones into the circulation. Understanding where these structures are located and how they connect provides a foundation for studying the control mechanisms in physiology. [6, 10]

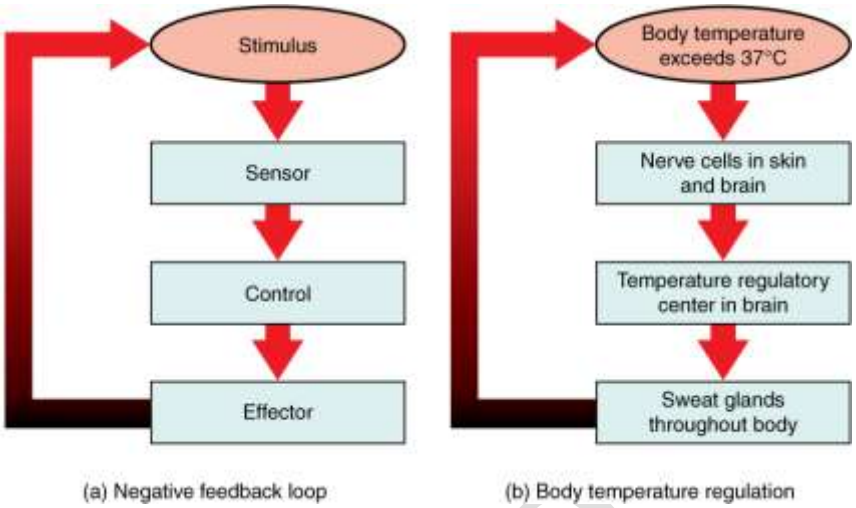


Figure 1.4. Negative feedback illustrated by regulation of body temperature

1.4 Anatomical position and body orientation

1.4.1 Standard anatomical position

In standard anatomical position, the person stands upright with the head and eyes directed forward. The upper limbs lie at the sides, the elbows are extended, and the palms face forward. The thumbs point laterally. The lower limbs are extended and the feet point forward; illustrations may show a small separation between the feet for clarity. [2, 4]

Descriptions of position and direction refer to this standard even when the person is lying down, sitting or moving. The palm is described as anterior in anatomical position, and the thumb lies lateral to the little finger. Turning the hand or bending the elbow changes the actual pose but does not redefine the reference vocabulary. A shared reference position makes anatomical statements reproducible. [2, 6]

1.4.2 Right left and the observer

Right and left refer to the person or specimen being described, not to the observer. When two people face each other, the patient's right appears on the observer's left. A diagram viewed from the front follows the same relationship. Failure to distinguish these viewpoints is a common source of errors in labelling and clinical communication. [2, 4]

Laterality should be recorded explicitly when it matters. “Left kidney” and “right forearm” identify a side, while “bilateral” indicates involvement on both sides. Midline structures may not require laterality, but their neighbouring structures often do. On medical images, orientation markers should be checked directly rather than inferred from the way the picture is displayed. [2, 3]

1.4.3 Supine prone and lateral positions

Supine describes lying face upward, and prone describes lying face downward. A lateral recumbent position means lying on one side; the named side is usually the dependent side, such as right lateral. These terms describe posture and should not be substituted for the directional terms anterior and posterior. The sternum remains anterior to the vertebral column in both supine and prone positions. [3, 6]

Clinical positions such as lithotomy or an inclined position add specific arrangements of the trunk and limbs. Their exact setup depends on the examination or procedure. When documenting position, a clear description is preferable to an ambiguous shorthand. Patient positioning can alter surface landmarks and the distribution of fluid, so it forms part of the context for interpreting a finding. [2, 3]

1.5 Directional and relational terminology

1.5.1 Superior inferior anterior and posterior

Superior means towards the head or above another structure, and inferior means towards the feet or below another structure. The thorax is superior to the abdomen. Anterior means towards the front of the body, and posterior means towards the back. The sternum is anterior to the heart, and the vertebral column is posterior to it. [2, 4]

Cranial and caudal are related directional terms, particularly useful in development and descriptions along the body axis. Ventral and dorsal often correspond to anterior and posterior in the human trunk, but specialised usage in the nervous system requires attention to the bend in the neuraxis. Introductory descriptions should favour the terminology appropriate to the region being studied rather than treating every pair as universally interchangeable. [1, 4]

1.5.2 Medial lateral and intermediate

Medial means nearer the median plane of the body, while lateral means farther from it. The nose is medial to the eyes, and the ears are lateral to the eyes. A structure is intermediate when it lies between two others. These are comparative terms: a structure can be lateral to one neighbour and medial to another. [2, 6]

Median describes a position in the midline itself and should not be used as an exact synonym for medial. The heart lies between the lungs but is not arranged symmetrically around the median plane. Similarly, “middle” is an everyday description that may be less precise than a stated relationship to an anatomical plane or named structure. [1, 4]

1.5.3 Proximal distal superficial and deep

Proximal means nearer the attachment or origin of a structure, and distal means farther from it. Along the upper limb, the elbow is proximal to the wrist but distal to the shoulder. The

terms also describe positions along ducts, vessels or other pathways, provided the relevant origin or reference point is understood. [2, 4]

Superficial means nearer the body surface, whereas deep means farther from it. Skin is superficial to skeletal muscle, and bone commonly lies deep to the muscles surrounding it. Depth and distance along a limb describe different relationships: a lesion may be distal in the limb yet superficial in the skin. Combining the terms can produce a precise description without confusion. [2, 6]

1.5.4 Internal external ipsilateral and contralateral

Internal and external describe relationships to the inside or outside of an organ, wall or cavity. Their meaning depends on the named structure; they are not always equivalent to deep and superficial. A lumen is the interior space of a hollow structure such as an intestine, blood vessel or duct. Luminal and abluminal refer respectively towards and away from that space. [1, 8]

Ipsilateral means on the same side of the body, while contralateral means on the opposite side. The right hand and right foot are ipsilateral; the right hand and left foot are contralateral. Unilateral describes one-sided involvement and bilateral describes both sides. These terms are especially helpful when describing neurological findings, paired organs and comparisons between limbs. [2, 4]

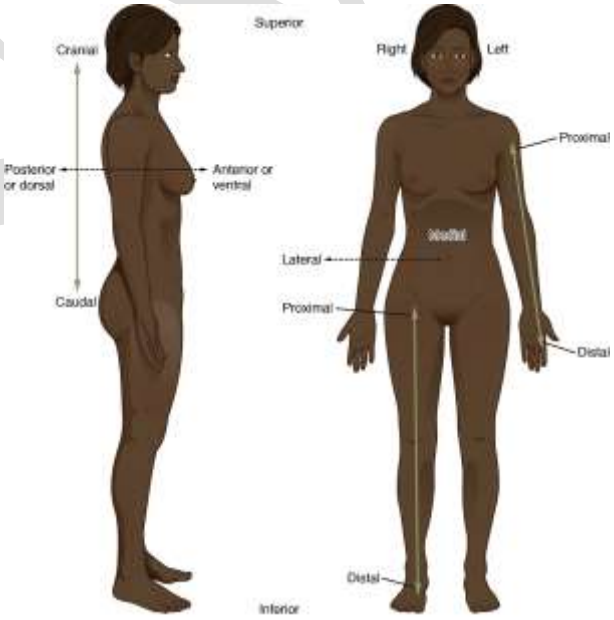


Figure 1.5. Directional relationships used to describe the human body

Table 1.3 Common directional terms [2, 6]

Term pair	Meaning	Anatomical example
Superior / inferior	Towards head / towards feet	The thorax is superior to the abdomen.
Anterior / posterior	Towards front / towards back	The sternum is anterior to the heart.
Medial / lateral	Towards / away from median plane	The nose is medial to the eyes.
Proximal / distal	Nearer / farther from attachment or origin	The elbow is proximal to the wrist.
Superficial / deep	Nearer / farther from the surface	Skin is superficial to muscle.
Ipsilateral / contralateral	Same side / opposite side	The right hand and right foot are ipsilateral.

1.6 Regions of the human body

1.6.1 Axial and appendicular divisions

The axial part of the body includes the head, neck and trunk. The trunk includes thoracic, abdominal, pelvic and back regions. The appendicular part includes the upper and lower limbs and their associated girdles. This division is useful when studying the skeleton, musculature and distribution of regional structures. [4, 6]

The trunk should not be equated with the abdomen alone, and the pelvis has both surface and cavity-related meanings. Similarly, a limb region is not the same as a joint: the brachial region is the arm, whereas the elbow is a junction between arm and forearm. Accurate regional vocabulary prevents everyday terms from being applied too broadly. [2, 4]

1.6.2 Head neck and trunk regions

The cephalic region is the head and the cervical region is the neck. Frontal, orbital, nasal, buccal, oral and mental refer respectively to the forehead, eye region, nose, cheek, mouth and chin. Occipital refers to the posterior part of the head. These surface names identify locations and do not necessarily indicate the deeper organ responsible for a symptom. [4, 6]

Thoracic refers to the chest, sternal to the region over the sternum and axillary to the armpit. Abdominal refers to the abdomen, umbilical to the navel region and inguinal to the groin. On the back, scapular, vertebral, lumbar and sacral indicate regions over the shoulder blade, spine, lower back and sacrum. Perineal refers to the region inferior to the pelvic floor. [2, 6]

1.6.3 Upper and lower limb regions

The upper limb includes the shoulder region, arm, forearm and hand. Brachial refers specifically to the arm between shoulder and elbow; antebrachial refers to the forearm

between elbow and wrist. Carpal describes the wrist, palmar the palm and digital the fingers or toes. The anterior elbow region is antecubital, while olecranal refers to its posterior prominence. [2, 4]

In the lower limb, femoral refers to the thigh and crural to the leg between knee and ankle. Patellar refers to the front of the knee and popliteal to the region behind it. Tarsal refers to the ankle region, calcaneal to the heel and plantar to the sole. The dorsum of the foot is its superior surface; the dorsum of the hand is the surface opposite the palm. [2, 6]

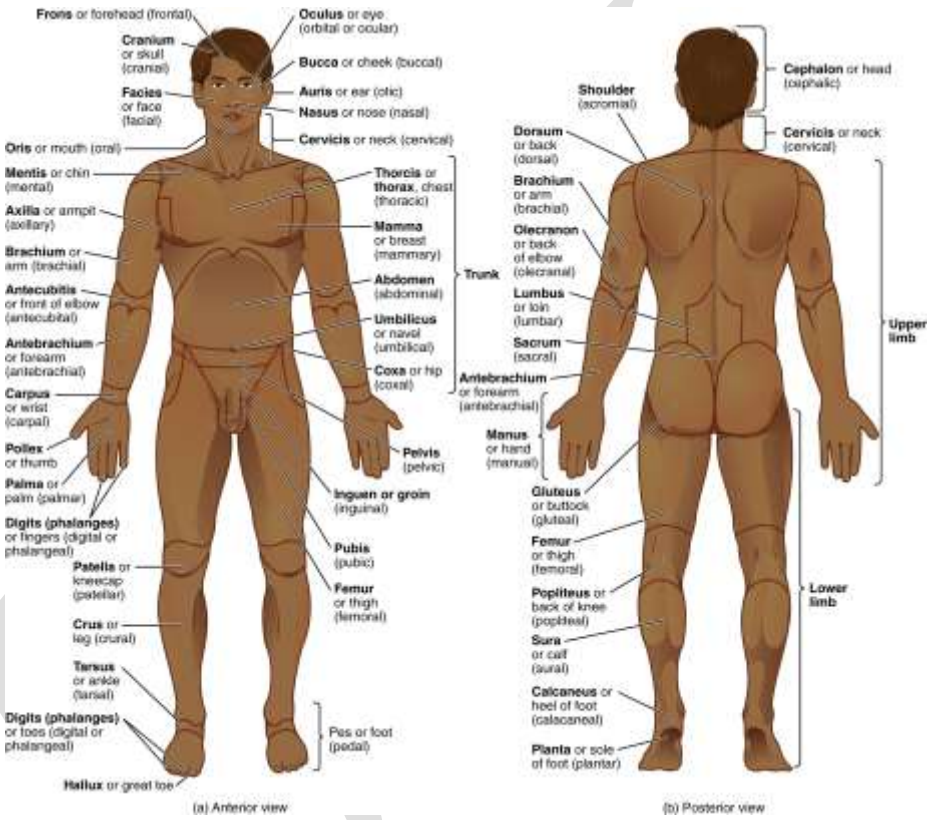


Figure 1.6. Anatomical position with anterior and posterior regional names

1.7 Body planes sections and axes

1.7.1 Median sagittal and parasagittal planes

A plane is an imaginary flat surface through the body or an organ. A section is the exposed or represented surface produced by cutting through it. The median or midsagittal plane passes vertically through the midline and divides the body into right and left halves. Sagittal planes are parallel to it; a parasagittal section lies to one side of the median plane. [1, 4]

The term sagittal therefore does not automatically mean that a section passes through the exact midline. A midsagittal view of the head can show midline structures, while a more lateral sagittal view reveals a different set of structures. The position of the plane is as important as its name when interpreting an image. [4, 5]

1.7.2 Coronal transverse and oblique planes

A coronal or frontal plane divides the body into anterior and posterior portions. A transverse plane divides it into superior and inferior portions. In imaging of the trunk, transverse sections are commonly called axial sections. An oblique plane passes at an angle to the principal reference planes and can be selected to follow the orientation of an organ or joint. [2, 4]

The body need not be standing for these planes to apply. They remain related to anatomical orientation rather than to the floor of the room. Likewise, a transverse section of a curved organ is defined relative to that organ's local long axis and may not coincide with a transverse plane through the entire body. [1, 8]

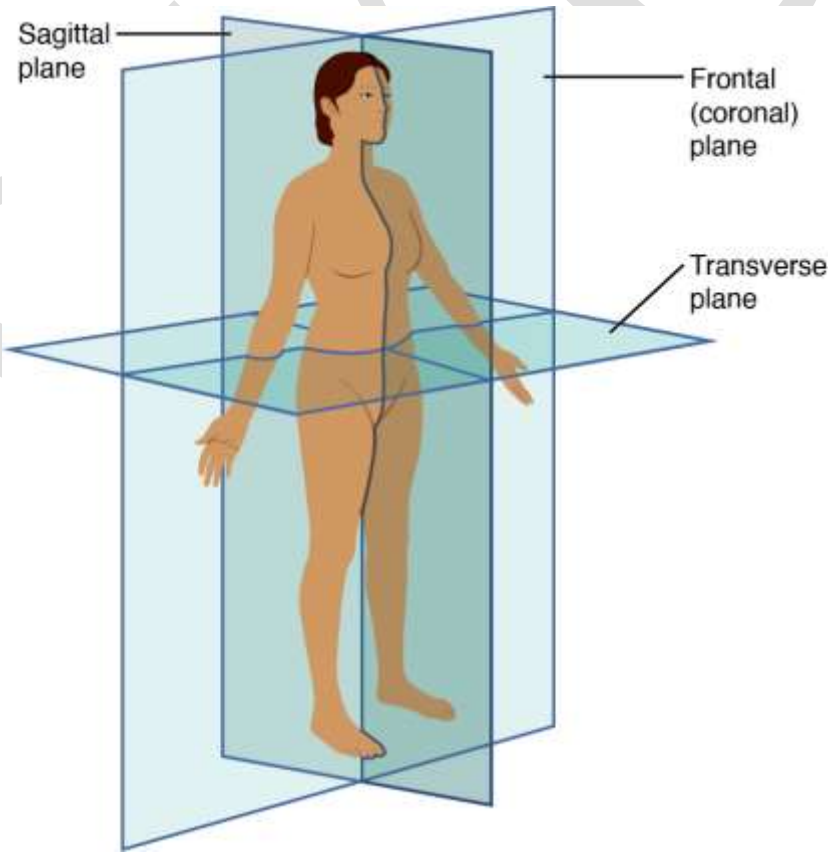


Figure 1.7. Sagittal, coronal and transverse planes through the body

1.7.3 Longitudinal sections and three-dimensional interpretation

A longitudinal section follows the long axis of a structure, whereas a cross-section passes across it. A series of sections can reveal continuity that is not obvious in one image. A vessel may appear as a small circle in one section and a longer profile in another as its course changes. Adjacent sections should therefore be considered together when tracing a structure. [4, 9]

Two-dimensional images simplify depth. Structures that overlap in a projection may lie far apart in the body, and structures separated on one slice may join outside that slice. Learning anatomy requires movement between surface views, sectional views and three-dimensional mental models. Models and atlases support this process, but the labels and viewing direction must be checked each time. [4, 5]

1.7.4 Axes and their relationship to movement

An axis is an imaginary line around which rotation occurs. In simple descriptions, movement takes place in a plane around an axis perpendicular to that plane. Flexion and extension usually occur in a sagittal plane about a mediolateral axis. Abduction and adduction usually occur in a frontal plane about an anteroposterior axis. Rotation occurs around a longitudinal axis. [2, 4]

These descriptions are useful approximations. Real joint surfaces, coupled motions and changing axes can make movement more complex than a diagram suggests. The shoulder permits movement in several planes, and the thumb has a special orientation relative to the other digits. Plane-and-axis rules should therefore support observation rather than replace knowledge of the specific joint. [2, 14]

Table 1.4 Planes and movement axes [2, 4]

Plane	Divides the body into	Typical movement and axis
Sagittal	Right and left portions	Flexion / extension about a mediolateral axis
Median	Right and left halves through the midline	A particular sagittal plane used as a reference
Coronal or frontal	Anterior and posterior portions	Abduction / adduction about an anteroposterior axis
Transverse or axial	Superior and inferior portions	Rotation about a longitudinal axis

Plane	Divides the body into	Typical movement and axis
Oblique	Portions separated at an angle to principal planes	Selected to match the structure being examined

1.8 Body cavities and membranes

1.8.1 Posterior and anterior body cavities

The posterior or dorsal body cavity comprises the cranial cavity and vertebral canal. The cranial cavity contains the brain, and the vertebral canal contains the spinal cord, associated nerve roots and coverings. These spaces are continuous through the foramen magnum. Bone provides protection, while meninges and cerebrospinal fluid contribute to the environment around the central nervous system. [1, 4]

The anterior or ventral body cavity includes thoracic and abdominopelvic subdivisions. The diaphragm separates the thoracic cavity from the abdominal cavity. There is no comparable complete muscular partition between abdominal and pelvic cavities; they are continuous. Their subdivisions remain useful because different organ groups and relationships occupy the upper and lower regions. [2, 6]

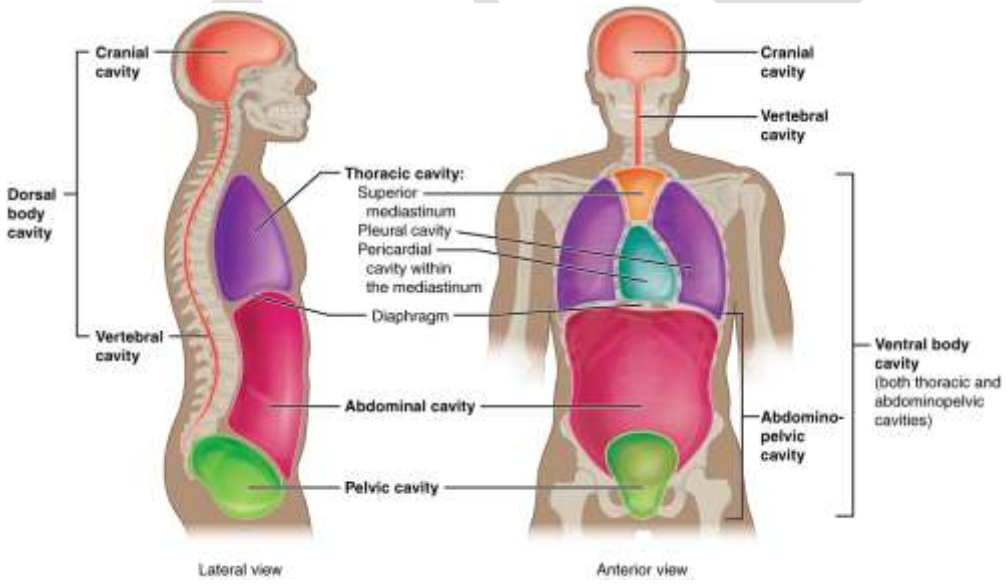


Figure 1.8. Principal body cavities and the position of the diaphragm

1.8.2 Thoracic cavity and mediastinum

The thoracic cavity contains two pleural compartments and the mediastinum between them. Each lung is associated with its own pleural sac. The mediastinum contains the heart within

its pericardial sac, major vessels, trachea, oesophagus and other structures. It is a region containing organs and tissues, not a normally empty space. [1, 2]

The heart does not lie within either pleural cavity. The pericardial cavity is a separate potential space between the serous pericardial layers. Distinguishing these compartments is essential when describing pleural or pericardial fluid. Although both occur in the thorax, their sources, relationships and clinical implications are different. [2, 3]

1.8.3 Abdominal pelvic and retroperitoneal relationships

The abdominal cavity contains much of the digestive tract together with organs such as the liver and spleen. The pelvic cavity contains the urinary bladder, rectum and internal reproductive structures. Organ positions vary with filling, pregnancy, respiration and posture. An enlarged or distended organ may extend beyond the region in which it is usually described. [1, 2]

The peritoneal cavity is a potential space between peritoneal layers and is not identical to the entire abdominal cavity. Intraperitoneal organs are largely covered by visceral peritoneum and are often attached by mesenteries. Retroperitoneal structures lie posterior to the parietal peritoneum; the kidneys are an important example. These relationships influence organ mobility and the spread of fluid or disease. [2, 4]

1.8.4 Serous membranes and potential spaces

A serous membrane has a parietal layer associated with the cavity wall and a visceral layer covering the organ surface. A thin film of serous fluid lies between the layers and reduces friction. The pleura, serous pericardium and peritoneum follow this general arrangement, although each has specialised reflections and attachments. [1, 8]

A potential space normally contains only a small amount of fluid but can enlarge when fluid, blood or gas accumulates. Saying that a lung is “inside the pleural cavity” is a useful simplification only if it is understood that the cavity itself is the thin space between the layers, not a large empty chamber occupied by the lung. The same distinction applies to the serous pericardial cavity. [2, 6]

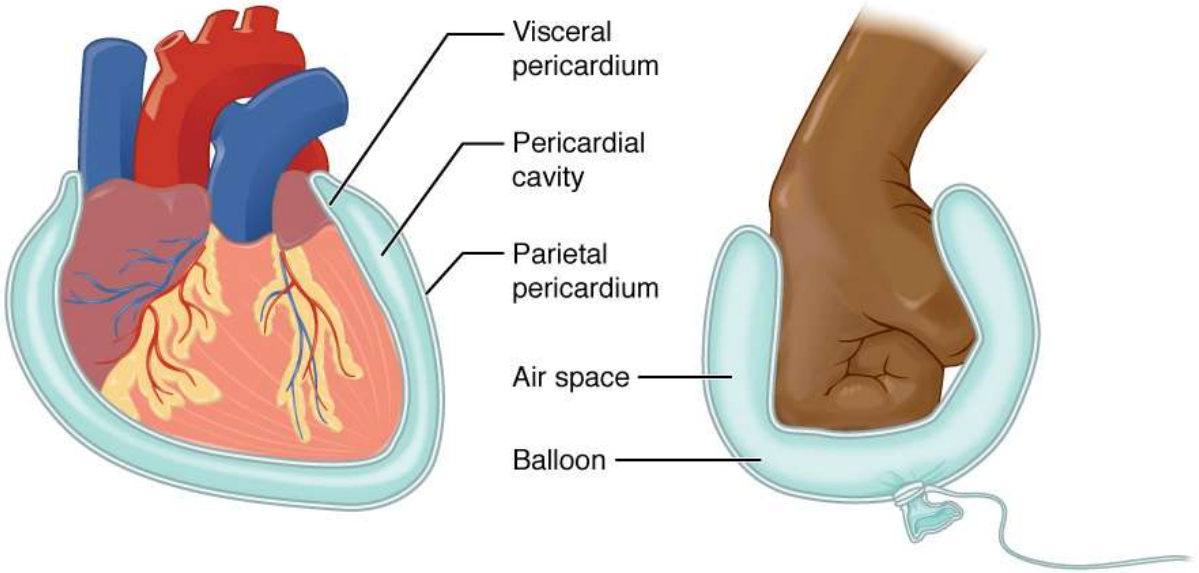


Figure 1.9. Parietal and visceral serous layers illustrated using the pericardium

1.8.5 Other membranes and specialised spaces

Mucous membranes line passages that communicate with the exterior, including digestive and respiratory tracts. Their epithelial type varies with function. The cutaneous membrane is the skin. Synovial membranes line the non-articular internal surfaces of synovial joints and produce components of synovial fluid; they are connective-tissue membranes rather than true epithelial linings. [8, 9]

The meninges surround the brain and spinal cord. Cerebrospinal fluid occupies the ventricles and the subarachnoid space, rather than the subdural space under normal conditions. Naming the exact compartment matters in anatomy and in laboratory documentation. A broad label such as “body fluid” is insufficient when the specimen source is known and affects interpretation. [1, 4]

1.9 Abdominal quadrants and nine regions

1.9.1 Four abdominal quadrants

A vertical median line and a horizontal transumbilical line divide the abdomen into right upper, left upper, right lower and left lower quadrants. These divisions provide a convenient way to communicate the approximate location of pain, tenderness or a mass. As always, right and left refer to the patient. [2, 6]

The liver and gallbladder are commonly associated with the right upper quadrant, the stomach and spleen with the left upper quadrant, the caecum and appendix with the right lower quadrant, and much of the sigmoid colon with the left lower quadrant. These are

typical associations, not strict boundaries. Many organs cross lines, and the site of pain does not necessarily identify its origin. [2, 3]

1.9.2 Nine abdominal regions

The nine-region scheme commonly uses two vertical midclavicular lines and two horizontal planes, the subcostal and transtubercular planes. The upper row comprises right hypochondriac, epigastric and left hypochondriac regions. The middle row comprises right lumbar, umbilical and left lumbar regions. The lower row comprises right iliac, hypogastric and left iliac regions. [2, 4]

The iliac regions are also called inguinal regions, and the hypogastric region may be called pubic. Some teaching schemes use alternative horizontal landmarks, so the convention should be stated when precision matters. This scheme offers a more detailed surface map than the quadrants, but neither replaces knowledge of deeper organ relationships. [1, 3]

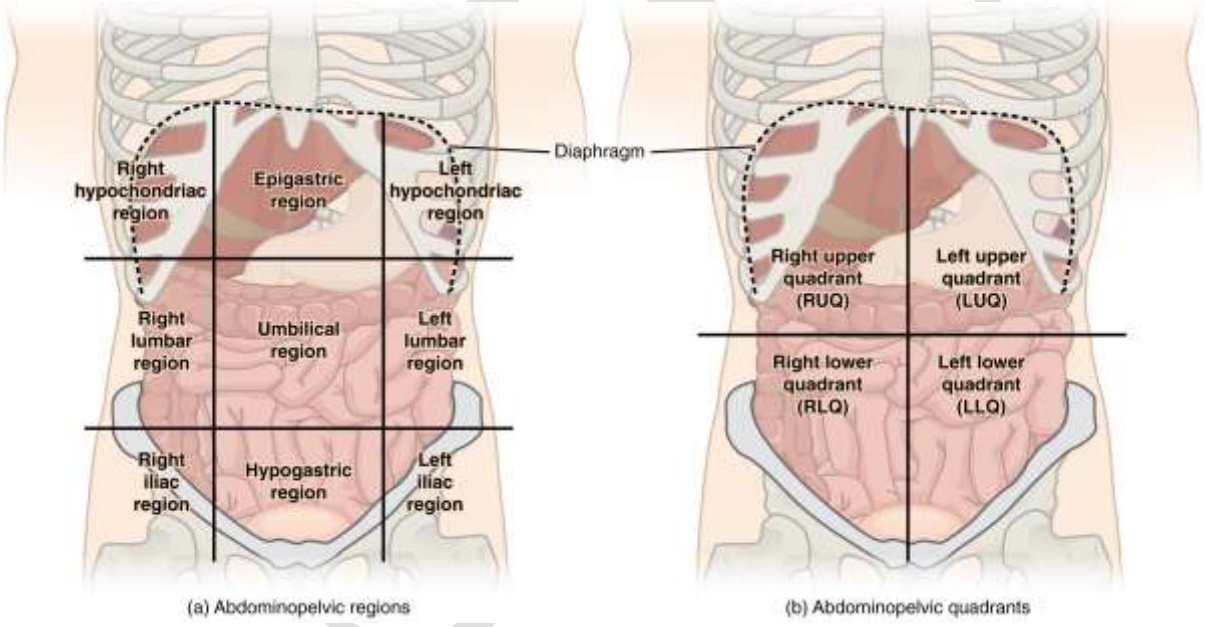


Figure 1.10. Four abdominal quadrants and nine abdominal regions

1.9.3 Applying surface maps carefully

An abdominal description should combine region, side and the feature observed. “Tenderness in the right iliac region” is a location statement, whereas a disease name is an interpretation requiring additional evidence. A lesion may also be described relative to a landmark, such as superior to the umbilicus or near the costal margin. [2, 3]

Surface maps should be used consistently across examination notes, imaging requests and specimen labels. The whole organ, its named part and the sampling site should be distinguished. For example, a right-sided abdominal specimen is not automatically from the liver. Anatomical localisation is a foundation for interpretation, not a substitute for identifying the actual tissue or procedure. [2, 9]

1.10 Terminology of movement

1.10.1 Flexion extension and lateral flexion

Flexion usually decreases the angle between adjacent body parts, while extension increases it or returns the part towards anatomical position. Bending the elbow is flexion and straightening it is extension. Hyperextension describes movement beyond anatomical position in the direction of extension and does not by itself mean injury. Lateral flexion bends the neck or trunk towards one side. [2, 6]

The direction of movement must be interpreted for the particular joint. Knee flexion moves the leg posteriorly, while elbow flexion moves the forearm anteriorly from anatomical position. The thumb has a different orientation from the other digits, and its flexion and extension are described in relation to that orientation. Movement names therefore depend on anatomy rather than on an everyday idea of “forwards” or “backwards”. [2, 4]

1.10.2 Abduction adduction and circumduction

Abduction moves a part away from the median plane, and adduction moves it towards that plane. Raising the upper limb sideways at the shoulder is abduction. For the fingers, the reference axis passes through the middle finger; for the toes, it passes through the second toe. The chosen reference must therefore be appropriate to the region. [2, 4]

Circumduction is a sequential combination of flexion, abduction, extension and adduction in which the distal end traces a circle or cone-like path. It is not identical to rotation around the long axis of a limb. A person can circumduct the arm at the shoulder while also producing variable amounts of axial rotation. [4, 6]

1.10.3 Medial and lateral rotation

Rotation turns a structure around its longitudinal axis. Medial rotation turns the anterior surface of a limb towards the median plane, and lateral rotation turns it away. These terms describe movements at joints such as the shoulder and hip. Rotation of the head turns the face to one side and involves several cervical joints. [2, 4]

When observing movement, the proximal segment and patient position should be considered. A change in the orientation of the foot can arise from hip rotation, tibial movement or movements within the foot itself. The visible endpoint does not always reveal which joint

produced the motion. Correct naming requires identifying the moving structure and the joint involved. [2, 14]

1.10.4 Pronation and supination

Pronation and supination are movements of the forearm at the radioulnar joints. In supination, the radius and ulna lie approximately parallel and the palm faces anteriorly in anatomical position. During pronation, the radius crosses the ulna and the palm turns posteriorly. When the elbow is flexed, the palm may face upward in supination and downward in pronation, but those everyday descriptions depend on posture. [2, 4]

These movements should not be described simply as rotation of the wrist. The hand follows the radius while movement occurs at the proximal and distal radioulnar joints. This relationship illustrates why knowing the participating bones is necessary for accurate movement terminology. [2, 5]

SVU

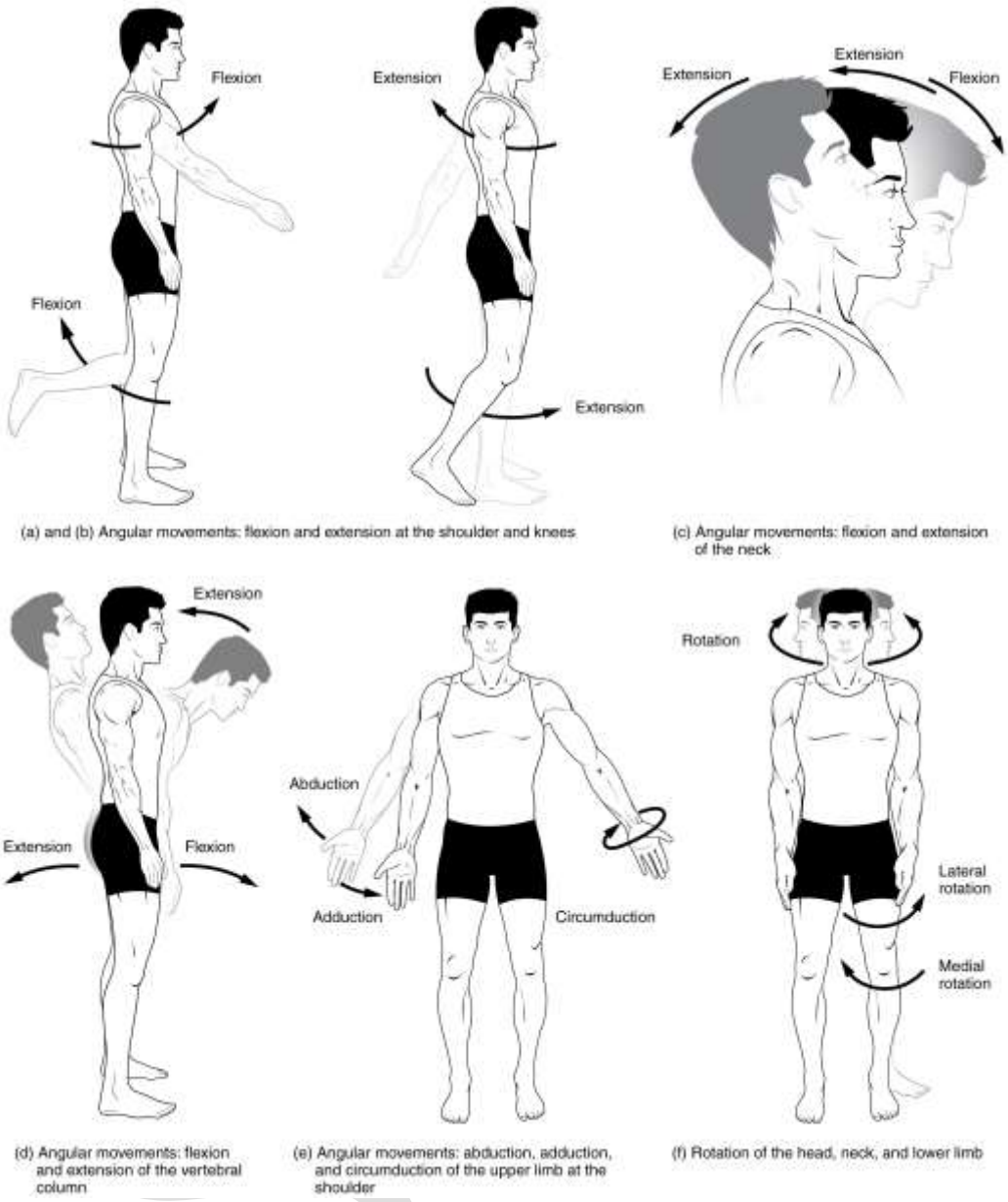


Figure 1.11. Flexion, extension, abduction, adduction, circumduction and rotation

1.10.5 Movements of the foot jaw and thumb

Dorsiflexion moves the dorsum of the foot towards the anterior leg, while plantar flexion points the foot away. Inversion turns the sole medially, and eversion turns it laterally. Inversion and eversion involve several joints in the hindfoot and midfoot and should not be equated with movements at the ankle joint alone. [2, 4]

Elevation raises a structure and depression lowers it, as when the mandible closes and opens. Protraction moves it anteriorly and retraction moves it posteriorly. Opposition brings the thumb across the palm towards the fingers, and reposition returns it. These specialised terms

allow movements to be described accurately without forcing them into an unsuitable general category. [2, 6]

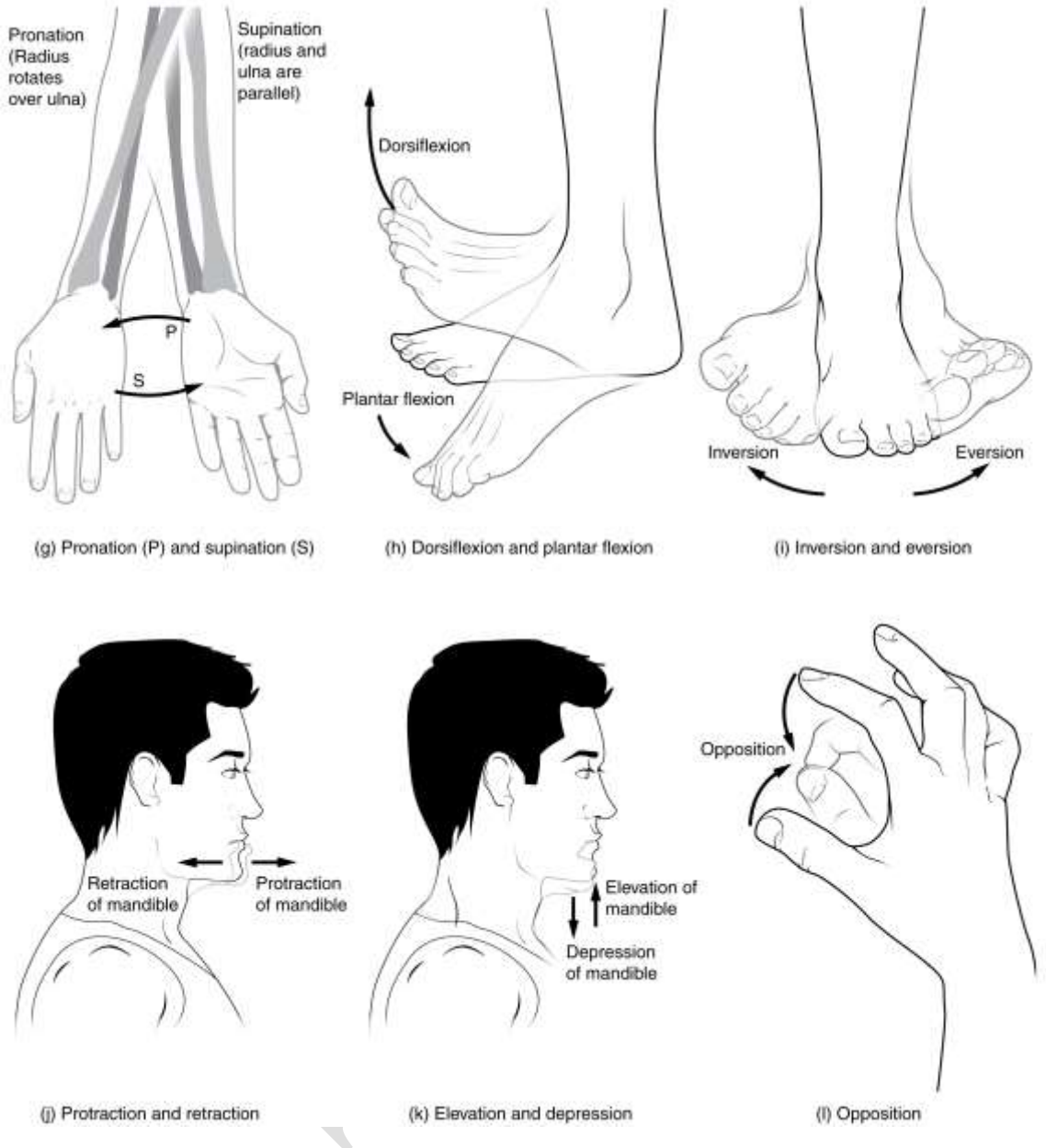


Figure 1.12. Pronation, supination, foot movements, jaw movements and thumb opposition

1.11 Anatomical language in imaging and laboratory practice

1.11.1 Imaging methods and orientation

Radiographs represent the attenuation of X-rays through the body and display overlapping structures in a projection. Computed tomography reconstructs cross-sectional information using X-rays. Magnetic resonance imaging uses magnetic fields and radiofrequency signals,

and ultrasound forms images from reflected sound waves. Each method emphasises different tissue properties and must be interpreted with its acquisition method in mind. [2, 4]

Axial CT images are conventionally displayed as though the observer is looking from the patient's feet towards the head, so the patient's right is often on the image's left. This is a display convention, not a reason to ignore the right and left markers. Reformatted or specially displayed images may differ. Plane, laterality and orientation labels should be checked before naming a structure or abnormality. [2, 4]

1.11.2 Describing a specimen site

A specimen description should identify the source as precisely as the available information permits. “Skin biopsy from the lateral aspect of the left leg” states tissue, region, surface relationship and side. “Pleural fluid” identifies a different compartment from “pericardial fluid”, despite both being collected from the thoracic region. The collection record and specimen label should agree. [2, 9]

If a tissue has been orientated with a suture, ink or other marker, its meaning must be supplied by the submitting team. A laboratory should not invent an orientation from the tissue's shape alone. Likewise, a part removed from the body may no longer retain its in-situ orientation. Clear anatomical documentation helps preserve the relationship between the specimen and the patient. [9, 14]

1.11.3 Common errors and precise communication

Common errors include confusing the patient's right with the observer's right, using arm for the entire upper limb, using leg for the entire lower limb, and treating medial as equivalent to internal. Another error is changing anatomical direction terms when the person changes posture. A standard reference position and a named comparison structure resolve many of these ambiguities. [2, 6]

A useful description proceeds from the general region to the exact site: side, named structure, part or surface, and relationship to a landmark. Measurements may be added when appropriate. The aim is enough precision for another person to understand the location without having to guess. Anatomical terminology is therefore a practical communication tool, not simply a list of words to memorise. [2, 3]

1.12 Chapter summary and key terms

1.12.1 Chapter summary

Anatomy studies body structure from microscopic components to whole-body organisation. Regional, systemic, surface, developmental and clinical approaches provide complementary perspectives. Four basic tissue classes contribute to organs, and organs work together in interacting systems. Normal variation, developmental stage and specimen preparation influence the appearance of structures. [1, 6, 8]

Anatomical position establishes the reference for right and left, directional terms and movement descriptions. Regional names identify parts of the body, while planes and sections help translate three-dimensional relationships into images. Cavities and membranes define compartments that must be distinguished carefully. Abdominal quadrants and regions provide practical surface maps, while precise movement terminology identifies how parts change position. [2, 4, 6]

The practical value of this vocabulary lies in accurate communication. A correctly orientated image, a clearly identified specimen and a precise site description all depend on the same anatomical principles. Learning them early supports later study of organ systems, histology, pathology and clinical practice. [2, 9]

1.12.2 Key terms

Anatomy: study of body structure. Physiology: study of function. Histology: study of tissues. Organ: an integrated structure containing multiple tissue types. Anatomical position: the standard reference posture. Median plane: a plane through the body midline. Proximal: nearer an attachment or origin. Distal: farther from that reference. Ipsilateral: on the same side. Contralateral: on the opposite side. [4, 6, 8]

Lumen: the interior of a hollow structure. Parietal: associated with a cavity wall. Visceral: associated with an organ. Mediastinum: the central thoracic region between the pleural compartments. Retroperitoneal: posterior to the parietal peritoneum. Flexion: usually a decrease in the angle between parts. Abduction: movement away from the relevant reference axis or plane. Supination: forearm movement that returns the palm towards the anterior-facing anatomical position. [2, 4]

References

[1] Standring S, editor. Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice. 42nd ed. Elsevier.

[2] Dalley AF II, Agur AMR. Moore's Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 9th ed. Wolters Kluwer.

[3] Splittgerber R. Snell's Clinical Anatomy by Regions. 10th ed. Wolters Kluwer.

[4] Drake RL, Vogl AW, Mitchell AWM. Gray's Anatomy for Students. 4th ed. Elsevier.

[5] Netter FH. Netter Atlas of Human Anatomy: A Systems Approach. 8th ed. Elsevier.

[6] Tortora GJ, Derrickson B. Principles of Anatomy and Physiology. 16th ed. Wiley.

[7] Marieb EN, Hoehn K. Human Anatomy & Physiology. 11th ed. Pearson.

[8] Mescher AL. Junqueira's Basic Histology: Text and Atlas. 17th ed. McGraw Hill.

[9] Pawlina W, Ross MH. Histology: A Text and Atlas: With Correlated Cell and Molecular Biology. 8th ed. Wolters Kluwer.

[10] Hall JE, Hall ME. Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology. 14th ed. Elsevier.

[11] Barrett KE, Barman SM, Brooks HL, Yuan JX-J. Ganong's Review of Medical Physiology. 26th ed. McGraw Hill.

[12] Sadler TW. Langman's Medical Embryology. 14th ed. Wolters Kluwer.

[13] Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology. 11th ed. Elsevier.

[14] Sinnatamby CS. Last's Anatomy: Regional and Applied. 12th ed. Churchill Livingstone.

CONTENT

- Chapter 2 –

Cells and Tissues: Building Blocks of the Human Body

2.1 Introduction……..31

2.2 Cellular Structure and Organelles…….33

2.3 Epithelial, Connective, Muscle and Nervous Tissues……...……34

2.4 Cell Communication, Junctions and Extracellular Matrix…….37

2.5 Cell Cycle, Differentiation, Death and Tissue Repair……..38

2.6 Clinical Significance of Cells and Tissues…….....40

2.7 Summary……40

2.8 Conclusion……41

References……..43

SVU

Chapter 2

Cells and Tissues: Building Blocks of the Human Body

Mr. Abhinaba Gupta

Department of Medical Laboratory Technology, School of Allied Health Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal 700121, India

Overview

Cells are the fundamental structural and functional units of the human body, while tissues are organized groups of cells and extracellular components that work together to perform specialized functions. The human body contains trillions of cells with remarkable diversity in shape, size, internal organization, metabolic activity, and communication. Despite this diversity, cells share a common basic plan: a plasma membrane encloses cytoplasm containing organelles and a nucleus or nuclear material that regulates cellular activities. The coordinated behavior of cells creates tissues, organs, organ systems, and ultimately an integrated organism.(1)

The four primary tissue categories are epithelial, connective, muscle, and nervous tissue. Epithelial tissue covers body surfaces, lines internal cavities and tubes, forms glands, and participates in protection, absorption, secretion, and sensation. Connective tissue supports, binds, protects, stores energy, transports substances, and participates in immune defense. Muscle tissue is specialized for contraction and produces movement, maintains posture, propels contents through hollow organs, and generates heat. Nervous tissue is specialized for rapid communication, information processing, sensation, and control.

Cells and tissues cannot be understood as isolated structures. Their functions depend on interactions with neighboring cells, the extracellular matrix, blood supply, mechanical forces, chemical signals, and the surrounding microenvironment. Cell junctions permit adhesion and communication, while extracellular matrix molecules provide structural support and biochemical signals. Tissue homeostasis is maintained through regulated processes such as cell division, differentiation, migration, apoptosis, repair, and immune surveillance.(2)

The study of cells and tissues therefore provides the foundation for understanding anatomy, physiology, pathology, pharmacology, regenerative medicine, and many modern biomedical sciences. Changes at the cellular or tissue level can disturb normal function and contribute to disease. Conversely, knowledge of cellular organization helps explain wound healing,

inflammation, cancer, degeneration, and tissue regeneration. This chapter introduces the organization of cells and tissues, their principal structures and functions, mechanisms of cellular communication, tissue maintenance and repair, and their significance in health and disease.(3)

2.1. Introduction

The human body is a highly organized biological system in which structures at different levels cooperate to maintain life. At the microscopic level, this organization begins with cells. A cell is the smallest unit capable of carrying out the essential processes associated with life, including metabolism, growth, response to stimuli, communication, maintenance of internal conditions, and reproduction. Although cells differ greatly in appearance and function, their activities are coordinated within tissues and organs so that the body can respond to changing physiological demands.(4)

Human cells are surrounded by a selectively permeable plasma membrane. This membrane separates the intracellular environment from extracellular fluid and regulates the movement of ions, nutrients, gases, wastes, and signaling molecules. Within the membrane lies the cytoplasm, consisting of cytosol and organelles. The nucleus contains most of the genetic material and regulates gene expression, cellular growth, differentiation, and division. Organelles such as mitochondria, ribosomes, endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi apparatus, lysosomes, peroxisomes, and the cytoskeleton perform specialized tasks that collectively sustain cellular function.

The plasma membrane is not simply a passive boundary. It contains receptors, channels, transporters, enzymes, and adhesion molecules. These components allow cells to sense their environment and communicate with other cells. Transport may occur by diffusion, facilitated diffusion, osmosis, active transport, endocytosis, or exocytosis. Membrane receptors recognize hormones, neurotransmitters, growth factors, cytokines, and other signals. Intracellular signaling pathways then convert external information into changes in enzyme activity, gene expression, movement, secretion, growth, or survival.(5)

The nucleus and genetic system provide another level of organization. DNA stores biological information, while transcription and translation convert genetic information into functional RNA and proteins. Regulation of gene expression allows different cell types to develop distinct structures and functions even though most somatic cells contain essentially the same genome. This principle of differential gene expression is central to cellular differentiation.

Stem and progenitor cells can generate specialized cell populations during development and, in selected tissues, contribute to maintenance and repair.(6)

Cells rarely function alone. They form tissues through cell-cell adhesion and interactions with extracellular matrix. Epithelial cells may form continuous sheets; connective-tissue cells may be distributed within abundant matrix; muscle cells are arranged to generate force; and nervous-system cells establish complex communication networks. The extracellular matrix contains proteins and polysaccharides that provide mechanical support and influence cell behavior. Integrins and other adhesion receptors connect cells to matrix and can transmit mechanical and biochemical information.(7)

The four major tissue types illustrate functional specialization. Epithelial tissue forms protective barriers and specialized surfaces. Connective tissue includes diverse structures such as loose and dense connective tissue, adipose tissue, cartilage, bone, and blood. Muscle tissue includes skeletal, cardiac, and smooth muscle. Nervous tissue contains neurons and supporting glial cells and is adapted for rapid information transfer. These tissue types combine in different proportions to create organs with specific functions.(8)

Tissues remain dynamic throughout life. Cells are continuously exposed to mechanical forces, metabolic demands, signaling molecules, and immune surveillance. Homeostasis requires a balance between cell production and cell loss. Programmed cell death, especially apoptosis, removes unnecessary or damaged cells without the extensive inflammation associated with uncontrolled cell injury. When tissues are injured, inflammation, cell proliferation, extracellular-matrix remodeling, angiogenesis, and maturation contribute to repair. If these processes become excessive or defective, fibrosis, chronic inflammation, degeneration, or cancer may develop.

Understanding cells and tissues is therefore essential for interpreting both normal physiology and disease. Histology provides microscopic structural information, while cell biology explains the mechanisms underlying that structure. Together, these disciplines create a framework for understanding how the body develops, functions, adapts, repairs itself, and becomes diseased. Modern technologies such as microscopy, single-cell analysis, organoids, tissue engineering, and spatial molecular profiling continue to expand our understanding of cellular diversity and tissue organization. The following sections examine the major cellular and tissue principles in greater detail.(9)

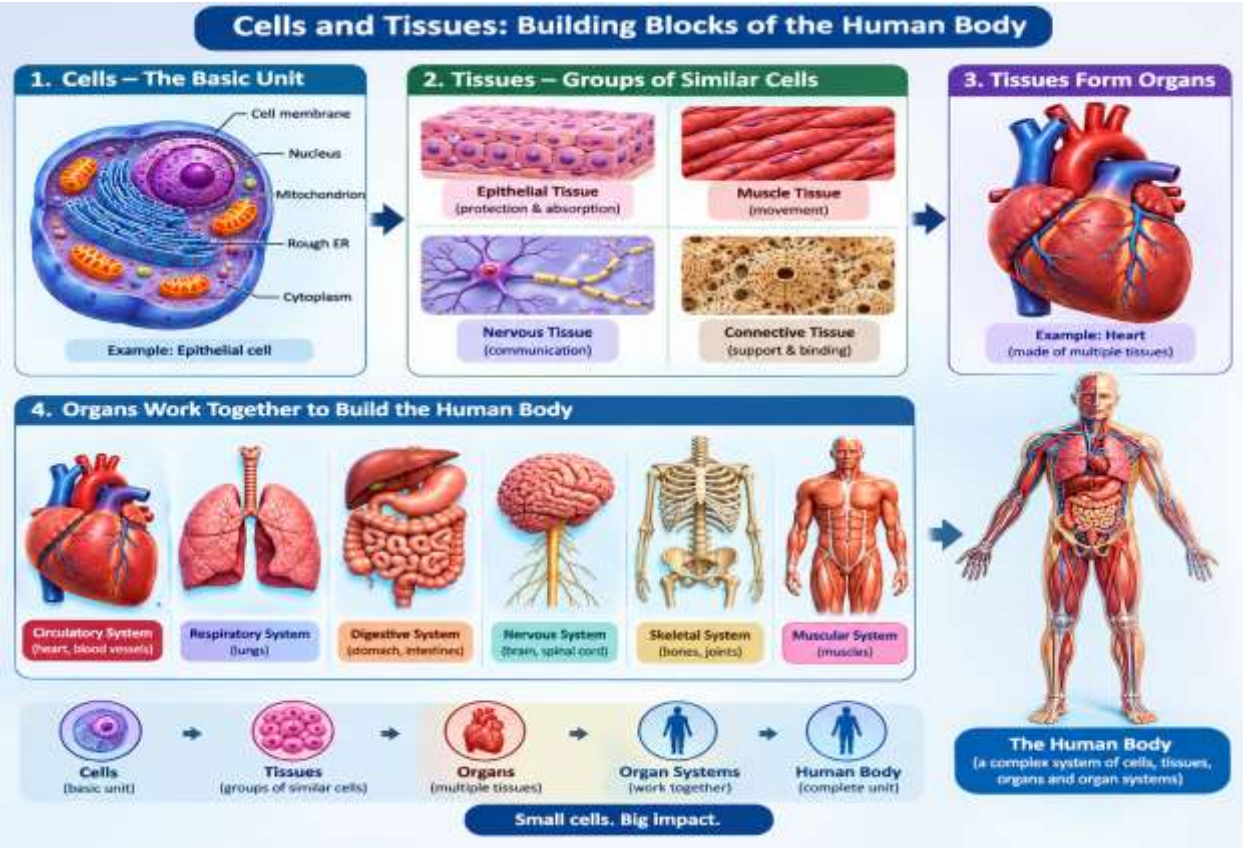


Fig:- Cells and Tissues: Building Blocks of the Human Body (6)

2.2 Cellular Structure and Organelles

A typical human cell is organized into several interdependent compartments. The plasma membrane forms the outer boundary and maintains selective exchange between the cell and its environment. Beneath it is the cytoplasm, which includes cytosol, organelles, cytoskeletal elements, stored materials, and many metabolic molecules. The nucleus is generally the largest membrane-bound organelle and contains chromatin organized from DNA and associated proteins.(10)

The mitochondria are major sites of aerobic energy metabolism and ATP production. They contain an outer membrane, an intermembrane space, an inner membrane with extensive folds called cristae, and a matrix. Mitochondria also possess their own DNA and ribosomes. Their activity is closely linked to cellular energy demand. Cells with high energy requirements, such as cardiac muscle cells, generally contain abundant mitochondria.(11)

Ribosomes synthesize proteins by translating messenger RNA. They may be free in the cytosol or associated with rough endoplasmic reticulum. The rough endoplasmic reticulum is involved in the synthesis and initial processing of proteins destined for secretion, membranes, or certain organelles. Smooth endoplasmic reticulum participates in lipid synthesis, detoxification, calcium storage, and other specialized functions.The Golgi apparatus receives

newly synthesized proteins and lipids, modifies them, sorts them, and directs them to appropriate destinations. Lysosomes contain hydrolytic enzymes and participate in the degradation of macromolecules, damaged organelles, and material taken into the cell. Peroxisomes carry out oxidative reactions and contribute to fatty-acid metabolism and detoxification of reactive compounds.

The cytoskeleton is an interconnected system of microfilaments, intermediate filaments, and microtubules. It maintains cell shape, supports intracellular transport, participates in cell division, and contributes to cell movement. Motor proteins interact with cytoskeletal elements to move vesicles and organelles. Cell junctions and adhesion structures also depend on cytoskeletal organization.The nucleus stores genetic information and coordinates gene expression. Nuclear pores regulate exchange between nucleus and cytoplasm, while the nucleolus is involved in ribosomal RNA production and ribosome assembly. Chromatin can be relatively open and transcriptionally active or more condensed and less accessible. This organization allows cells to regulate which genes are expressed.(12)

Together, these structures demonstrate that cellular function is based on compartmentalization and cooperation. A defect in one organelle may influence several cellular pathways. For example, mitochondrial dysfunction can alter energy metabolism and increase cellular stress, while defects in lysosomal degradation can lead to accumulation of cellular material. Understanding organelles is therefore essential for understanding cellular physiology and disease mechanisms.

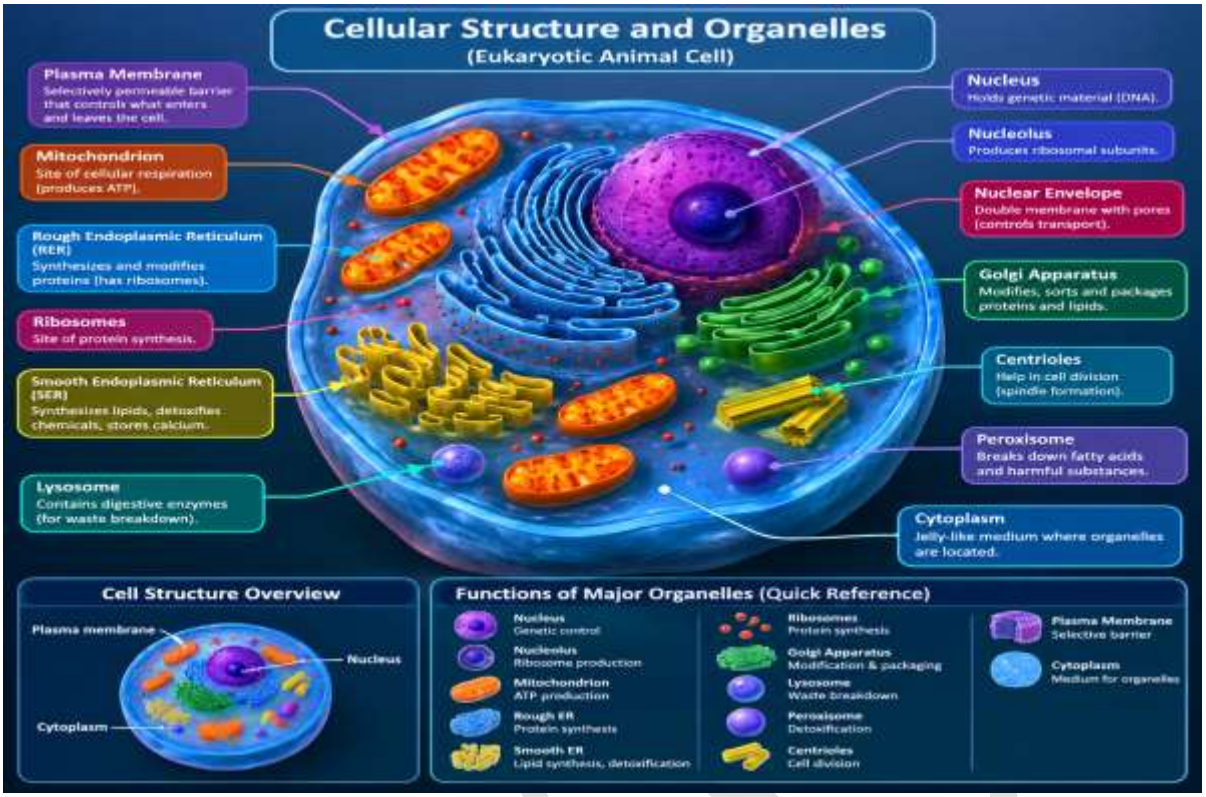


Fig:- Cellular Structure and Organelles(6,7)

2.3 Epithelial, Connective, Muscle and Nervous Tissues

Epithelial tissue is characterized by closely packed cells with relatively little extracellular matrix. It covers external surfaces, lines internal cavities, and forms many glands. Epithelia are classified according to the number of cell layers and the shape of their cells. Simple epithelium has one layer, whereas stratified epithelium has multiple layers. Cell shapes may be squamous, cuboidal, or columnar. Specialized epithelial tissues include pseudostratified epithelium and transitional epithelium. Epithelial cells are commonly polarized, with distinct apical and basal surfaces. Their functions include protection, secretion, absorption, filtration, and transport (13, 14).

Connective tissue differs from epithelium because cells are often separated by extracellular matrix. This matrix contains ground substance and protein fibers, including collagen, elastic, and reticular fibers. Fibroblasts are important matrix-producing cells, while macrophages, mast cells, adipocytes, and other specialized cells perform additional functions. Connective tissue supports organs, connects structures, stores energy, provides immune defense, and contributes to repair. Cartilage and bone are specialized connective tissues with distinctive matrices, while blood is a fluid connective tissue.

Muscle tissue is specialized for contraction. Skeletal muscle consists of long, multinucleated fibers and is generally under voluntary control. It produces movement, stabilizes joints, and

generates heat. Cardiac muscle forms the myocardium of the heart and is characterized by branching cells, intercalated discs, and rhythmic involuntary contraction. Smooth muscle is found in the walls of many hollow organs and blood vessels and produces involuntary contractions involved in propulsion and regulation of diameter.Nervous tissue is specialized for communication. Neurons receive, integrate, and transmit electrical and chemical signals. Their basic regions include the cell body, dendrites, and axon. Glial cells support neurons by providing metabolic, structural, insulating, and regulatory functions. Nervous tissue coordinates sensation, movement, cognition, autonomic activity, and many aspects of homeostasis.(15)

Although the four tissue categories are described separately, organs usually contain several tissue types working together. For example, the digestive tract combines epithelial lining, connective tissue support, smooth muscle, and neural elements. The functional performance of an organ therefore depends not only on individual cell types but also on the spatial arrangement and interactions among tissues. Histological organization provides a structural explanation for physiological function and is also important in recognizing pathological changes.(16)

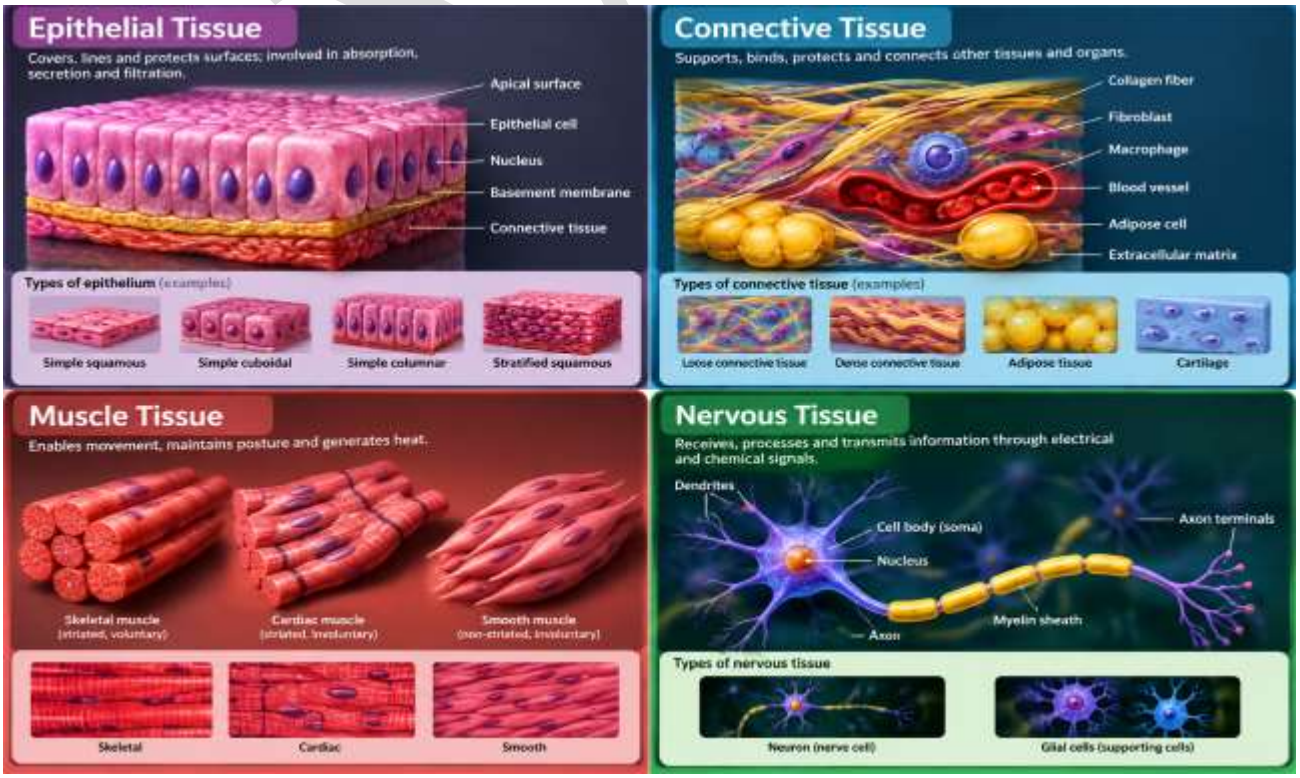


Fig:- Epithelial, Connective, Muscle and Nervous Tissues(14).

2.4 Cell Communication, Junctions and Extracellular Matrix

Cells must communicate continuously to coordinate growth, metabolism, movement, differentiation, and tissue function. Communication can occur through direct contact, local signaling, endocrine signaling, neuronal signaling, and other mechanisms. Chemical messengers such as hormones, neurotransmitters, cytokines, and growth factors bind to specific receptors and activate intracellular signaling pathways.(17)

Cell receptors may be located on the plasma membrane or inside the cell. Membrane receptors commonly recognize water-soluble signaling molecules, while lipid-soluble molecules can cross the membrane and interact with intracellular receptors. Signaling pathways often involve second messengers, protein kinases, phosphatases, ion channels, and transcription factors. The same signal can produce different responses in different cells because receptor expression and intracellular signaling machinery vary among cell types.

Cell junctions are critical for tissue organization. Tight junctions form seals between neighboring epithelial cells and help control movement through the paracellular pathway. Adherens junctions connect cells through cadherin-based adhesion and interact with the actin cytoskeleton. Desmosomes provide strong mechanical attachment through intermediate filaments. Gap junctions form intercellular channels that permit the movement of selected ions and small molecules between adjacent cells. Hemidesmosomes contribute to attachment of epithelial cells to the basement membrane.(17)

The extracellular matrix is an essential component of many tissues. It consists of structural proteins, proteoglycans, glycosaminoglycans, and associated molecules. Collagen provides tensile strength, elastin provides elasticity, and specialized matrix components influence hydration and molecular signaling. The basement membrane provides structural support and contributes to epithelial organization.(13,14)

Cells interact with extracellular matrix through receptors such as integrins. These interactions can influence cell survival, proliferation, differentiation, migration, and mechanical behavior. Mechanical forces can therefore become biochemical signals through mechanotransduction. This principle is important in tissues that experience stretch, compression, shear, or tension.

Cell communication also participates in immune responses and tissue repair. Cytokines can recruit immune cells, regulate inflammation, and influence fibroblast and epithelial behavior. Growth factors can stimulate proliferation and angiogenesis. However, persistent or dysregulated signaling may contribute to chronic inflammation, fibrosis, abnormal tissue remodeling, and cancer.

Thus, tissue organization is not simply a collection of cells placed together. It is an interactive system in which cells communicate with each other and with their surrounding matrix. Disturbances in adhesion, receptor signaling, junctions, or matrix composition can alter tissue integrity and function. Understanding these mechanisms provides a bridge between basic cell biology, physiology, pathology, and regenerative medicine.(16)

2.5. Cell Cycle, Differentiation, Death and Tissue Repair

Cell populations are maintained through coordinated regulation of cell division, differentiation, survival, and death. The cell cycle consists of phases in which cells grow, duplicate their DNA, and divide. Progression through the cycle is controlled by cyclins, cyclin-dependent kinases, checkpoint proteins, and signals from the cellular environment. Checkpoints help prevent cells with severe DNA damage or incomplete replication from progressing inappropriately.(18)

Mitosis produces two daughter cells with essentially equivalent chromosome sets. Controlled proliferation is essential for development and tissue maintenance. However, excessive or inappropriate proliferation can contribute to tumor formation. Cells therefore integrate signals from growth factors, contact with neighboring cells, nutrient availability, DNA integrity, and other regulatory systems.(14,16)

Differentiation is the process through which cells acquire specialized structures and functions. It is driven largely by selective gene expression. During development, stem and progenitor cells respond to molecular signals and progressively adopt specialized phenotypes. In adult tissues, stem or progenitor populations contribute to renewal in tissues with substantial turnover, although regenerative capacity varies considerably among organs.

Cell death is also necessary for normal tissue organization. Apoptosis is a regulated form of cell death characterized by cellular shrinkage, chromatin condensation, fragmentation, and orderly removal of cellular debris. It helps eliminate damaged, unnecessary, or potentially harmful cells. Necrotic cell death is generally associated with severe injury and membrane disruption and can provoke inflammation. Other regulated forms of cell death are recognized as important biological processes under specific conditions.(19)

Tissue repair generally involves overlapping stages. Immediately after injury, hemostatic mechanisms and inflammatory responses limit damage and remove debris. Inflammatory cells release mediators that influence subsequent repair. Proliferative processes then generate new cells and extracellular matrix, while new blood vessels may develop to support the repairing tissue. Remodeling gradually reorganizes matrix and restores structural integrity.

Repair can result in regeneration, in which tissue architecture and function are substantially restored, or fibrosis, in which connective tissue replaces part of the damaged tissue. The outcome depends on the tissue involved, extent of injury, extracellular matrix environment, blood supply, infection, inflammation, and availability of regenerative cells.

The mechanisms of cell cycle control, differentiation, death, and repair are closely connected. A healthy tissue requires an appropriate balance between proliferation and loss, together with accurate communication among cells and matrix. Disturbances can produce developmental abnormalities, degenerative disease, chronic wounds, fibrosis, or cancer. These processes are therefore central to modern pathology, tissue engineering, regenerative medicine, and therapeutic development.(2,16)

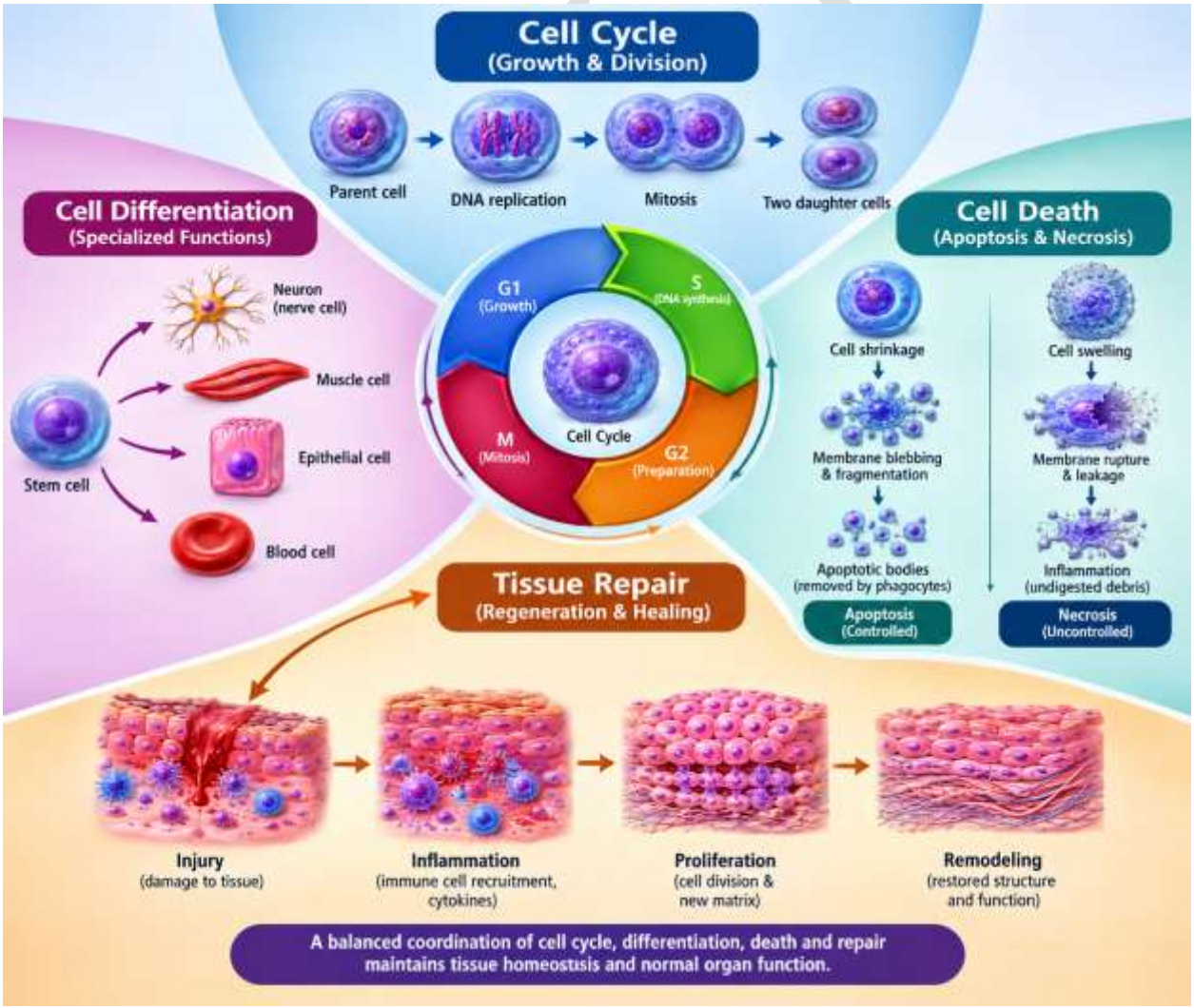


Fig:- Cell Cycle, Differentiation, Death and Tissue Repair(16)

2.6 Clinical Significance of Cells and Tissues

Cellular and tissue organization has direct clinical importance because most diseases involve changes in cells, tissues, or their interactions. In pathology, microscopic examination can reveal changes in cell size, shape, arrangement, nuclear characteristics, extracellular matrix, inflammation, and tissue architecture. These changes help clinicians diagnose and classify disease.(20)

Cancer illustrates the importance of cellular regulation. Malignant transformation can involve abnormal proliferation, altered differentiation, resistance to cell death, genomic instability, changes in cell adhesion, and interactions with the tumor microenvironment. Histopathology and molecular testing therefore examine both cellular features and tissue organization.(1,2)

Inflammation also produces characteristic tissue changes. Acute inflammation may involve vascular alterations, edema, and recruitment of inflammatory cells, whereas chronic inflammation can cause persistent tissue injury, remodeling, and fibrosis. In many diseases, the extracellular matrix and mechanical environment influence progression.(14,20)

Knowledge of normal tissue structure is also essential in regenerative medicine and tissue engineering. Engineered tissues must provide suitable cells, matrix, mechanical properties, nutrient transport, and signaling environments. Modern approaches use biomaterials, organoids, stem-cell-derived tissues, and microphysiological systems to model human biology and disease.

Consequently, cell and tissue biology provides a foundation for diagnosis, pharmacological targeting, biomarker discovery, regenerative therapies, and precision medicine. Understanding normal organization makes abnormal organization recognizable and interpretable.(21)

2.7 Summary

Cells are the basic living units of the human body, and tissues are organized cellular systems that perform specialized functions. Although human cells differ in morphology and activity, they share fundamental structures including a plasma membrane, cytoplasm, genetic material, and specialized organelles. The coordinated actions of mitochondria, ribosomes, endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi apparatus, lysosomes, peroxisomes, cytoskeleton, and nucleus allow cells to maintain metabolism, structure, communication, and survival.

The human body contains four primary tissue types: epithelial, connective, muscle, and nervous tissue. Epithelial tissues provide barriers and perform absorption and secretion. Connective tissues provide support, storage, transport, defense, and structural continuity. Muscle tissues generate force and movement, while nervous tissues transmit and process

information. Organs contain combinations of these tissues arranged according to functional requirements.

Cells communicate through chemical signals, electrical activity, direct contact, and interactions with extracellular matrix. Junctions provide adhesion, barrier formation, mechanical stability, and intercellular communication. The extracellular matrix is an active component of tissues rather than simply a structural scaffold. It can influence cell behavior through biochemical and mechanical signals.

Tissue maintenance depends on controlled cell proliferation, differentiation, migration, survival, and death. When injury occurs, inflammation, proliferation, matrix deposition, angiogenesis, and remodeling contribute to repair. The balance between regeneration and fibrosis depends on tissue-specific and environmental factors.

Disruption of cellular organization may result in disease, including cancer, inflammation, degeneration, fibrosis, and impaired healing. For this reason, cell and tissue biology forms a fundamental bridge between anatomy, physiology, pathology, pharmacology, biomedical engineering, and regenerative medicine. Understanding the normal organization and interaction of cells provides the conceptual basis for recognizing pathological changes and developing new therapeutic strategies.(21)

2.8 Conclusion

Cells and tissues represent the essential organizational foundation of the human body. Every physiological activity, from energy production and transport to sensation, movement, immunity, repair, and reproduction, ultimately depends on coordinated cellular processes. The remarkable complexity of the human organism emerges from relatively basic principles: cells maintain specialized internal compartments, communicate with one another, interact with extracellular matrix, regulate gene expression, respond to environmental signals, and organize into functional tissues.

A detailed understanding of cell structure reveals how form and function are interconnected. The plasma membrane controls exchange and receives signals; the nucleus regulates genetic information; mitochondria support energy metabolism; ribosomes and the endoplasmic reticulum participate in protein production; the Golgi apparatus modifies and sorts cellular products; lysosomes and peroxisomes support degradation and metabolic processing; and the cytoskeleton maintains architecture and enables transport and movement. These organelles do not operate independently. Their functions are integrated through molecular pathways that allow cells to adapt to changing demands.(22)

At the tissue level, the four primary tissue categories provide a useful framework for understanding human anatomy. Epithelial tissue forms selective barriers and secretory surfaces. Connective tissue provides structural support, matrix organization, immune functions, and storage. Muscle tissue converts chemical energy into mechanical force, while nervous tissue enables rapid communication and regulation. In actual organs, these tissue types interact continuously, making tissue architecture an important determinant of organ function.

Cell communication and extracellular matrix interactions add another level of complexity. Signaling pathways allow cells to coordinate their behavior, whereas cell junctions preserve tissue integrity and permit controlled communication. Mechanical forces can influence biochemical signaling, demonstrating that cells respond not only to chemical conditions but also to their physical environment. This concept has increasing importance in mechanobiology, tissue engineering, cancer biology, and regenerative medicine.

The balance between proliferation, differentiation, survival, and cell death is essential for tissue homeostasis. When tissues are injured, repair requires coordinated inflammatory, proliferative, vascular, and matrix-remodeling responses. Effective regeneration can restore structure and function, whereas excessive or prolonged repair may lead to fibrosis and loss of normal architecture. Abnormal regulation of these processes can also contribute to cancer and other diseases.

The clinical relevance of cell and tissue biology is therefore broad. Histopathology depends on recognizing deviations from normal microscopic organization. Pharmacological treatments frequently target receptors, enzymes, ion channels, signaling pathways, or cellular structures. Regenerative medicine seeks to reproduce or restore the cellular and matrix environments required for healthy tissue formation. Emerging technologies such as organoids, single-cell molecular analysis, tissue engineering, and microphysiological systems increasingly rely on principles of cellular and tissue organization.

In conclusion, cells and tissues should be viewed as dynamic, interconnected biological systems rather than static anatomical components. Their structure, communication, mechanical environment, metabolism, and regulatory networks collectively determine health and disease. A strong foundation in cell and tissue biology is therefore indispensable for students and professionals in medicine, nursing, allied health sciences, biomedical sciences, biotechnology, and related disciplines. Continued investigation of cellular heterogeneity, tissue microenvironments, and regenerative mechanisms will further improve our ability to

understand disease and develop precise, effective, and biologically compatible interventions.(23)

References:

1. Alberts B, Johnson A, Lewis J, Morgan D, Raff M, Roberts K, Walter P. Molecular Biology of the Cell. 7th ed. New York: W.W. Norton & Company; 2022.

2. Ross MH, Pawlina W. Histology: A Text and Atlas: With Correlated Cell and Molecular Biology. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer; 2020.

3. Mescher AL. Junqueira's Basic Histology: Text and Atlas. 16th ed. New York: McGraw Hill; 2021.

4. Cooper GM, Hausman RE. The Cell: A Molecular Approach. 9th ed. Sunderland (MA): Sinauer Associates; 2024.

5. Lodish H, Berk A, Kaiser CA, Krieger M, Bretscher A, Ploegh H, et al. Molecular Cell Biology. 9th ed. New York: W.H. Freeman; 2021.

6. Hynes RO. The extracellular matrix: not just pretty fibrils. Science. 2009;326(5957):1216-1219. doi:10.1126/science.1176009.

7. Karp G. Cell and Molecular Biology: Concepts and Experiments. 9th ed. Hoboken (NJ): Wiley; 2020.

8. Cooper GM. The Cell: A Molecular Approach. 2nd ed. Sunderland (MA): Sinauer Associates; 2000.

9. Schwartz MA. Integrins and extracellular matrix in mechanotransduction. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol. 2010;2(12):a005066. doi:10.1101/cshperspect.a005066.

10. Hanahan D. Hallmarks of Cancer: New Dimensions. Cancer Discov. 2022;12(1):31-46. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-21-1059.

11. Green KJ, Jaiganesh A, Broussard JA. Desmosomes: Essential contributors to an integrated intercellular junction network. F1000Res. 2019;8:F1000 Faculty Rev-215. doi:10.12688/f1000research.20942.1.

12. Balda MS, Matter K. Tight junctions and the regulation of gene expression. Semin Cell Dev Biol. 2014;36:126-133.

13. Reed JC. Apoptosis and cancer: strategies for integrating programmed cell death. Semin Hematol. 2000;37(4 Suppl 7):9-16. doi:10.1016/S0037-1963(00)90055-6.

14. Gurtner GC, Werner S, Barrandon Y, Longaker MT. Wound repair and regeneration. Nature. 2008;453(7193):314-321. doi:10.1038/nature07039.

15. Ingber DE. Mechanotransduction: all signals point to cytoskeleton, matrix, and integrins. Sci STKE. 2002;2002(119):pe6. doi:10.1126/stke.2002.119.pe6.

16. Elmore S. Apoptosis: a review of programmed cell death. Toxicol Pathol. 2007;35(4):495-516. doi:10.1080/01926230701320337.

17. Friedman SL, Sheppard D, Duffield JS, Violette S. Therapy for fibrotic diseases: nearing the starting line. Sci Transl Med. 2013;5(167):167sr1. doi:10.1126/scitranslmed.3004700.

18. Lancaster MA, Knoblich JA. Generation of cerebral organoids from human pluripotent stem cells. Nat Protoc. 2014;9(10):2329-2340. doi:10.1038/nprot.2014.158.

19. Suntsova M, Gaifullin N, Allina D, et al. Atlas of RNA sequencing profiles for normal human tissues. Sci Data. 2019;6:36. doi:10.1038/s41597-019-0043-4.

20. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA. Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell. 2011;144(5):646-674. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2011.02.013.

21. Cheong S, Peng Y, Lu F, He Y. Structural extracellular matrix-mediated molecular signaling in wound repair and tissue regeneration. Biochimie. 2025;229:58-68. doi:10.1016/j.biochi.2024.10.003.

22. Mangani S, et al. Design and Applications of Extracellular Matrix Scaffolds in Tissue Engineering and Regeneration. Cells. 2025.

23. Nezwek TA, Varacallo M. Physiology, Connective Tissue. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; updated 2026.

CONTENT

- CHAPTER 3 -

THE INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM: SKIN AND ITS APPENDAGES

3.1 Introduction……48

3.2 Functions of the Skin…….48

3.2.1 Protection

3.2.2 Sensation

3.2.3 Secretion

3.3 Parts of the Skin…….49

3.3.1 Epidermis

3.3.2 Layers of the Epidermis

3.3.3 Dermis

3.4 Cleavage Lines (Lines of Langer)…….51

3.5 Skin Creases……...51

3.6 Appendages of the Skin……..51

3.6.1 Nails

3.6.2 Hair Follicles

3.6.3 Arrector Pili Muscles

3.6.4 Sebaceous Glands

3.6.5 Sweat Glands

3.7 Nerve Supply of the Skin……..52

3.7.1 Sensory Nerve Supply

3.7.2 Dermatome

3.7.3 Sympathetic Nerve Supply

3.8 Clinical Importance of the Skin……..53

SVU

3.9 The Mammary Gland……53

3.10 Areola and Nipple……53

3.10.1 Areola

3.10.2 Nipple

3.11 Architecture of the Mammary Gland…….53

3.11.1 Glandular Part

3.11.2 Connective Tissue Stroma

3.11.3 Suspensory Ligaments of Cooper

3.12 Nerve and Hormonal Control……..54

3.13 Blood Supply……..54

3.14 Lymphatic Drainage……..55

3.14.1 Lymphatic Drainage of the Four Quadrants

3.14.2 Clinical Importance of Lymphatic Drainage

3.15 Development of the Mammary Gland……..55

3.16 Anomalies of Development……56

3.17 Clinical Importance of the Mammary Gland……..56

3.18 Summary…….56

Reference……57

SVU

CHAPTER 3

THE INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM: SKIN AND ITS APPENDAGES

Ms. Atrayee Nandy

Department of Medical Laboratory Technology, School of Allied Health Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Barasat Rd, Telinipara, Malir Math, Bara Kanthalia, West Bengal 700121, India

OVERVIEW

The integumentary system consists of the skin and its appendages, including hair, nails, sebaceous glands, sweat glands, and associated muscles and nerves. The skin is **the** largest organ of the human body and forms the outer protective covering of the body. It is composed mainly of two layers: the epidermis, an outer avascular layer derived from ectoderm, and the dermis, a deeper vascular connective-tissue layer derived from mesoderm. The skin performs several essential functions, including protection against mechanical injury, microorganisms, chemicals, and excessive water loss**,** as well as sensation, temperature regulation, secretion, and limited metabolic functions.

The epidermis is organized into distinct layers, including the stratum basale, stratum spinosum, stratum granulosum, stratum lucidum, and stratum corneum**,** while the dermis consists of papillary and reticular layers. The chapter also discusses cleavage lines (Lines of Langer), skin creases, hair follicles, nails, arrector pili muscles, sebaceous glands, and sweat glands**,** emphasizing their anatomical structure and functional importance. The sensory and sympathetic nerve supply of the skin, including dermatomes**,** is also described.

The chapter further explains the clinical importance of the skin**,** including its role in identifying disease, assessing burns, maintaining body temperature, and facilitating transdermal drug delivery. It also introduces the mammary gland**,** including the areola, nipple, glandular tissue, connective-tissue stroma, suspensory ligaments, blood supply, lymphatic drainage, hormonal control, development, and developmental anomalies. Understanding the anatomy and physiology of the integumentary system is essential for recognizing normal skin function, common clinical conditions, wound healing, infection, breast disease, and other disorders affecting the body's external protective system**.**

3.1 Introduction to the Skin

The skin is the largest organ of the human body and forms the outer protective covering of the entire body. It acts as an important barrier against physical injury, microorganisms, chemicals, ultraviolet radiation, and excessive water loss. The skin also plays a major role in maintaining body temperature through sweating and changes in blood flow. It contains numerous sensory receptors that enable the body to perceive touch, pressure, pain, heat, and cold**.** In addition, the skin contributes to excretion through sweat, vitamin D synthesis, immune defense, and sensory perception**.** Structurally, it consists mainly of two layers - the epidermis and dermis - which are supported by the underlying subcutaneous tissue. Thus, the skin is essential for protection, sensation, temperature regulation, and maintaining the overall internal balance of the body[1].

3.2 Functions of the Skin

3.2.1 Protection

The skin protects the body against injury or trauma, infections, and excessive loss of body fluids.

- **Mechanical barrier:** Shields underlying tissues from physical trauma, abrasion, and foreign entry.
- **Permeability barrier:** Prevents excessive loss of water and electrolytes (prevents dehydration).
- **UV protection:** Melanin pigment absorbs harmful ultraviolet radiation from the sun.

3.2.2 Sensation

The skin provides sensations through receptor nerve endings[2]. These receptors are responsible for exteroceptive sensations such as pain, touch, temperature, and pressure.

- **Sensory receptors:** Houses specialized nerve endings for pain, temperature, touch, and pressure.
- **Environmental awareness:** Delivers continuous tactile feedback to the central nervous system.

3.2.3 Secretion

- **Sweat production:** Excretes water, sodium chloride, and trace metabolic wastes; drives thermoregulation via evaporation.
- **Sebum production:** Discharges lipid-rich matter to lubricate hair shafts and soften the outer skin layers.

3.3 Parts of the Skin

The skin consists of two main parts: the outer epidermis and the inner dermis.

3.3.1 Epidermis

The epidermis is made up of keratinized stratified squamous epithelium. It consists of five strata or layers of cells.

3.3.2 Layers of the Epidermis

3.3.2.1 Stratum Basale (Stratum Germinativum)

The stratum basale consists of a single layer of low columnar or cuboidal cells resting on the basement membrane. Mitosis occurs mainly in this layer.

3.3.2.2 Stratum Spinosum

The stratum spinosum consists of several layers of polyhedral cells and is also called the prickle-cell layer. The cell membranes possess spines or prickles that interdigitate with those of adjacent cells[3].

3.3.2.3 Stratum Granulosum

The stratum granulosum consists of several layers of flattened cells. The cells contain conspicuous basophilic granules.

3.3.2.4 Stratum Lucidum

The stratum lucidum consists of several layers of flattened, anucleate cells. It has a hyaline appearance and shows weak cytoplasmic eosinophilia.

3.3.2.5 Stratum Corneum

- The stratum corneum consists of many layers of large, cornified, anucleate cells that appear as scales. The stratum lucidum and stratum corneum consist of dead or cornified cells.
- The thickness of the epidermis varies from approximately 20 to 1400 micrometres, depending on the location.

3.3.3 Dermis

The dermis is made up of connective tissue and contains the following structures:

- Derivatives of the epidermis, including hair follicles, sebaceous glands, sweat glands, and nails.
- Arrector pili muscles, which are smooth muscle fibres attached to the hair follicles[4].
- Cutaneous blood vessels.
- Cutaneous nerves and receptor nerve endings.
- Superficial lymphatics.

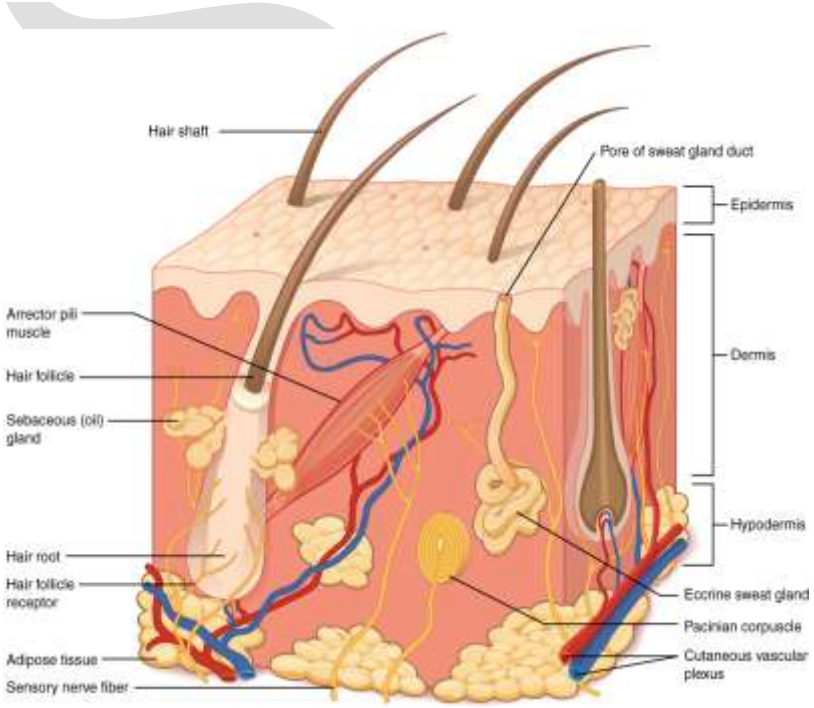
- Mammary glands in females.
- A variable amount of fat in the deeper part of the dermis, which merges with the subcutaneous fat of the superficial fascia.

3.3.4 Structure of the Skin: Diagram Labels

Important labels for a diagram of the structure of the skin include:

- Opening of sweat gland
- Stratum granulosum
- Duct
- Sweat gland
- Hair
- Stratum corneum
- Stratum lucidum
- Stratum spinosum
- Stratum germinativum
- Sebaceous gland
- Arrector pili
- Hair bulb
- Dermis

Figure 3.1: Structure of the skin



3.4 Cleavage Lines (Lines of Langer)

- The collagen fibre bundles in the dermis follow a general directional pattern in different parts of the body, forming cleavage lines or Lines of Langer.
- An incision made across the prevailing direction of these collagen fibre bundles cuts many collagen fibres. This results in gaping of the skin wound, which heals with a prominent scar.
- If an incision is made parallel to the direction of the cleavage lines, fewer collagen fibres are cut. Therefore, there is less gaping of the wound and healing occurs with minimum scar tissue.
- In the neck, thorax, and abdomen, the cleavage lines run circumferentially, whereas in the limbs they follow a longitudinal pattern.
- Cleavage lines are important in planning surgical incisions on the skin.

3.5 Skin Creases

The skin over joints folds at certain places, producing skin creases. Skin creases are also present in the palm and, to a lesser extent, in the sole. At the sites of skin creases, the skin is thinner and firmly attached to the underlying structures.

3.6 Appendages of the Skin

The appendages of the skin are the nails, hair follicles, sebaceous glands, and sweat glands.

3.6.1 Nails

Nails are keratinized plates present on the dorsal surfaces of the tips of the fingers and toes.

The proximal edge of the nail plate is the root of the nail. The distal edge projects beyond the nail bed and becomes dead, allowing it to be cut or trimmed.

The surface of the skin covered by the nail plate is called the nail bed. The nail is surrounded by nail folds except at its free edge.

3.6.2 Hair Follicles

Hair follicles are invaginations of the epidermis that extend obliquely into the deeper part of the dermis. Hair grows from the hair follicles. The roots of the hairs form hair bulbs whose concave bases are occupied by vascular connective tissue, forming the hair papillae.

3.6.3 Arrector Pili Muscles

The arrector pili are smooth muscle fibres that connect the lower part of the hair follicles to the deeper layer of the epidermis. The arrector pili muscles are supplied by sympathetic fibres. Their contraction causes the hair follicles to become more erect, producing the condition commonly called goose flesh. Their contraction also compresses the sebaceous glands and helps extrude sebum into the hair follicles.

3.6.4 Distribution of Hair

Hair is distributed over most of the surface of the body except in the following areas:

- Palms and soles
- Lips
- Sides of fingers and toes
- Labia majora and labia minora in females

3.6.5 Sebaceous Glands

Sebaceous glands are branched alveolar glands that secrete sebum, the natural oil, into the hair follicles. These glands are situated between the arrector pili muscles and the sloping surface of the hair follicles. Sebum keeps the hair flexible and oils the skin surface.

3.6.6 Sweat Glands

Sweat glands are coiled tubular glands that secrete sweat. They lie in the deeper part of the dermis and have long ducts that pass through the dermis and epidermis to open through minute pores on the skin surface.

Sweat glands are distributed over most surfaces of the body except:

- Red margin of the lips
- Nail beds
- Glans penis in males and clitoris in females

3.7 Nerve Supply of the Skin

3.7.1 Sensory Nerve Supply

The skin receives sensory nerve supply from the spinal and cranial nerves. Sensory nerve fibres arise from receptor end organs and free nerve endings located in the dermis[5].

3.7.2 Dermatome

The sensory nerve supply of the skin basically follows a segmental pattern. The area of skin supplied by one pair of spinal nerves, corresponding to one spinal segment, is called a dermatome.

There is overlap in the nerve supply of a dermatome from the adjoining dermatomes.

3.7.3 Sympathetic Nerve Supply

The spinal nerves also carry post-ganglionic sympathetic fibres that supply:

- Blood vessels of the skin
- Sweat glands
- Arrector pili muscles

3.8 Clinical Importance of the Skin

The skin has considerable clinical importance. Systemic diseases may produce skin manifestations such as vasoconstriction, vasodilatation, eruptions, and oedema[7]. The skin is important in plastic surgery, including skin grafting and cosmetic surgery. Loss of skin in burn injuries can cause extensive fluid loss.

3.9 Introduction to the Mammary Gland

The mammary gland is a secondary sex gland in females responsible for the production of milk. It consists of highly enlarged and modified sweat glands situated on the anterior aspect of the upper part of the thorax.

3.10 Areola and Nipple

3.10.1 Areola

The areola is a circular patch of coloured skin surrounding the nipple. It contains large sweat glands that become enlarged during pregnancy and form raised tubercles called the tubercles of Montgomery. The areola is lighter in colour initially, but during the second month of the first pregnancy its colour becomes permanently darker.

3.10.2 Nipple (Mammary Papilla)

The nipple is a conical elevation situated at the centre of the areola. It is situated slightly below and lateral to the centre of the breast. In males, the nipple is located in the fourth intercostal space, approximately 10 cm from the median plane. The summit of the nipple has openings for approximately 15 to 20 lactiferous ducts. A subareolar muscle is present at its base and contains both circular and radiating muscle fibres[6].

3.11 Architecture of the Mammary Gland

3.11.1 Glandular Part

- The glandular part consists of approximately 15 to 20 pyramidal-shaped lobes.

- Each lobe contains clusters of secreting units or acini forming many lobules.
- One lactiferous duct from each lobe collects the secretion and converges towards the base of the nipple.
- There is a slight dilation, called the lactiferous sinus, in the duct near the base of the nipple.
- Each lactiferous duct opens separately at the summit of the nipple.

3.11.2 Connective Tissue Stroma

The connective tissue stroma surrounds the lobes and contains a variable amount of fat, which gives the breast its rounded contour. The stroma forms a membranous capsule on its deep surface, which is separated from the deep fascia of the pectoralis major by the retromammary space.

3.11.3 Suspensory Ligaments of Cooper

The suspensory ligaments, or ligaments of Cooper, are fibroelastic bands that act as connective tissue septa interconnecting the lobes. They connect the lobes of the gland to the skin and underlying deep fascia. With advancing age, these ligaments lose their elasticity, causing sagging of the breast.

In a breast tumour, these ligaments may become shortened, causing retraction of the overlying skin.

3.12 Nerve and Hormonal Control of the Mammary Gland

- The secretory activity of the mammary gland is under the control of prolactin, a hormone secreted by the anterior pituitary gland.
- The proliferation of glandular tissue during pregnancy and lactation is associated with increased levels of oestrogen and progesterone.
- The blood vessels supplying the gland are supplied by sympathetic nerves.

3.13 Blood Supply of the Mammary Gland

- The mammary gland is supplied mainly by branches of the axillary artery, particularly the thoracoacromial and lateral thoracic arteries.
- It is also supplied by perforating branches of the internal mammary artery, especially those associated with the second, third, and fourth intercostal spaces.

3.14 Lymphatic Drainage of the Mammary Gland

- The lymphatics of the mammary gland generally follow the blood vessels.
- Approximately 80% of the lymph from the mammary gland drains into the axillary lymph nodes.
- The remaining lymph drains into the parasternal lymph nodes along the internal thoracic artery and into the supraclavicular lymph nodes.

3.14.1 Lymphatic Drainage of the Four Quadrants

For the purpose of describing lymphatic drainage, the breast is divided into four quadrants:
Superomedial
Superolateral
Inferomedial
Inferolateral.

- All four quadrants drain lymph into the axillary lymph nodes, mainly the anterior and posterior groups.
- The medial quadrants also drain part of their lymph into the parasternal lymph nodes[8].
- Some lymphatics from the inferomedial quadrant pass into the rectus sheath and reach the peritoneal cavity, providing a route for the spread of breast cancer.
- Some lymphatics from the upper quadrants cross the clavicle and may reach the supraclavicular lymph nodes.
- Some superficial lymphatics may communicate across the midline with the lymphatics of the opposite breast.

3.14.2 Clinical Importance of Lymphatic Drainage

The extensive lymphatic connections of the mammary gland are clinically important because breast carcinoma can spread to regional and distant lymph nodes through these lymphatic pathways[10].

3.15 Development of the Mammary Gland

- The mammary gland develops from a thick ridge of ectoderm called the milk ridge or mammary line, which extends from the axillary region to the groin or inguinal region[9].
- The gland develops from the upper part of this ridge in the pectoral region, while the remainder of the ridge disappears.

- During fetal development, the nipple area remains inverted and becomes everted during the later part of the fetal period before birth.

3.16 Anomalies of Development

- Amastia — absence of the mammary gland, usually on one side.
- Polymastia — presence of accessory or supernumerary breasts.
- Polythelia — presence of an accessory nipple or nipples.
- Gynecomastia — development of mammary gland tissue in males, associated with hormonal disorder.
- Congenital retraction of the nipple — failure of eversion of the nipple at birth.

3.17 Clinical Importance of the Mammary Gland

- The female breast is a common site of cancer.
- Breast cancer may present as a hard lump that becomes fixed to the skin or deep fascia[11].
- Breast cancer may spread to the lymph nodes of drainage.
- Retraction of the overlying skin or nipple may occur in breast cancer.
- The mammary gland may develop retention cysts due to blockage of lactiferous ducts.[12]
- The breast may be affected by acute inflammatory conditions such as breast abscess.

3.18 Summary

The skin is the largest organ of the body and consists mainly of the epidermis and dermis. It provides protection, sensation, and important secretory functions. The epidermis consists of five strata: stratum basale, stratum spinosum, stratum granulosum, stratum lucidum, and stratum corneum. The dermis contains blood vessels, nerves, lymphatics, hair follicles, glands, and other structures. The appendages of the skin include nails, hair follicles, sebaceous glands, and sweat glands. Cleavage lines and skin creases are important anatomical features, particularly in surgery.

The mammary gland is a modified sweat gland and a secondary sex gland in females. It consists of lobes, lobules, ducts, connective tissue, fat, and suspensory ligaments. Its blood supply and lymphatic drainage are clinically important, particularly in the spread of breast

cancer. Knowledge of its development and congenital anomalies is also important in clinical anatomy.

Reference

1. Roosterman, D., Goerge, T., Schneider, S. W., Bunnett, N. W., & Steinhoff, M. (2006). Neuronal control of skin function: the skin as a neuroimmunoendocrine organ. *Physiological reviews*, *86*(4), 1309-1379.

2. McGlone, F., & Reilly, D. (2010). The cutaneous sensory system. *Neuroscience & Biobehavioral Reviews*, *34*(2), 148-159.

3. Obland, G. F. (1958). The fine structure of the interrelationship of cells in the human epidermis. *The Journal of Cell Biology*, *4*(5), 529-538.

4. Martel, J. L., Miao, J. H., Badri, T., & Fakoya, A. O. (2024). Anatomy, hair follicle. In *StatPearls [Internet]*. StatPearls Publishing.

5. Cauna, N. I. K. O. L. A. J. S. (1973). The free penicillate nerve endings of the human hairy skin. *Journal of anatomy*, *115*(Pt 2), 277.

6. Zucca-Matthes, G., Urban, C., & Vallejo, A. (2016). Anatomy of the nipple and breast ducts. *Gland surgery*, *5*(1), 32.

7. Leal, J. M., de Souza, G. H., Marsillac, P. F. D., & Gripp, A. C. (2021). Skin manifestations associated with systemic diseases–Part II. *Anais brasileiros de dermatologia*, *96*(6), 672-687.

8. Mikhael, M., & Khan, Y. S. (2023). Anatomy, abdomen and pelvis: lymphatic drainage. In *StatPearls [Internet]*. StatPearls Publishing.

9. Harris, J. R., Lippman, M. E., Osborne, C. K., & Morrow, M. (2012). *Diseases of the Breast*. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

10. Natale, G., Stouthandel, M. E., Van Hoof, T., & Bocci, G. (2021). The lymphatic system in breast cancer: anatomical and molecular approaches. *Medicina*, *57*(11), 1272.

11. Gupta, M., & Goyal, N. (2022). Applied anatomy of breast cancer. In *Breast Cancer: Comprehensive Management* (pp. 23-35). Singapore: Springer Nature Singapore.

12. Mitchell, K. B., & Johnson, H. M. (2022). Breast conditions in the breastfeeding mother. In *Breastfeeding* (pp. 572-593). Elsevier.

CONTENT

- CHAPTER 4 –

The Skeletal System: Framework of the Human Body

4.1 Introduction and anatomical reasoning……..59

4.2 Organization and classification of the skeleton……..60

4.3 Gross architecture of a bone…….....62

4.4 Microscopic architecture and material organization…….63

4.5 Vascular supply and attachment interfaces……64

4.6 Development and growth……...65

4.7 Skull and craniofacial framework……66

4.8 Vertebral column and intervertebral connections……..67

4.9 Thoracic cage…….69

4.10 Pectoral girdle and humerus……70

4.11 Forearm, wrist and hand……71

4.12 Pelvic girdle and pelvic cavity……72

4.13 Femur, patella and knee framework……..73

4.14 Leg, ankle and foot……..74

4.15 Joints and articular tissues……75

4.16 Limited physiological foundations……..77

4.17 Repair, ageing and structural failure……78

4.18 Surface anatomy, imaging and laboratory relevance……..79

4.19 Critical perspectives and future directions……...79

4.20 Summary and key points……80

References……81

CHAPTER 4

The Skeletal System: Framework of the Human Body

Dr. Rajen Dey

Department of Medical Laboratory Technology, School of Allied Health Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Barasat Rd, Telinipara, Malir Math, Bara Kanthalia, West Bengal 700121, India

Overview

The human skeleton is a living arrangement of bones, cartilages and joints whose regional geometry makes support, protection and movement possible. Its significance becomes clearer when anatomy is examined at connected scales: the contour of a whole bone, the distribution of cortical and trabecular tissue, and the microscopic organisation of its matrix. This chapter develops that approach from skeletal classification to the skull, vertebral column, thoracic cage and appendicular skeleton. Particular attention is given to palpable landmarks, articular surfaces, neurovascular relationships, skeletal development and anatomical variation. Physiology is restricted to the processes needed to explain structure, including growth, remodelling, mineral exchange and repair. The central argument is that skeletal competence cannot be inferred from bone number or mineral density alone. Shape, tissue distribution, vascular access, joint congruence and loading history also matter. Regional examples explain why a femoral neck fracture threatens blood supply, why a small carpal bone can develop nonunion, and why pelvic or vertebral variation changes anatomical interpretation. Established anatomy is distinguished from experimental findings and emerging teaching technologies. The resulting synthesis treats the skeleton as an adaptable organ system while retaining the descriptive precision required for undergraduate anatomy and allied health education. [1, 2, 3]

4.1 Introduction and anatomical reasoning

4.1.1 Scope and learning objectives

A bone is an organ containing osseous tissue, marrow, vessels, nerves and connective tissue coverings. The skeleton includes these organs and their articulations; it is therefore broader than a collection of dry specimens. A useful anatomical description should establish position, orientation, surfaces, attachments, articulations and relationships before discussing function.

This sequence prevents a common error in learning anatomy: recognising a bone's name without understanding where its features face in the living body. [1]

The learner should be able to distinguish axial from appendicular components; identify major regional bones; describe a typical long bone and synovial joint; interpret common surface markings; explain the structural consequences of skeletal growth; and relate selected injuries to local anatomy. A further objective is to recognise the limits of an idealised atlas. Normal anatomy includes variation in proportions, fusion, accessory bones and joint shape, and a diagram should not be mistaken for an invariant individual template. [2, 4]

4.1.2 A critical framework for reading bone

This chapter uses three recurring questions. Where is tissue distributed? Which structures meet at its interfaces? How does the anatomy change with development or loading? These questions connect descriptive osteology with clinical reasoning. For example, a broad epiphysis distributes joint forces, an elongated shaft separates joints and provides leverage, and a thin cortical shell can still contribute substantially to whole-bone strength because of its distance from the neutral axis. Such relationships are interpretive connections grounded in established structural mechanics, rather than claims that every anatomical feature has a single adaptive explanation. [5, 6]

4.2 Organisation and classification of the skeleton

4.2.1 Axial and appendicular divisions

The conventional adult skeleton contains 206 bones, divided into 80 axial and 126 appendicular bones. The axial division comprises the skull, auditory ossicles, hyoid, vertebral column and thoracic cage. The appendicular division comprises the pectoral girdles, upper limbs, pelvic girdle and lower limbs. These totals reflect counting conventions: the fused adult sacrum is counted as one bone, while each rib is counted separately. Accessory ossicles, sutural bones and variable coccygeal fusion mean that 206 is a teaching standard rather than a diagnostic requirement. [1]

The axial skeleton surrounds or supports central organs, whereas the appendicular skeleton extends the body's reach and connects it to the ground. The two divisions nevertheless work together. The sternoclavicular joint is the upper limb's only direct bony articulation with the axial skeleton. In the lower body, sacroiliac articulations transmit trunk loads into the pelvic ring and lower limbs. These connections explain why regional osteology must eventually be integrated into the whole body. [1]

4.2.2 Bone shapes and surface markings

Long bones have a shaft and expanded ends; their classification depends on proportions rather than absolute size. Thus, a phalanx is a long bone. Short bones, such as most carpals, have more comparable dimensions. Flat bones include much of the cranial vault, sternum and scapula. Vertebrae are irregular bones, and sesamoid bones develop within tendons; the patella is the largest example. Pneumatic bones contain air-filled spaces, as seen in several skull bones. [1]

A head or condyle usually participates in articulation; a tubercle, tuberosity or crest commonly anchors soft tissue. A fossa is a depression, a sulcus a groove, and a foramen an opening. These names describe form rather than guaranteeing a particular content. A foramen may transmit a nerve, vessel or both. Landmark interpretation therefore requires identification of the bone and its regional relationships, not memorisation of terminology alone. [1]

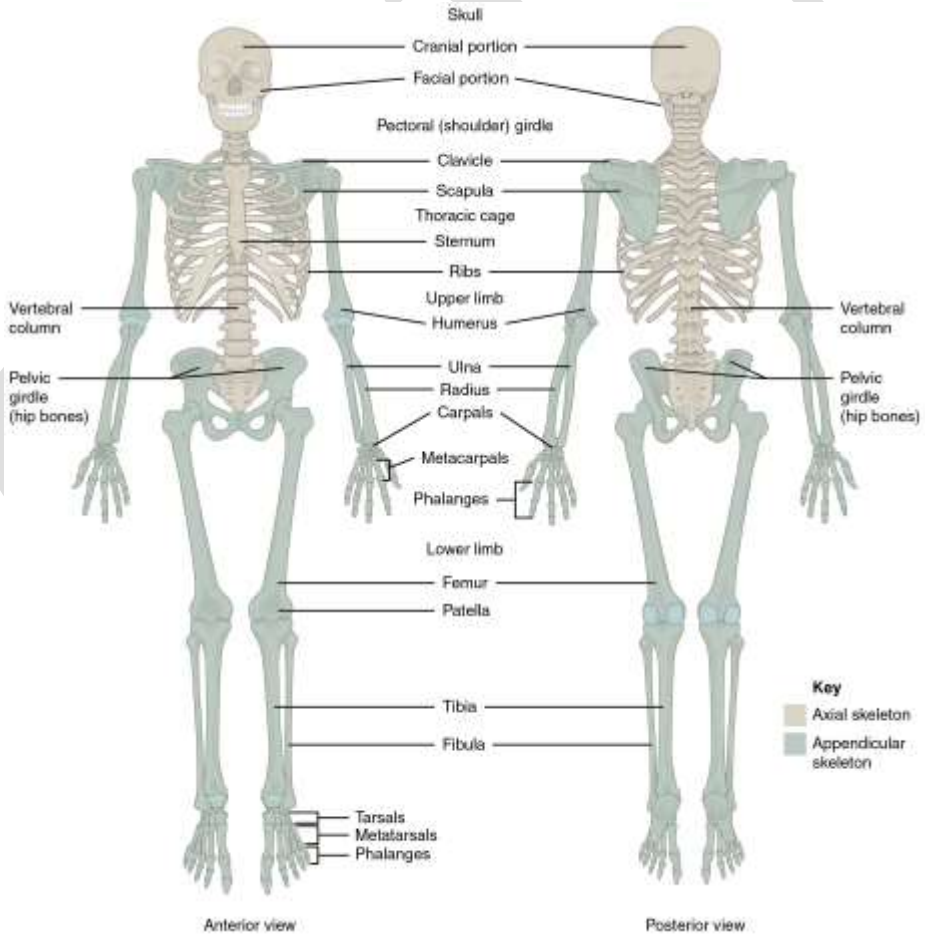


Figure 1. Axial and appendicular divisions. Anterior and posterior views show the major bones and their relationships. The colour key distinguishes the central axial framework from the girdles and limbs

4.3 Gross architecture of a bone

4.3.1 The long bone as an organ

The diaphysis forms the shaft of a long bone, while proximal and distal epiphyses form its ends. The metaphysis is the transitional region adjacent to the growth plate in the immature skeleton. After longitudinal growth ends, an epiphyseal line may mark the former plate. The shaft typically encloses a medullary cavity and has a relatively thick cortex. The ends contain abundant trabecular bone beneath a thinner cortical shell. This pattern varies by bone, age and location. [1]

Periosteum covers most external nonarticular surfaces and contains an outer fibrous layer and an inner cellular layer. It supports vascular entry, attachment and repair. Articular cartilage covers joint surfaces and is not replaced by periosteum. Endosteal lining is found along internal bone surfaces, including the medullary cavity and trabeculae. Consequently, external and internal surfaces provide distinct environments for bone formation and resorption. Treating the periosteum as merely a wrapping overlooks its biological and mechanical roles. [7]

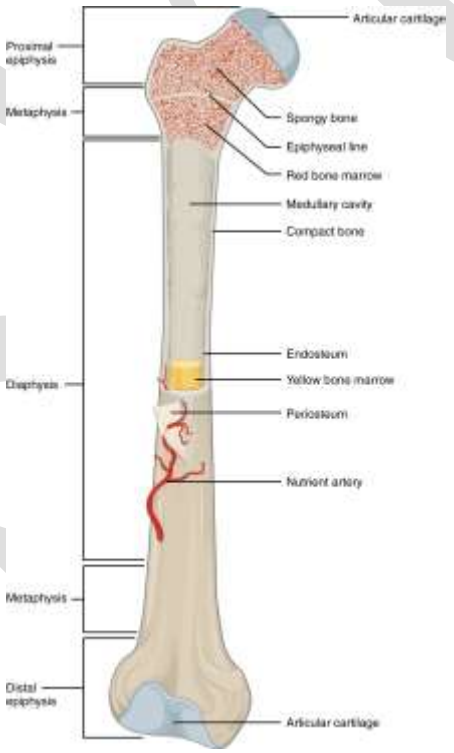


Figure 2. Gross anatomy of a long bone. A longitudinal section identifies epiphyses, metaphyses, diaphysis, cortical and trabecular tissue, marrow, periosteum and endosteum. The epiphyseal line marks the former growth plate

4.3.2 Cortex, trabeculae and marrow spaces

Cortical bone forms a dense external envelope, whereas cancellous bone consists of interconnected plates and rods. The latter are not random debris within a hollow shell: their thickness, connectivity and orientation influence load transfer. Marrow occupies the intervening spaces. Red marrow supports blood-cell production, while yellow marrow contains more adipose tissue; their distributions change during growth and with physiological demand. Adult red marrow is concentrated in the axial skeleton and selected proximal limb regions. [1, 8]

Bone strength depends on how much tissue is present and where it is placed. Increased external diameter can partly compensate for tissue loss, but cortical thinning, porosity and trabecular disconnection can compromise resistance to loading. These changes may occur unevenly within one bone. Therefore, a single average density measurement cannot describe the entire structural condition of a skeletal region. [3, 9]

4.4 Microscopic architecture and material organisation

4.4.1 Lamellae, osteons and the cellular network

Mature bone is predominantly lamellar, with collagen organised into layers. In cortical bone, secondary osteons commonly contain concentric lamellae surrounding a central vascular canal. Perforating canals connect vascular pathways across the cortex. Interstitial lamellae are remnants of earlier structural units, and circumferential lamellae extend around broader surfaces. Not all cortical tissue is arranged into complete cylindrical osteons, and trabeculae generally lack the same classic osteonal pattern. [1, 5]

Osteocytes occupy lacunae and extend processes through canaliculi. This interconnected network allows communication within mineralised tissue and participates in sensing the mechanical environment. Osteoblasts produce bone matrix at forming surfaces, whereas multinucleated osteoclasts resorb it. Woven bone has less orderly collagen organisation and occurs during early development and rapid repair. Its presence must be interpreted in context rather than automatically labelled pathological. [10]

4.4.2 Why microscopic variation matters

Bone combines a collagen-rich organic framework with mineral, principally carbonated apatite. The interaction between these components produces properties that neither component has alone. Structural hierarchy extends from molecular associations to fibrils, lamellae, tissue compartments and whole-bone geometry. Failure can initiate at one scale and

propagate through another, explaining why material composition and architecture should be considered together. [5, 6]

Human measurements show that osteocyte lacunar density varies between skeletal sites and with age-related factors. Accordingly, a sample from a rib should not automatically represent the femur or radius. Microdamage also accumulates in bone exposed to repeated loading, but a microscopic crack is not equivalent to a clinical fracture. Its significance depends on distribution, repair and interaction with the surrounding tissue. These observations caution against treating skeletal tissue as uniform across the body. [11, 12]

4.5 Vascular supply and attachment interfaces

4.5.1 Blood supply and innervation

Long bones receive nutrient, periosteal, metaphyseal and epiphyseal vessels. Nutrient vessels enter through foramina and supply internal regions; periosteal vessels contribute to outer cortical supply. These territories interconnect, and their relationships change during growth. Vessels approaching an epiphysis may be vulnerable where they course close to a joint capsule or across a narrow neck. Anatomical disruption can therefore threaten viability even when the fractured fragments remain close together. [1]

Experimental imaging has identified extensive transcortical vascular connections in mouse long bones, with supporting observations in human tissue. This work refines the familiar division between outer and inner blood supply, but the quantitative contribution of each pathway should not be assumed identical across species or skeletal sites. Periosteum is richly innervated and sensitive to injury. Pain arising from bone therefore cannot be explained by mineralised matrix alone. [13]

4.5.2 Entheses and transitions between tissues

An enthesis is the attachment region of a tendon, ligament or capsule to bone. Fibrous and fibrocartilaginous attachments differ in their tissue organisation. At many fibrocartilaginous entheses, a graded transition between soft tissue and mineralised tissue reduces an abrupt mechanical mismatch. Nearby fibrocartilage, bursae and fat pads may participate in a wider functional attachment complex. The visible roughness on a dry bone shows only part of this interface. [14]

An enlarged or irregular attachment does not independently establish the exact activity, occupation or symptom history of an individual. Development, age, loading and disease can all influence its appearance. The critical anatomical lesson is to describe the feature first and limit causal interpretation to what the evidence supports. Attachment anatomy becomes

especially useful when relating a fracture fragment to the direction of muscular or ligamentous pull. [14]

4.6 Development and growth

4.6.1 Ossification and skeletal origins

Intramembranous ossification produces bone within mesenchymal tissue and contributes substantially to the cranial vault. Endochondral ossification replaces a cartilage model and forms most limb bones and much of the axial skeleton. These pathways are developmental processes, not permanent classifications of mature bone tissue. Both ultimately produce mineralised bone capable of remodelling. The clavicle illustrates the limitations of an overly simple distinction because its development includes contributions from more than one ossification mechanism. [1, 15]

The vertebral column develops largely from sclerotomal components of somites. Resegmentation helps align vertebrae with surrounding muscles and emerging spinal nerves. Limb skeletal elements arise within the developing limb buds. These origins help explain why congenital changes can involve several connected structures, rather than only the final shape of one bone. Development provides a map for understanding adult relationships, not merely a chronology preceding them. [16]

4.6.2 Growth plates and maturation

The growth plate contains spatially organised chondrocytes passing through resting, proliferative and hypertrophic states. Cartilage production and its replacement by bone permit longitudinal growth. Appositional growth changes bone width through activity at its surfaces. Because these processes are distinct, a growing bone can change length, diameter and shape at different rates. A physeal injury may therefore alter future growth even when an initial displacement appears small. [17]

Ossification centres appear and unite at variable ages. Their timing is influenced by biological maturation and should not be treated as a universally precise clock. Human skeletal stem-cell research has identified cell populations with the capacity to generate skeletal tissues, but laboratory identification does not mean that all skeletal defects can already be regenerated reliably in patients. Developmental biology strengthens anatomical explanation while demanding care when translated into therapeutic expectations. [18]

4.7 Skull and craniofacial framework

4.7.1 Neurocranium, face and sutures

The conventional skull comprises eight cranial bones and fourteen facial bones, excluding the auditory ossicles. The cranial bones are the frontal, occipital, sphenoid and ethmoid, with paired parietal and temporal bones. The face includes paired maxillae, zygomatic, nasal, lacrimal, palatine and inferior nasal conchae, together with the mandible and vomer. The neurocranium encloses the brain; the facial skeleton supports the entrances to the respiratory and digestive tracts and contributes to the orbits. [1]

Coronal, sagittal, lambdoid and squamous sutures connect major cranial bones. Sutures are developmental and mechanical interfaces rather than inert seams. In the growing skull, their patency contributes to expansion around the brain. Cranial vault formation and skull-base development follow related but distinct pathways, which matters when interpreting congenital craniofacial abnormalities. A skull should therefore be examined as an interconnected set of walls, floors and junctions. [19, 20]

4.7.2 Cranial base and important passages

The anterior, middle and posterior cranial fossae support different brain regions. The cribriform plate transmits olfactory nerve filaments; the optic canal transmits the optic nerve and ophthalmic artery. The superior orbital fissure transmits several nerves controlling eye movement and sensation. The foramina rotundum and ovale transmit the maxillary and mandibular divisions of the trigeminal nerve respectively. The foramen magnum provides continuity between the cranial cavity and vertebral canal. [1]

The pterion is the region where frontal, parietal, sphenoid and temporal bones approach one another. Its relationship to the middle meningeal vessels gives lateral skull trauma clinical significance. However, sutural patterns and measurements vary, and an average pterion location should not replace individual imaging during procedural planning. [21]

The orbital roof is principally frontal bone with a posterior sphenoidal contribution. The floor is largely maxillary, with contributions from zygomatic and palatine bones; the medial wall contains substantial ethmoid and lacrimal components. This arrangement places the orbit beside the ethmoidal air cells and above the maxillary sinus. Thin intervening walls explain routes by which trauma or infection can affect adjacent compartments. The hard palate separates the nasal and oral cavities and is formed by the palatine processes of the maxillae and horizontal plates of the palatine bones. These boundaries should be located on both intact and sectioned specimens. [1]

4.7.3 Facial cavities and the developing skull

The bony orbit is formed by seven bones and protects the globe while admitting vessels, nerves and muscles. The nasal cavity is divided by a septum whose bony components include the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid and vomer. Superior and middle nasal conchae belong to the ethmoid, whereas each inferior concha is a separate bone. Paranasal sinuses occur in the frontal, ethmoid, sphenoid and maxillary bones. Their dimensions and patterns of development vary. [1]

The mandible has a body and two rami, with a condylar process participating in the temporomandibular joint and a coronoid process providing attachment for temporalis. In infants, fontanelles lie at junctions between developing cranial bones. Their size and closure show population and individual variation; a single measurement should be interpreted with growth, examination and age. The hyoid, inferior to the mandible, supports tongue and laryngeal attachments without directly articulating with another bone. [1, 22]

4.8 Vertebral column and intervertebral connections

4.8.1 Regional vertebral anatomy

The typical developmental pattern includes seven cervical, twelve thoracic, five lumbar, five sacral and usually four coccygeal vertebrae. Sacral vertebrae normally fuse, and coccygeal number and fusion vary. A typical vertebra contains a body, an arch formed by pedicles and laminae, and processes for muscular attachment or articulation. The vertebral foramen lies between body and arch; successive foramina form the vertebral canal. Intervertebral foramina transmit spinal nerves and associated vessels. [1]

Cervical vertebrae commonly have transverse foramina; the atlas lacks a typical body and supports the occipital condyles, while the axis bears the dens. Thoracic vertebrae articulate with ribs. Lumbar vertebrae have large bodies suited to substantial loading. Their articular processes guide and limit movement, so regional motion cannot be predicted from body size alone. The sacrum transfers loads towards the pelvic girdle and forms the posterior wall of the true pelvis. [1]

4.8.2 Curves, discs and end plates

Thoracic and sacral curves are primary curves, while cervical and lumbar curves develop with postnatal head control and upright posture. The curves help distribute loading, but exaggerated curvature or altered alignment must be interpreted alongside vertebral shape, soft tissues and symptoms. Between most adjacent vertebral bodies, an intervertebral disc

contains an annulus fibrosus surrounding a nucleus pulposus, with cartilaginous end plates adjoining the bodies. There is no disc between the atlas and axis. [1]

The disc is a regionally specialised composite structure, not simply a cushion. Annular organisation restrains deformation, while the hydrated nucleus contributes to load distribution. End plates participate in transport between vertebral marrow and disc tissues. Degeneration can involve matrix, fissures, end plates and adjacent bone, and its relationship to pain is not one-to-one. Structural changes seen on imaging require clinical correlation rather than automatic attribution of symptoms. [23, 24]

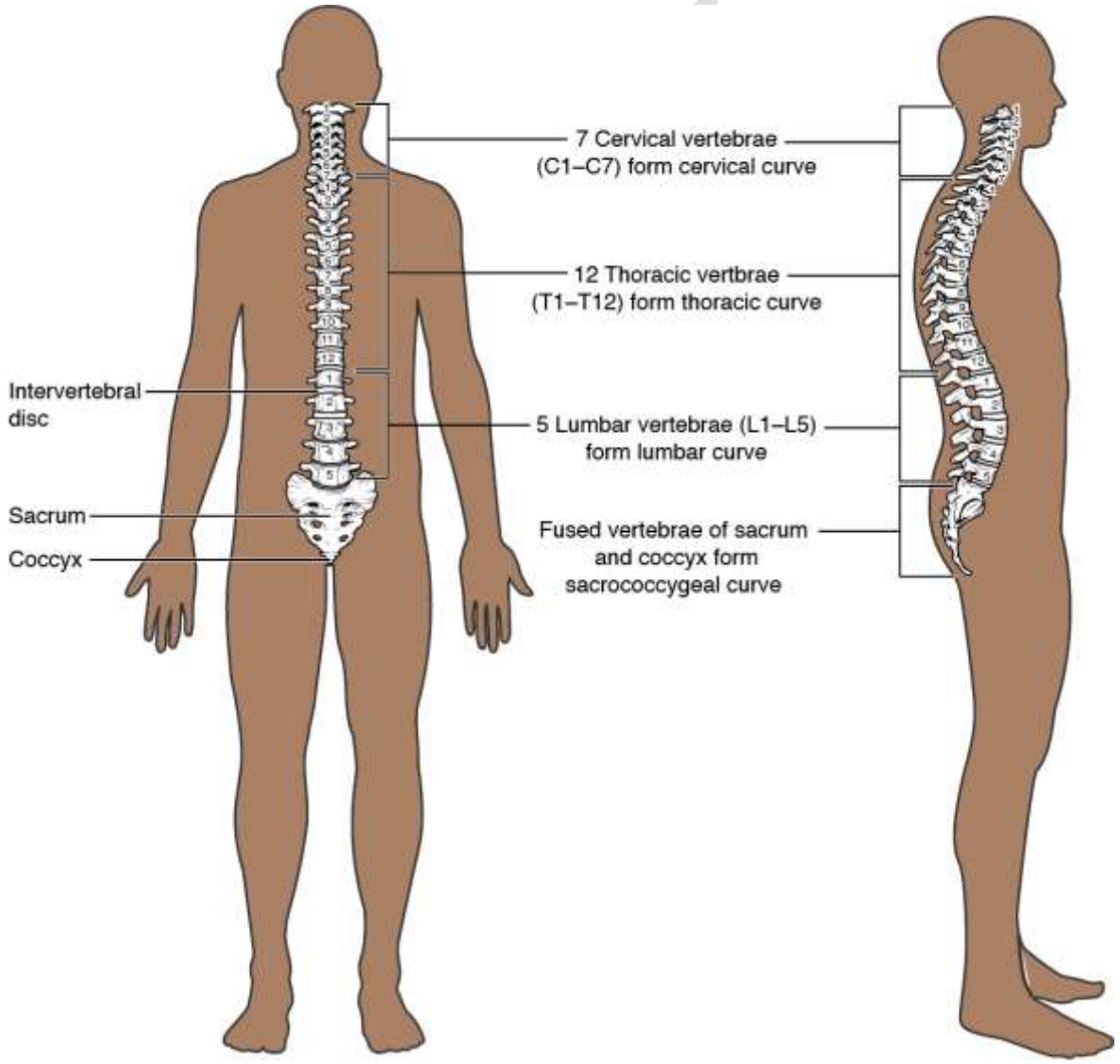


Figure 3. Regions and curves of the vertebral column. Anterior and lateral views distinguish the cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacral and coccygeal regions. Regional curves should be interpreted alongside vertebral shape and joint orientation

4.8.3 Ligaments and anatomical variation

Anterior and posterior longitudinal ligaments extend along vertebral bodies. Ligamenta flava connect adjacent laminae, while interspinous and supraspinous structures contribute to posterior support. The spinal cord usually terminates around the L1–L2 vertebral level in adults; nerve roots continue inferiorly within the canal. This difference between vertebral and neural levels is essential when interpreting the lower back. [1]

Lumbosacral transitional vertebrae may show sacralisation of a lumbar segment or lumbarisation of a sacral segment. Their identification affects vertebral numbering and procedural localisation. A limited image may not establish the entire segmentation pattern, so counting methods must be explicit. Variation is therefore clinically important even when it is asymptomatic. The problem is often incorrect localisation or altered mechanics rather than the mere presence of an unusual vertebra. [25]

4.9 Thoracic cage

4.9.1 Ribs, sternum and costal cartilages

The thoracic cage comprises twelve pairs of ribs, their costal cartilages, the sternum and thoracic vertebrae. Ribs one to seven attach anteriorly through their own costal cartilages. Ribs eight to ten connect indirectly through the cartilage above, while ribs eleven and twelve lack anterior attachment to the sternum. The sternum consists of manubrium, body and xiphoid process. The sternal angle marks the manubriosternal junction and helps locate the second costal cartilage. [1]

A typical rib has a head, neck, tubercle, angle and curved shaft. The head and tubercle articulate with vertebral structures, with important exceptions in atypical ribs. A costal groove lies along the internal aspect of the inferior border and relates to the main intercostal neurovascular bundle. Consequently, the rib's lower edge is not simply a palpable boundary: it marks a clinically important protected corridor. [1, 26]

4.9.2 Protection, mobility and interpretation

The thoracic cage surrounds the heart, lungs and major vessels while supporting respiratory movement. Elevation of ribs can increase anteroposterior and transverse thoracic dimensions, although pump-handle and bucket-handle descriptions simplify a three-dimensional movement. Costal cartilage contributes flexibility that a completely ossified cage would lack. The superior and inferior thoracic apertures also establish continuity with the neck and abdomen. [1]

The first rib has distinct superior surface grooves and a scalene tubercle, whereas the lower floating ribs differ from typical mid-thoracic ribs. These differences should be learned before applying a generic rib description to every specimen. Fracture location, displacement and adjacent soft tissue determine the consequences of injury; counting fractured ribs alone does not fully describe the anatomical threat. [26]

4.10 Pectoral girdle and humerus

4.10.1 Clavicle and scapula

The clavicle spans from manubrium to acromion and holds the shoulder away from the thorax. Its medial end is bulky, while the lateral end is flattened. The shaft's curvature and the variable dimensions of its medullary canal matter when describing fractures and considering intramedullary devices. The clavicle also overlies important vessels and elements of the brachial plexus, linking apparently superficial injury to deeper structures. [1, 27]

The scapula has anterior and posterior surfaces, three borders and three angles. Its spine divides the posterior surface into supraspinous and infraspinous fossae and continues laterally as the acromion. The coracoid projects anteriorly, and the glenoid cavity faces laterally to articulate with the humeral head. Glenoid form and orientation vary, which influences the fit between anatomical specimens and standardised implants. [1, 28]

4.10.2 Humeral landmarks and vulnerable relationships

The proximal humerus includes the head, anatomical neck, greater and lesser tubercles, and intertubercular sulcus. The surgical neck lies distal to the tubercles. The shaft bears the deltoid tuberosity and a posterior radial groove. Distally, the capitulum articulates with the radius and the trochlea with the ulna. Epicondyles anchor soft tissues, while the olecranon fossa accommodates the ulna during extension. [1]

The axillary nerve is related to the surgical neck region, the radial nerve to the posterior shaft, and the ulnar nerve passes behind the medial epicondyle. These relationships make fracture level anatomically informative without implying that every fracture causes nerve injury. Proximal humeral dimensions also vary between individuals; reconstructive anatomy should restore a person's geometry rather than rely entirely on a single average measurement. [1, 29]

A useful specimen exercise is to determine the side of an isolated humerus before naming every landmark. The head faces medially and somewhat posteriorly, the olecranon fossa lies posteriorly, and the capitulum occupies the lateral distal side. These three observations provide independent orientation checks. A similar approach applies to the scapula: place its spine posteriorly, its glenoid laterally and its inferior angle downward. Reconstructing

orientation in this way turns a flat illustration into a spatial model. It also prevents the common confusion between a bone viewed from behind and a bone belonging to the opposite side of the body. [1]

4.11 Forearm, wrist and hand

4.11.1 Radius and ulna

In anatomical position, the radius is lateral and the ulna medial. The radial head articulates with the capitulum and the radial notch of the ulna. The ulna's olecranon and coronoid processes border its trochlear notch. Distally, the radius broadens and provides the principal forearm articular surface for the wrist, while the distal ulna is separated from direct carpal articulation by an articular disc. The interosseous membrane links the shafts and participates in load transfer. [1]

During pronation, the radius moves around the relatively stable ulna; the bones are approximately parallel in supination. Thus, the forearm is a coupled anatomical unit, and alignment at one end affects the other. Distal radial inclination, articular contour and relative radial and ulnar lengths help determine wrist mechanics. Restoration of these relationships after injury is more informative than merely confirming that a fracture has united. [30]

4.11.2 Carpal rows and digital framework

The proximal carpal row contains scaphoid, lunate, triquetrum and pisiform; the distal row contains trapezium, trapezoid, capitate and hamate. The pisiform lies on the palmar aspect of the triquetrum. Five metacarpals support fourteen phalanges: two in the thumb and three in each finger. Carpal arrangement produces a palmar concavity bridged by the flexor retinaculum, forming the carpal tunnel. The thumb's carpometacarpal articulation permits movements central to opposition. [1, 31]

Scaphoid vascular anatomy helps explain the risk of proximal fragment ischaemia after certain fractures. Much of the supply enters distally or dorsally and courses towards the proximal region. The biological outcome depends on fracture location and vascular disruption, not simply the small size of the bone. This example demonstrates why learning a regional artery-bone relationship can be more clinically valuable than memorising an isolated list of carpal names. [32]

4.12 Pelvic girdle and pelvic cavity

4.12.1 Hip bone and pelvic ring

Each hip bone develops from ilium, ischium and pubis, which meet around the acetabulum. The iliac crest forms its superior border; anterior superior and inferior iliac spines provide palpable or attachment landmarks. The ischial spine separates greater and lesser sciatic notches, while the ischial tuberosity supports sitting. Pubic bodies meet at the symphysis, and pubic and ischial rami surround the obturator foramen. [1]

The sacrum, hip bones and their ligamentous connections form a ring. The greater pelvis lies above the pelvic brim; the lesser pelvis lies below it. Sacroiliac joints transfer load between trunk and limbs, while the symphysis connects the ring anteriorly. A disruption in one region may therefore accompany injury elsewhere. The acetabulum is a socket with an articular lunate surface and a central nonarticular fossa, rather than a uniformly cartilage-covered hemisphere. [1, 33]

The sacrospinous and sacrotuberous ligaments transform the sciatic notches into greater and lesser sciatic foramina. These openings establish routes between pelvis, gluteal region and perineum. The obturator membrane largely closes the obturator foramen, leaving an obturator canal for the associated neurovascular structures. Such relationships reveal why a large hole in a dry hip bone is not necessarily a comparably open passage in the intact body. The pelvic brim, pubic symphysis, ischial spines and sacral promontory are therefore best understood with their ligaments restored conceptually, rather than as independent points measured on an otherwise empty bony basin. [1]

4.12.2 Variation and cautious interpretation

Pelvic morphology differs on average between sexes, but distributions overlap and individuals vary. Features such as subpubic angle, inlet shape and sciatic notch breadth must be interpreted together. Developmental research shows that pelvic shape changes across the life course, including sex-related trajectories around reproductive years. A single adult pelvis is therefore the product of growth and later change, not a fixed design established at birth. [34]

The obstetric relevance of pelvic dimensions should not be reduced to rigid categories that claim to predict childbirth outcome from shape alone. Soft tissues, fetal dimensions, orientation and dynamic relationships also matter. In anatomical education, pelvic variation is best used to challenge the assumption that one idealised diagram represents all bodies. Any

inference about sex from skeletal form is an estimate about morphology, not a determination of gender identity. [34]

4.13 Femur, patella and knee framework

4.13.1 Proximal and distal femoral anatomy

The femoral head articulates with the acetabulum through a neck angled relative to the shaft. Greater and lesser trochanters provide major muscle attachments; the intertrochanteric line and crest join them anteriorly and posteriorly. The linea aspera runs along the posterior shaft. Distally, medial and lateral condyles articulate with the tibia, while the patellar surface lies anteriorly. Neck inclination and femoral version are variable anatomical measurements, not universal constants. [1]

The medial femoral circumflex artery makes a major contribution to adult femoral head supply through retinacular vessels. Their relationship to the neck and capsule explains why displaced intracapsular fractures may jeopardise the head. The ligament of the head contains a vessel whose contribution varies and should not be assumed sufficient to preserve adult head perfusion. Fracture classification has biological relevance because it identifies which vascular relationships may be interrupted. [35]

4.13.2 Patella, menisci and cruciate attachments

The patella lies within the quadriceps tendon and articulates with the anterior distal femur. Its posterior articular facets, inferior apex and continuity with the patellar ligament establish its relationship to the extensor mechanism. Patellar shape varies, and congruence with the femoral trochlea depends on more than patellar size. The knee also contains medial and lateral menisci that improve contact and distribute load between relatively incongruent articular surfaces. [1, 36, 37]

The anterior cruciate ligament courses from the anterior intercondylar tibial region to the medial surface of the lateral femoral condyle; the posterior cruciate ligament has a complementary posterior tibial attachment. Their insertion areas and fibre orientations help explain restraint during different positions. Menisci have regionally unequal vascularity, making peripheral and central tears biologically different. Consequently, the knee should be understood as a system of shaped surfaces and soft tissue restraints rather than a simple hinge. [37, 38]

4.14 Leg, ankle and foot

4.14.1 Tibia, fibula and ankle mortise

The tibia is the main load-bearing bone of the leg. Its proximal condyles support the femur through menisci, and the tibial tuberosity anchors the patellar ligament. Its anterior border is readily palpable. The fibula is lateral and slender, contributes to muscular attachments and ankle stability, and has a head related to the common fibular nerve near its neck. Distally, the tibial medial malleolus and fibular lateral malleolus frame the talus. [1]

The distal tibiofibular syndesmosis maintains the ankle mortise, while medial and lateral ligament complexes restrain displacement. The lateral complex includes anterior talofibular, calcaneofibular and posterior talofibular ligaments. Their orientations differ, so loading position influences which structure is stressed. Talocrural motion mainly permits dorsiflexion and plantarflexion; inversion and eversion involve additional joints below and in front of the talus. [39]

4.14.2 Tarsals, arches and vascular vulnerability

The seven tarsals are talus, calcaneus, navicular, cuboid and three cuneiforms. Five metatarsals and fourteen phalanges extend anteriorly. The talus transmits body load to the foot and is largely covered by cartilage, leaving restricted areas for vascular entry. Talar neck injury can therefore compromise blood supply to parts of the bone. The calcaneus forms the heel and receives the calcaneal tendon posteriorly. [1, 40]

Medial and lateral longitudinal arches and a transverse arch arise from bony arrangement, ligamentous support and muscle-tendon activity. The spring ligament complex supports the talar head; plantar structures resist arch deformation. Experimental work shows that transverse curvature contributes substantially to foot stiffness, expanding the usual emphasis on longitudinal arches alone. This does not eliminate the contribution of soft tissues or imply identical arch mechanics in every individual. [41, 42]

Accessory ossicles, including those around the navicular and posterior talus, can resemble fracture fragments. Their margins, location and relationship to symptoms require careful assessment. The presence of an accessory bone is not in itself proof of disease. Such variants are common reminders that the skeleton's normal range is wider than the single arrangement shown in introductory illustrations. [4]

The trochlea of the talus is broader anteriorly, so dorsiflexion brings a wider part into the ankle mortise. Stability still depends on ligamentous integrity and the ability of the distal tibiofibular relationship to accommodate motion. In the midfoot, the base of the second metatarsal is recessed among the cuneiforms, contributing to stability at the tarsometatarsal

complex. The first metatarsal is relatively robust and participates in propulsion through its relationship with the hallux and plantar sesamoids. These regional differences show why a metatarsal cannot be described adequately using only the general long-bone terms of base, shaft and head. [1]

4.15 Joints and articular tissues

4.15.1 Structural classification

Fibrous joints unite bones through fibrous tissue, as in sutures and syndesmoses. Cartilaginous joints include synchondroses with hyaline cartilage and symphyses containing fibrocartilage. Synovial joints possess a cavity, an enclosing capsule and specialised articular surfaces. Functional descriptions such as synarthrosis, amphiarthrosis and diarthrosis classify mobility rather than tissue composition. The structural and functional systems should therefore be related without being treated as interchangeable labels. [1]

A typical synovial joint has an outer fibrous capsule and an inner synovial membrane lining nonarticular internal surfaces. Articular cartilage normally covers the opposing bone ends. Ligaments, labra, discs, menisci and bursae are present according to regional requirements; they are not mandatory components of every synovial joint. Joint stability depends on the combined action of congruence, capsule, ligaments and surrounding muscles. [1]

4.15.2 Cartilage and synovium

Articular cartilage is regionally organised into superficial, middle, deep and calcified zones. Collagen orientation and matrix composition vary with depth, allowing the tissue to accommodate different mechanical demands. Its avascular nature and relatively low cellularity constrain intrinsic repair. Beneath it, calcified cartilage and subchondral bone form a mechanically important transition. Osteoarthritis therefore involves a broader osteochondral and synovial environment than the simple wearing away of a surface coating. [43]

Synovium contains an intimal layer and supporting subintimal tissue. Macrophage-like and fibroblast-like synoviocytes contribute to its functions, while its vessels support exchange with the joint environment. Normal synovial structure varies by location and loading. Describing a joint as a lubricated cavity is useful initially, but anatomically incomplete: its lining, cartilage, capsule and adjacent bone form interacting tissue compartments. [44]

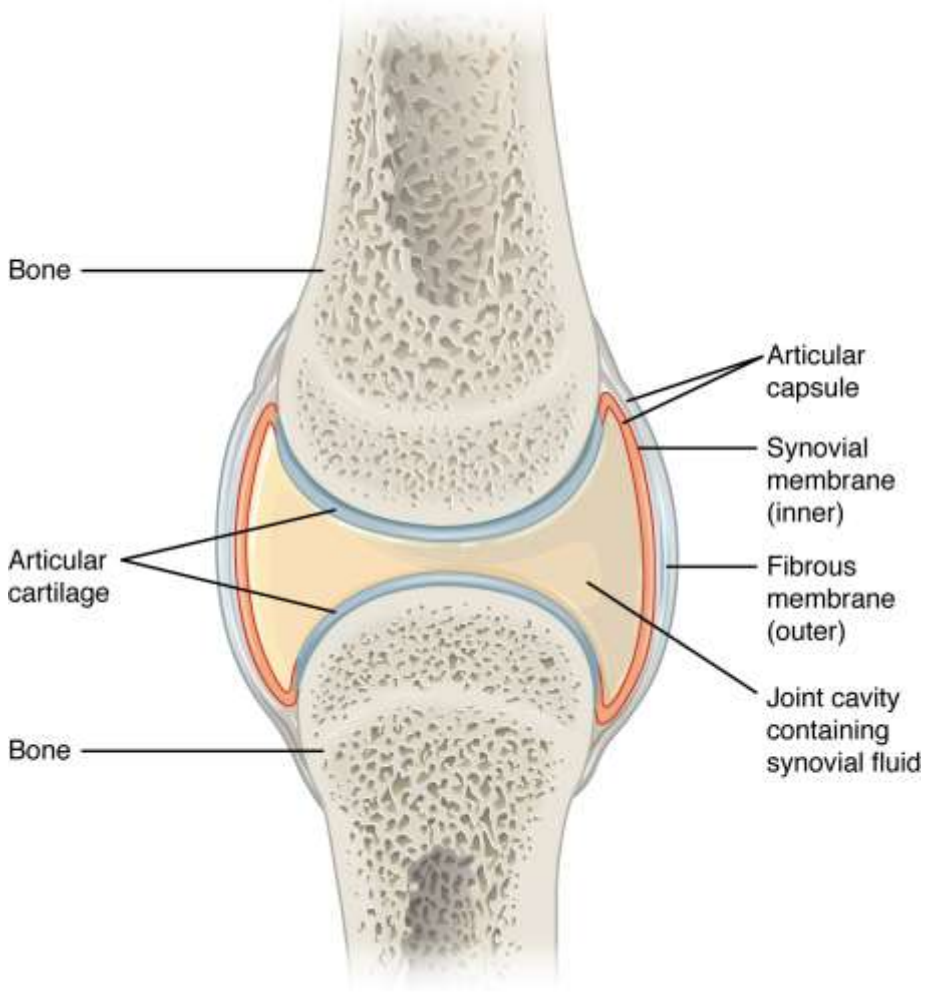


Figure 4. Organisation of a synovial joint. Articular cartilage, synovial cavity and the capsule are shown in section. The illustration clearly distinguishes the fibrous capsule from its synovial lining

4.15.3 Shape, axes and the limits of simple models

Plane, hinge, pivot, condyloid, saddle and ball-and-socket joints are recognised by surface relationships and permitted movements. The proximal radioulnar joint is a pivot joint, the thumb carpometacarpal joint a saddle joint, and the hip a ball-and-socket joint. These categories provide a framework for learning movement, but they do not imply mechanically perfect hinges or spheres. Real articulations combine rolling, sliding and rotation under soft tissue constraints. [1]

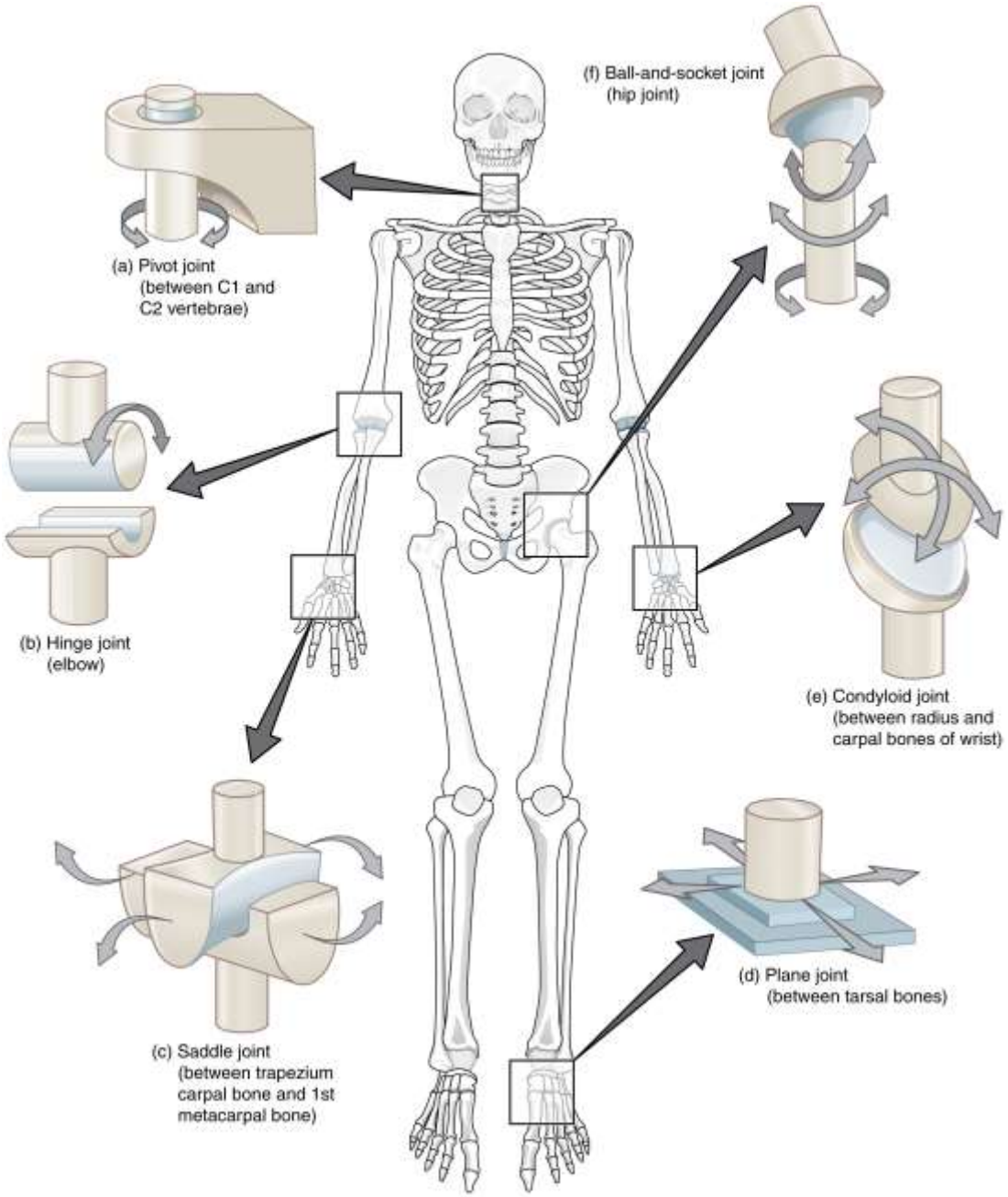


Figure 5. Six types of synovial joints. Regional examples illustrate plane, hinge, pivot, condyloid, saddle and ball-and-socket arrangements. These categories simplify movements constrained by surrounding soft tissues

4.16 Limited physiological foundations

4.16.1 Modelling, remodelling and mineral exchange

Modelling changes skeletal size or shape through formation and resorption that need not occur at the same site. Remodelling replaces existing tissue through coordinated resorption and formation. These processes explain how a bone can preserve its general identity while

changing internally throughout life. Mechanical loading influences adaptation, but neither a single exercise bout nor an isolated radiograph reveals the full history of tissue turnover. [45]

Bone also participates in mineral homeostasis. Its mineral reservoir interacts with endocrine control involving parathyroid hormone, vitamin D pathways and phosphate-regulating mechanisms. FGF23, produced largely by osteocytes and osteoblasts, contributes to phosphate and vitamin D regulation. This physiological role should remain distinct from the anatomical question of where mineralised tissue is distributed. Serum mineral concentrations and regional skeletal strength measure different aspects of the system. [46]

4.16.2 Marrow and local tissue environments

Marrow is structurally organised around vessels, stromal cells and tissue niches that support haematopoietic cells. Its relationship with endosteal surfaces and vascular networks illustrates why the skeleton belongs within systemic biology as well as mechanics. Research on the marrow niche continues to refine cell interactions, and results from experimental models require appropriate caution when generalised to the entire human skeleton. [8]

4.17 Repair, ageing and structural failure

4.17.1 Fracture healing as organised reconstruction

Fracture healing depends on blood supply, viable cells, local mechanical conditions and the nature of tissue disruption. Secondary healing commonly involves haematoma, inflammatory activity, soft callus, hard callus and subsequent remodelling. Direct healing can occur under appropriately stable conditions with close fragment apposition. These are overlapping biological responses rather than an inflexible timetable applicable to every fracture. [47]

Anatomical location changes the repair environment. A cortical shaft fracture, a metaphyseal fracture and an intracapsular femoral neck fracture differ in tissue distribution and vascular relationships. Restoration of continuity does not necessarily restore alignment, rotation or joint congruence. A healed deformity may alter neighbouring joint loads, demonstrating why an anatomical assessment of union must extend beyond the visibility of a bridging callus. [47]

4.17.2 Ageing and fragility

Ageing can involve cortical thinning, increased porosity, changes in trabecular connectivity and altered material properties. The pattern differs between sites and individuals. Sex-related trajectories and changes in bone geometry also influence structural reserve. Bone loss should therefore be described in terms of compartments and distribution whenever possible, rather than as a uniform shrinking of every part of the skeleton. [9, 48]

Fragility arises when applied loads exceed the resistance of the whole structure. Density contributes, but geometry, microarchitecture, matrix properties and accumulated damage also matter. This explains why two individuals with similar density measurements may have different fracture risks. Anatomy cannot independently predict every fracture, yet it clarifies what a density measurement leaves unresolved. [3, 12]

4.18 Surface anatomy, imaging and laboratory relevance

4.18.1 From palpation to cross-sectional anatomy

Palpable landmarks include the mastoid process, clavicle, acromion, olecranon, iliac crest, patella, tibial tuberosity and malleoli. Their identification should be checked against neighbouring features and body position. A visible or palpable prominence may shift relative to skin during movement. Surface anatomy is therefore an estimate of underlying relationships, refined by examination and imaging when precision is required. [1]

Radiographs compress three-dimensional structures into projections and can conceal overlap or displacement. CT depicts cortical contours and complex spatial relationships, while MRI provides information about marrow and soft tissues. High-resolution peripheral quantitative CT can assess cortical and trabecular microarchitecture at accessible peripheral sites, but measurements remain dependent on resolution, region selection and analytical methods. No single modality captures every relevant level of skeletal organisation. [49]

4.18.2 What laboratory measurements can and cannot show

Calcium, phosphate, alkaline phosphatase and selected bone turnover markers can inform investigation of skeletal metabolism, but they do not map fracture geometry or identify a joint surface directly. Conversely, an anatomical image does not fully measure turnover. For medical laboratory students, the key distinction is between systemic biochemical information and regional structural evidence. Their integration is more informative than expecting either category to answer every skeletal question. [1, 45]

4.19 Critical perspectives and future directions

4.19.1 Beyond the idealised skeleton

A useful anatomical account should state when it describes a typical adult, a growing child, a specimen series or an experimental model. It should distinguish a mean measurement from a safe procedural boundary and a structural association from a demonstrated cause. These distinctions are particularly important in morphometry, where sample composition,

measurement planes and preparation methods can influence apparently precise numerical results. [28, 29]

Three-dimensional printing can reproduce complex skeletal relationships and support hands-on learning, especially where access to specimens is limited. However, educational effectiveness depends on study design, learner task and comparison method. Printed models may omit marrow, cartilage, vascularity and anatomical variation, so their visual clarity should not be confused with biological completeness. They complement rather than replace examination of multiple forms of anatomical evidence. [50]

4.19.2 A synthesis based on relationships

The chapter's organising proposal is to teach each region through geometry, tissue distribution and interfaces. The femoral neck links leverage to perfusion, the vertebral end plate links architecture to transport, and the foot links curved bone arrangement to stiffness. This is an educational synthesis of existing evidence, not a newly proven biological theory. It encourages learners to explain why a landmark or tissue boundary matters while keeping established observations separate from interpretation. [24, 35, 42]

4.20 Summary

The skeleton is a living organ system whose regional forms connect protection, support and movement. Axial and appendicular divisions provide an initial map, while cortical shells, trabecular networks, marrow spaces and attachment interfaces explain how individual bones work. Development and remodelling continually modify these structures. Joint anatomy links bone surfaces to cartilage, synovium, capsules and stabilising soft tissues. The most useful clinical correlations arise from specific relationships, including vulnerable vessels, nearby nerves and the distribution of load. [1]

References

1. Betts JG, Young KA, Wise JA, et al. Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax; 2013. Accessed September 12, 2026. https://openstax.org/books/anatomy-and-physiology/pages/1-introduction
2. Standring S, ed. Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice. 42nd ed. Elsevier; 2021.
3. Seeman E, Delmas PD. Bone quality: the material and structural basis of bone strength and fragility. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(21):2250-2261. doi:10.1056/nejmra053077
4. Keles-Celik N, Kose O, Sekerci R, Aytac G, Turan A, Güler F. Accessory Ossicles of the Foot and Ankle: Disorders and a Review of the Literature. Cureus. 2017;9(11):e1881. doi:10.7759/cureus.1881
5. Rho JY, Kuhn-Spearing L, Zioupos P. Mechanical properties and the hierarchical structure of bone. Med Eng Phys. 1998;20(2):92-102. doi:10.1016/s1350-4533(98)00007-1
6. Currey JD. The effect of porosity and mineral content on the Young's modulus of elasticity of compact bone. J Biomech. 1988;21(2):131-139. doi:10.1016/0021-9290(88)90006-1
7. Dwek JR. The periosteum: what is it, where is it, and what mimics it in its absence? Skeletal Radiol. 2010;39(4):319-323. doi:10.1007/s00256-009-0849-9
8. Morrison SJ, Scadden DT. The bone marrow niche for haematopoietic stem cells. Nature. 2014;505(7483):327-334. doi:10.1038/nature12984
9. Khosla S, Riggs BL. Pathophysiology of age-related bone loss and osteoporosis. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am. 2005;34(4):1015-1030. doi:10.1016/j.ecl.2005.07.009
10. Schaffler MB, Cheung WY, Majeska R, Kennedy O. Osteocytes: master orchestrators of bone. Calcif Tissue Int. 2014;94(1):5-24. doi:10.1007/s00223-013-9790-y
11. Hunter RL, Agnew AM. Intraskeletal variation in human cortical osteocyte lacunar density: Implications for bone quality assessment. Bone Rep. 2016;5:252-261. doi:10.1016/j.bonr.2016.09.002
12. Frost HM. A brief review for orthopedic surgeons: fatigue damage (microdamage) in bone (its determinants and clinical implications). J Orthop Sci. 1998;3(5):272-281. doi:10.1007/s007760050053
13. Grüneboom A, Hawwari I, Weidner D, et al. A network of trans-cortical capillaries as mainstay for blood circulation in long bones. Nat Metab. 2019;1(2):236-250. doi:10.1038/s42255-018-0016-5
14. Benjamin M, Toumi H, Ralphs JR, Bydder G, Best TM, Milz S. Where tendons and ligaments meet bone: attachment sites ('entheses') in relation to exercise and/or mechanical load. J Anat. 2006;208(4):471-490. doi:10.1111/j.1469-7580.2006.00540.x
15. Mackie EJ, Ahmed YA, Tatarczuch L, Chen KS, Mirams M. Endochondral ossification: how cartilage is converted into bone in the developing skeleton. Int J Biochem Cell Biol. 2008;40(1):46-62. doi:10.1016/j.biocel.2007.06.009
16. Scaal M. Early development of the vertebral column. Semin Cell Dev Biol. 2016;49:83-91. doi:10.1016/j.semcdb.2015.11.003
17. Kronenberg HM. Developmental regulation of the growth plate. Nature. 2003;423(6937):332-336. doi:10.1038/nature01657
18. Chan CKF, Gulati GS, Sinha R, et al. Identification of the Human Skeletal Stem Cell. Cell. 2018;175(1):43-56.e21. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2018.07.029
19. Di Ieva A, Bruner E, Davidson J, et al. Cranial sutures: a multidisciplinary review. Childs Nerv Syst. 2013;29(6):893-905. doi:10.1007/s00381-013-2061-4

20. Jin SW, Sim KB, Kim SD. Development and Growth of the Normal Cranial Vault: An Embryologic Review. J Korean Neurosurg Soc. 2016;59(3):192-196. doi:10.3340/jkns.2016.59.3.192
21. Triantafyllou G, Karangeli N, Duparc F, et al. Unveiling pterion variability: a meta-analytic approach to enhance neurosurgical precision. Surg Radiol Anat. 2025;47(1):66. doi:10.1007/s00276-025-03571-6
22. Oumer M, Tazebew A, Alemayehu M. Anterior Fontanel Size Among Term Newborns: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Public Health Rev. 2021;42:1604044. doi:10.3389/phrs.2021.1604044
23. Adams MA, Roughley PJ. What is intervertebral disc degeneration, and what causes it? Spine (Phila Pa 1976). 2006;31(18):2151-2161. doi:10.1097/01.brs.0000231761.73859.2c
24. Lotz JC, Fields AJ, Liebenberg EC. The role of the vertebral end plate in low back pain. Global Spine J. 2013;3(3):153-164. doi:10.1055/s-0033-1347298
25. Konin GP, Walz DM. Lumbosacral transitional vertebrae: classification, imaging findings, and clinical relevance. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol. 2010;31(10):1778-1786. doi:10.3174/ajnr.a2036
26. Graeber GM, Nazim M. The anatomy of the ribs and the sternum and their relationship to chest wall structure and function. Thorac Surg Clin. 2007;17(4):473-489. doi:10.1016/j.thorsurg.2006.12.010
27. Andermahr J, Jubel A, Elsner A, et al. Anatomy of the clavicle and the intramedullary nailing of midclavicular fractures. Clin Anat. 2007;20(1):48-56. doi:10.1002/ca.20269
28. von Schroeder HP, Kuiper SD, Botte MJ. Osseous anatomy of the scapula. Clin Orthop Relat Res. 2001;(383):131-139. doi:10.1097/00003086-200102000-00015
29. Iannotti JP, Gabriel JP, Schneck SL, Evans BG, Misra S. The normal glenohumeral relationships. An anatomical study of one hundred and forty shoulders. J Bone Joint Surg Am. 1992;74(4):491-500. doi:10.2106/00004623-199274040-00004
30. Shivdas S, Hashim MS, Ahmad TS. A three-dimensional virtual morphometry study of the sigmoid notch of the distal radius. J Orthop Surg (Hong Kong). 2018;26(3):2309499018802504. doi:10.1177/2309499018802504
31. Tang A, Varacallo MA. Anatomy, Shoulder and Upper Limb, Hand Carpal Bones. In: StatPearls. StatPearls Publishing; 2026. Accessed September 12, 2026. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK535382/
32. Gelberman RH, Menon J. The vascularity of the scaphoid bone. J Hand Surg Am. 1980;5(5):508-513. doi:10.1016/s0363-5023(80)80087-6
33. Witte H, Eckstein F, Recknagel S. A calculation of the forces acting on the human acetabulum during walking. Based On in vivo force measurements, kinematic analysis and morphometry. Acta Anat (Basel). 1997;160(4):269-280. doi:10.1159/000148021
34. Huseynov A, Zollikofer CP, Coudyzer W, et al. Developmental evidence for obstetric adaptation of the human female pelvis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2016;113(19):5227-5232. doi:10.1073/pnas.1517085113
35. Gautier E, Ganz K, Krügel N, Gill T, Ganz R. Anatomy of the medial femoral circumflex artery and its surgical implications. J Bone Joint Surg Br. 2000;82(5):679-683. doi:10.1302/0301-620x.82b5.10426

36. Muhamed R, Saralaya VV, Murlimanju BV, Chettiar GK. In vivo magnetic resonance imaging morphometry of the patella bone in South Indian population. Anat Cell Biol. 2017;50(2):99-103. doi:10.5115/acb.2017.50.2.99
37. Fox AJ, Bedi A, Rodeo SA. The basic science of human knee menisci: structure, composition, and function. Sports Health. 2012;4(4):340-351. doi:10.1177/1941738111429419
38. Banovetz MT, Familiari F, Kennedy NI, et al. Anatomy of the anterior cruciate ligament and the common autograft specimens for anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction. Ann Jt. 2023;8:28. doi:10.21037/aoj-22-49
39. Golanó P, Vega J, de Leeuw PA, et al. Anatomy of the ankle ligaments: a pictorial essay. Knee Surg Sports Traumatol Arthrosc. 2010;18(5):557-569. doi:10.1007/s00167-010-1100-x
40. Prasarn ML, Miller AN, Dyke JP, Helfet DL, Lorich DG. Arterial anatomy of the talus: a cadaver and gadolinium-enhanced MRI study. Foot Ankle Int. 2010;31(11):987-993. doi:10.3113/fai.2010.0987
41. Belis AM, Foote GA. The Spring Ligament Complex-Anatomy and Function. Clin Podiatr Med Surg. 2022;39(3):393-403. doi:10.1016/j.cpm.2022.02.003
42. Venkadesan M, Yawar A, Eng CM, et al. Stiffness of the human foot and evolution of the transverse arch. Nature. 2020;579(7797):97-100. doi:10.1038/s41586-020-2053-y
43. Sophia Fox AJ, Bedi A, Rodeo SA. The basic science of articular cartilage: structure, composition, and function. Sports Health. 2009;1(6):461-468. doi:10.1177/1941738109350438
44. Smith MD. The normal synovium. Open Rheumatol J. 2011;5:100-106. doi:10.2174/1874312901105010100
45. Crockett JC, Rogers MJ, Coxon FP, Hocking LJ, Helfrich MH. Bone remodelling at a glance. J Cell Sci. 2011;124(7):991-998. doi:10.1242/jcs.063032
46. Fukumoto S. Physiological regulation and disorders of phosphate metabolism: pivotal role of fibroblast growth factor 23. Intern Med. 2008;47(5):337-343. doi:10.2169/internalmedicine.47.0730
47. Marsell R, Einhorn TA. The biology of fracture healing. Injury. 2011;42(6):551-555. doi:10.1016/j.injury.2011.03.031
48. Zebaze RM, Ghasem-Zadeh A, Bohte A, et al. Intracortical remodelling and porosity in the distal radius and post-mortem femurs of women: a cross-sectional study. Lancet. 2010;375(9727):1729-1736. doi:10.1016/s0140-6736(10)60320-0
49. Whittier DE, Boyd SK, Burghardt AJ, et al. Guidelines for the assessment of bone density and microarchitecture in vivo using high-resolution peripheral quantitative computed tomography. Osteoporos Int. 2020;31(9):1607-1627. doi:10.1007/s00198-020-05438-5
50. Brumpt E, Bertin E, Tatu L, Louvrier A. 3D printing as a pedagogical tool for teaching normal human anatomy: a systematic review. BMC Med Educ. 2023;23(1):783. doi:10.1186/s12909-023-04744-w

CONTENTS

- Chapter 5 -

The Muscular System: Structure and Movement

5.1 Introduction…….86

5.1.1 Learning objectives

5.1.2 Essential properties and functions

5.2 Types of muscle tissue……87

5.2.1 Skeletal muscle

5.2.2 Cardiac muscle

5.2.3 Smooth muscle

5.2.4 Comparison of the three tissues

5.3 Organisation of skeletal muscle……89

5.3.1 From a whole muscle to myofilaments

5.3.1.1 Connective tissue coverings

5.3.1.2 Tendons and aponeuroses

5.3.2 The muscle fibre and its membrane systems

5.3.3 The sarcomere

5.3.3.1 Bands and lines

5.3.3.2 Contractile and regulatory proteins

5.3.4 Blood supply and innervation

5.4 How skeletal muscle contracts……92

5.4.1 The neuromuscular junction

5.4.2 Excitation–contraction coupling

5.4.3 The cross-bridge cycle

5.4.4 Relaxation and the roles of ATP

5.5 Force control and muscle energetics……..93

5.5.1 Motor units and recruitment

5.5.2 Twitch, summation and tetanus

5.5.3 Length, load and contraction type

5.5.4 Sources of ATP

5.5.5 Fibre types and fatigue

5.5.6 Proprioception and reflex control

5.6 Muscle architecture and movement……95
5.6.1 Attachments and functional roles
5.6.2 Fascicle arrangement
5.6.3 Levers and joint torque
5.6.4 Terminology of movement
5.7 Major skeletal muscles by region……97
5.7.1 Principles of muscle naming
5.7.2 Head and neck
5.7.3 Trunk, respiration and pelvic floor
5.7.4 Shoulder and upper limb
5.7.5 Hip and lower limb
5.7.6 Integrated example of walking
5.8 Adaptation and clinical correlations……99
5.8.1 Development, repair and ageing
5.8.2 Strain and tendon injury
5.8.3 Muscular dystrophy and neuromuscular disease
5.8.4 Assessment and laboratory relevance
5.9 Chapter summary and key terms……101
5.9.1 Chapter summary
5.9.2 Key terms
References……103

SVU

CHAPTER 5

The Muscular System: Structure and Movement

Bikrom Maity

Department of Medical Laboratory Technology, School of Allied Health Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Barasat Rd, Telinipara, Malir Math, Bara Kanthalia, West Bengal 700121, India

5.1 Introduction

The muscular system converts chemical energy into force, allowing the human body to move, maintain posture and carry out essential internal functions. Walking, breathing, swallowing and facial expression depend on coordinated muscle activity. Even when a person appears motionless, muscles help stabilise joints, maintain the position of the head and regulate the movement of substances through organs. Understanding muscle therefore requires a connection between microscopic cellular structures and the movements of the whole body.

This chapter follows that connection from cells to systems. It introduces the three muscle tissues, explains the organisation of skeletal muscle and describes how electrical signals lead to contraction. It then relates muscle architecture to joint movement, surveys the major muscle groups and considers selected clinical applications. The emphasis is on foundational anatomy and physiology for undergraduate health science students.

5.1.1 Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, the learner should be able to distinguish skeletal, cardiac and smooth muscle; trace skeletal muscle organisation from a whole muscle to its myofilaments; explain excitation–contraction coupling; relate muscle attachments and architecture to movement; identify important regional muscles and their actions; and connect common patterns of muscle dysfunction with the structures involved.

5.1.2 Essential properties and functions

Excitability is the ability to respond to a stimulus by changing the electrical state of the cell membrane. Conductivity allows electrical activity to spread along that membrane. Contractility is the ability to develop active tension. Extensibility allows muscle to be stretched, whereas elasticity helps it return towards its resting length. These properties act

together: a muscle must receive a signal, transmit it internally, produce force and accommodate changing body positions. [1]

Skeletal muscles move bones and also act on soft tissues such as the skin of the face. Their resting activity supports posture and joint stability. Muscle metabolism releases heat, and shivering increases heat production through repeated contractions. Skeletal muscle also provides an important site for glucose uptake and fuel storage. Cardiac muscle circulates blood, while smooth muscle controls the calibre of hollow organs and propels their contents. [1]

5.2 Types of muscle tissue

5.2.1 Skeletal muscle

Skeletal muscle consists of long, cylindrical fibres, each of which is a single multinucleated cell. Most nuclei lie close to the cell surface. Repeating contractile units create the alternating light and dark bands called striations. Fibres are organised into bundles, and connective tissue transmits their force to tendons, bones or other structures. [2]

Skeletal muscle is supplied by somatic motor neurons. Its activity is often voluntary, but reflexes, postural responses and the automatic rhythm of breathing also recruit skeletal muscles. Thus, “voluntary muscle” describes an important feature of control without implying that every contraction requires conscious attention. A skeletal muscle fibre normally depends on activation at its neuromuscular junction. [2]

5.2.2 Cardiac muscle

Cardiac muscle forms the myocardium of the heart. Its cells are striated, shorter than skeletal muscle fibres and often branched, usually with one central nucleus. Intercalated discs join neighbouring cells. Mechanical junctions resist separation during contraction, while gap junctions allow electrical communication. This organisation helps the myocardium contract as coordinated functional units. [3]

Specialised pacemaker cells can initiate electrical activity without a motor nerve triggering every beat. Autonomic nerves and circulating hormones modify cardiac rate and force. A prolonged refractory period prevents the sustained fused contraction that would stop the heart from filling between beats. Cardiac muscle therefore combines force generation with a rhythm adapted to continuous pumping. [3]

5.2.3 Smooth muscle

Smooth muscle cells are spindle shaped, with one central nucleus and no visible striations. Actin and myosin are present, but they are not arranged into the regular sarcomeres of striated

muscle. Filaments attach to dense bodies and membrane-associated anchoring sites, allowing force to be transmitted through the cell. [4]

Smooth muscle occurs in blood vessel walls, much of the digestive and urinary tracts, the uterus, airways and other locations. Its activity can be influenced by autonomic nerves, hormones, stretch and local chemical conditions. In many organs, gap junctions coordinate the activity of neighbouring cells. Calcium binds to calmodulin, which activates myosin light-chain kinase; phosphorylation of myosin facilitates cross-bridge cycling. This differs from the troponin-based regulation of skeletal muscle. [4]

5.2.4 Comparison of the three tissues

Feature	Skeletal	Cardiac	Smooth
Cell shape	Long cylindrical fibre	Short and branched	Spindle shaped
Nuclei	Many, peripheral	Usually one, central	One, central
Striations	Present	Present	Absent
Control	Somatic motor neurons	Intrinsic rhythm; autonomic modulation	Autonomic, hormonal and local control
Main location	Skeleton and selected soft tissues	Myocardium	Walls of hollow organs and vessels

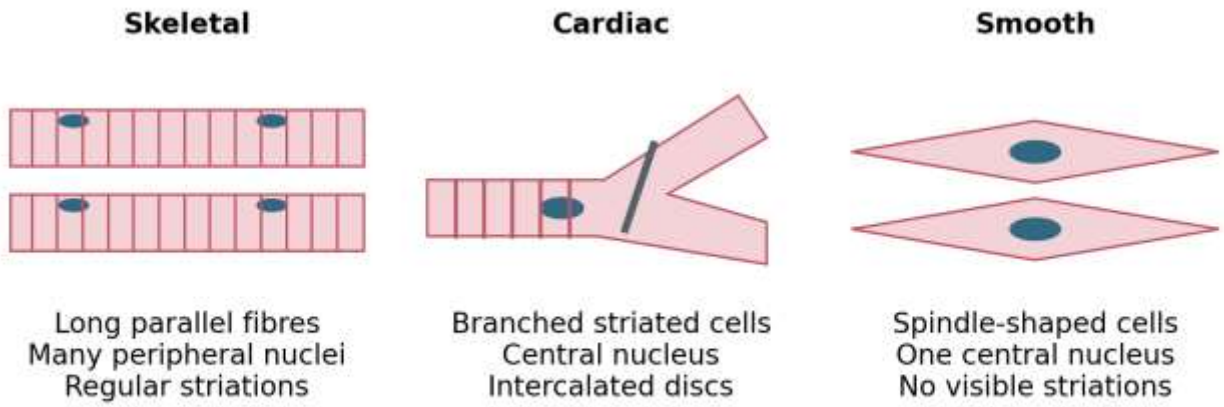


Figure 5.1. Schematic comparison of skeletal, cardiac and smooth muscle. Blue ovals indicate nuclei; the dark junction in the cardiac panel represents an intercalated disc. Not to scale.

5.3 Organisation of skeletal muscle

5.3.1 From a whole muscle to myofilaments

A skeletal muscle is an organ containing muscle fibres, connective tissue, nerves and blood vessels. Each muscle contains fascicles, and each fascicle contains multiple fibres. Within a fibre, numerous myofibrils run along its length. Each myofibril contains repeated sarcomeres, whose principal contractile components are thin actin filaments and thick myosin filaments. [5]

This hierarchy explains how microscopic activity produces visible movement. Many sarcomeres arranged in series contribute to the shortening distance of a fibre. Fibres and myofibrils acting in parallel contribute to its force. Effective movement also requires connective tissue to collect and transmit that force beyond the contracting cells. [5]

5.3.1.1 Connective tissue coverings

The endomysium surrounds individual muscle fibres. The perimysium encloses fascicles and carries larger vessels and nerves. The epimysium surrounds the whole muscle. These coverings form a mechanically connected network rather than three isolated wrappings. Connective tissues between and around muscles also contribute to force transmission and allow neighbouring structures to move relative to one another. [5]

5.3.1.2 Tendons and aponeuroses

A tendon is a strong, collagen-rich structure that commonly links muscle to bone. An aponeurosis is a broad, sheet-like tendon, as seen in the abdominal wall. The muscle–tendon junction transfers force from the contracting tissue into the tendon, and the tendon attachment transfers that load to the skeleton. Tendons can also store and return elastic energy during cyclic movements such as walking and running. [5]

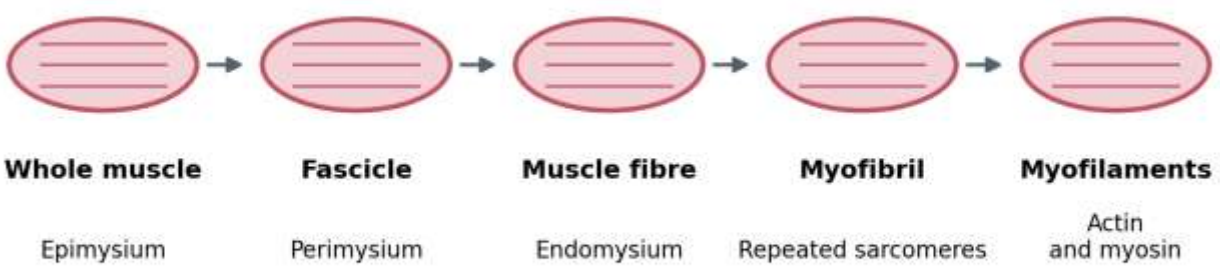


Figure 5.2. Levels of skeletal muscle organisation. Each successive structure is contained within the preceding one; arrows indicate increasing magnification rather than a pathway of force. Not to scale.

5.3.2 The muscle fibre and its membrane systems

The sarcolemma is the muscle fibre membrane, and the sarcoplasm is its cytoplasm. The sarcoplasm contains myofibrils, mitochondria, glycogen and myoglobin, an oxygen-binding protein. Transverse tubules, or T tubules, are inward extensions of the sarcolemma that conduct depolarisation into the fibre. The sarcoplasmic reticulum stores and releases calcium ions. [5]

In skeletal muscle, a T tubule and the two adjacent terminal cisternae of the sarcoplasmic reticulum form a triad. This close arrangement links surface electrical activity to calcium release deep within the fibre, allowing many myofibrils to activate nearly together. [5]

5.3.3 The sarcomere

A sarcomere extends from one Z disc to the next. Thin filaments are anchored to the Z discs and extend towards the centre. Thick filaments occupy the central region and are organised around the M line. Titin helps align thick filaments and contributes to passive elasticity. The regular arrangement of these structures produces the banding pattern seen in striated muscle. [6]

5.3.3.1 Bands and lines

The A band corresponds to the full length of the thick filaments, including regions where thick and thin filaments overlap. The I band contains thin filaments without thick filament overlap and is crossed by the Z disc. The H zone is the central part of the A band containing thick filaments without thin filament overlap. The M line lies at the centre of the sarcomere. [6]

During shortening, the Z discs move closer together, the I band narrows and the H zone becomes smaller or may disappear. The A band remains essentially constant because the thick filaments do not shorten. Thin filaments also retain their length: contraction results from increasing overlap rather than shrinking individual filaments. [6]

5.3.3.2 Contractile and regulatory proteins

Myosin heads bind to actin and contain ATPase activity. The energy released through ATP hydrolysis prepares the heads for force generation. Tropomyosin lies along actin and, at low cytosolic calcium concentrations, limits access to myosin-binding sites. Troponin is a regulatory complex associated with the thin filament. Calcium binding to troponin C alters the position of tropomyosin, permitting productive actin–myosin interaction. [6]

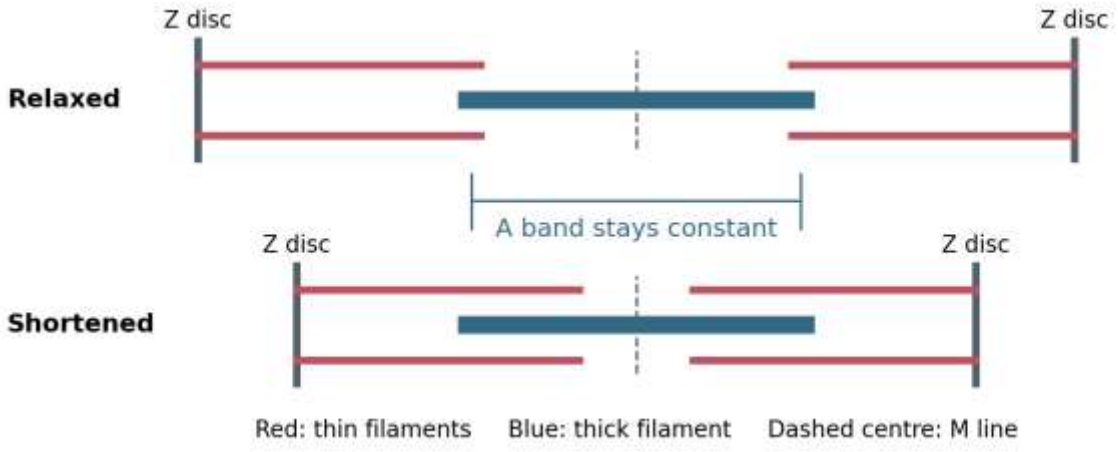


Figure 5.3. Sliding filament model. Thin filaments move further between thick filaments during shortening. Thick filament length and therefore A-band width remain constant. Simplified longitudinal view.

5.3.4 Blood supply and innervation

Arteries enter a muscle and branch into a capillary network close to its fibres. The circulation supplies oxygen and nutrients and removes carbon dioxide and metabolic products. Blood flow increases during activity to meet changing demand. Veins return blood from the tissue; rhythmic muscle compression can assist venous return when venous valves direct flow towards the heart. [5]

Motor axons branch to supply muscle fibres. Sensory endings provide information about muscle length, tension and the tissue environment. A peripheral nerve lesion can therefore affect both activation and sensory feedback. Muscle performance depends on the integrity of the muscle, its blood supply, its neuromuscular junctions and its neural control. [5]

5.4 How skeletal muscle contracts

5.4.1 The neuromuscular junction

The neuromuscular junction is the chemical synapse between a somatic motor neuron and a skeletal muscle fibre. Its components are the motor axon terminal, the synaptic cleft and the specialised muscle membrane called the motor end plate. A nerve action potential opens voltage-gated calcium channels in the terminal, leading to the release of acetylcholine from synaptic vesicles. [7]

Acetylcholine binds to nicotinic receptors on the motor end plate. Their channels permit a net inward movement of positive charge, creating an end-plate potential. If neighbouring membrane reaches threshold, voltage-gated sodium channels generate a muscle action potential. Acetylcholinesterase rapidly breaks down acetylcholine, limiting the duration of the synaptic signal. [7]

5.4.2 Excitation–contraction coupling

The muscle action potential travels along the sarcolemma and into the T tubules. Voltage-sensitive proteins in the T-tubule membrane communicate with calcium-release channels in the sarcoplasmic reticulum. Calcium then enters the sarcoplasm and binds to troponin. The resulting change in thin-filament regulation allows cross-bridges to form. [7]

Excitation–contraction coupling therefore links an electrical event at the membrane to a mechanical event in the myofibrils. The action potential itself does not pull the filaments. Instead, it triggers the calcium signal that permits the molecular motors to operate. [7]

5.4.3 The cross-bridge cycle

An energised myosin head carrying ADP and inorganic phosphate binds to an available site on actin. Phosphate release is associated with the transition towards a force-producing state, and the head pivots during the power stroke. ADP is subsequently released. Binding of a fresh ATP molecule reduces myosin's affinity for actin and allows detachment. ATP hydrolysis then re-energises the head for another cycle. [7]

Thousands of heads cycle asynchronously, so some maintain interaction while others detach and reset. Repeated cycles slide thin filaments towards the sarcomere centre when the external load permits shortening. If the load prevents shortening, cross-bridge activity can still generate tension. This is why contraction does not always produce visible movement. [7]

5.4.4 Relaxation and the roles of ATP

When stimulation ends, calcium pumps return calcium to the sarcoplasmic reticulum. Cytosolic calcium falls, calcium dissociates from troponin and tropomyosin again restricts

actin–myosin interaction. Active tension declines, allowing elastic forces, gravity or opposing muscles to lengthen the muscle. [7]

ATP supports both force generation and relaxation. It is required for myosin detachment and for calcium pumping; ion pumps also use ATP to maintain membrane gradients. In rigor mortis, the loss of ATP after death contributes to persistent actin–myosin attachment. Relaxation is therefore not simply the absence of an energy requirement. [7]

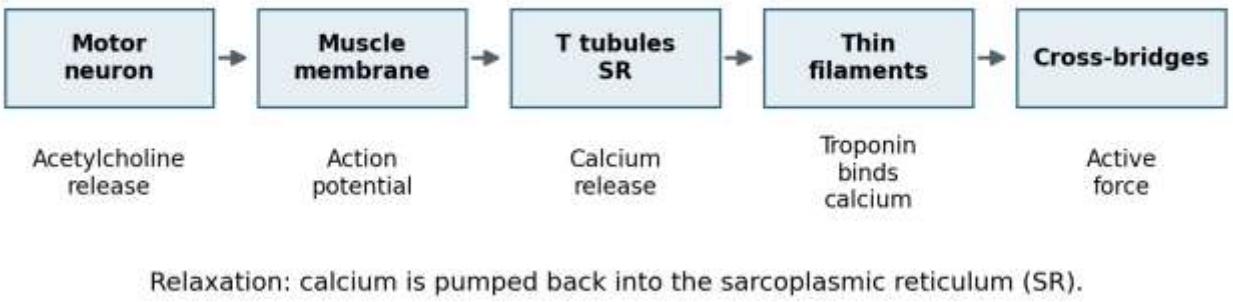


Figure 5.4. Sequence linking a motor nerve signal to skeletal muscle force. Calcium reuptake allows relaxation. SR denotes the sarcoplasmic reticulum.

5.5 Force control and muscle energetics

5.5.1 Motor units and recruitment

A motor unit consists of one alpha motor neuron and all the skeletal muscle fibres it supplies. Small motor units permit fine adjustments, as required in eye and hand movements. Larger units contribute greater increments of force. During increasing voluntary effort, low-threshold motor units are generally recruited before higher-threshold units, although recruitment patterns also depend on the task. [8]

An action potential in an individual fibre follows an all-or-none principle, but whole-muscle force is graded. The nervous system changes both the number of active motor units and their firing rates. Recruitment distributes work across fibres, while changes in discharge frequency alter the amount of force produced by each active unit. [8]

5.5.2 Twitch, summation and tetanus

A twitch is the mechanical response to a single effective stimulus. It includes a latent period, a contraction phase and a relaxation phase. If another stimulus arrives before relaxation is complete, the responses can summate because calcium and tension have not fully returned to baseline. At higher stimulation frequencies, repeated twitches may form an unfused or fused

tetanic contraction. Physiological tetanus describes sustained force and should not be confused with the infectious disease tetanus. [8]

5.5.3 Length, load and contraction type

Active force depends partly on the overlap between thick and thin filaments. Excessive shortening or stretching reduces favourable cross-bridge geometry. Passive tension rises when elastic structures are stretched. The total force measured from a muscle may therefore include both active and passive contributions. [8]

In a concentric contraction, an active muscle shortens, as when the elbow flexors raise a weight. In an eccentric contraction, it lengthens while resisting a load, as when the same weight is lowered slowly. In an isometric contraction, overall muscle length remains approximately constant while tension is produced. Holding a bag still is an everyday example. Internal fibre and tendon lengths can change even when joint position remains fixed. [8]

5.5.4 Sources of ATP

Muscle stores only a limited amount of immediately available ATP, so ATP must be regenerated continuously. Phosphocreatine can rapidly transfer phosphate to ADP. Glycolysis supplies ATP from glucose or glycogen, with lactate formation helping regenerate NAD+ when glycolytic flux exceeds mitochondrial processing capacity. Oxidative metabolism in mitochondria supports sustained ATP production from carbohydrate and fat, provided oxygen delivery and mitochondrial capacity are sufficient. [3]

These pathways operate together; exercise does not switch cleanly from one exclusive system to another. Their relative contributions depend on intensity, duration, training and substrate availability. Lactate is a usable metabolic fuel and is not the cause of delayed-onset muscle soreness. [3]

5.5.5 Fibre types and fatigue

Human skeletal muscle contains a mixture of slow type I and faster type II fibres. Type I fibres generally have high oxidative capacity and resist fatigue during prolonged activity. Type IIa fibres combine relatively rapid force development with appreciable oxidative capacity. Type IIx fibres have faster contractile characteristics and tend to fatigue more quickly during repeated demanding activity. Fibre properties form a spectrum and can adapt with training. [3]

Fatigue is a task-dependent reduction in the capacity to produce force or power. It may involve changes in neural drive, excitation–contraction coupling, ion balance, fuel availability and metabolite accumulation. It cannot be explained solely as complete ATP

depletion. Maintaining force requires coordination between the nervous, cardiovascular, respiratory and muscular systems. [3]

Feature	Type I	Type IIa	Type IIx
Contractile speed	Slow	Fast	Fast
Oxidative capacity	High	Moderate to high	Relatively low
Fatigue resistance	High	Intermediate	Lower
Typical contribution	Sustained activity	Repeated forceful activity	Brief high-power activity

5.5.6 Proprioception and reflex control

Muscle spindles contain specialised intrafusal fibres and signal muscle length and changes in length. Stretching a muscle can activate a spinal stretch reflex that increases activity in the stretched muscle. Gamma motor neurons adjust spindle sensitivity as muscle length changes, helping preserve useful feedback during movement. [8]

Golgi tendon organs lie in series with muscle fibres near muscle–tendon junctions and signal tension. Their input participates in task-dependent regulation of muscle force. Together with joint, skin, visual and vestibular information, proprioceptive signals help the nervous system estimate body position and correct movement. Reflexes are integrated into normal motor control rather than operating only as emergency responses. [8]

5.6 Muscle architecture and movement

5.6.1 Attachments and functional roles

A muscle's origin is conventionally the more fixed attachment, and its insertion is the more movable attachment in a described action. These terms do not mean that an attachment is permanently stationary. During a pull-up, for example, the upper limb can be relatively fixed while the trunk moves towards it. Understanding movement requires identifying which body segment is constrained in that particular task. [9]

An agonist provides a major contribution to a movement. An antagonist produces an opposing action, a synergist assists or limits unwanted movement, and a fixator stabilises a segment. These roles change with the activity. Elbow flexors may act concentrically to lift an object, isometrically to hold it and eccentrically to lower it. Antagonists may co-contract to improve joint stability. [9]

5.6.2 Fascicle arrangement

Parallel muscles have fascicles oriented largely along the muscle's long axis; a fusiform muscle has a thicker belly and tapering ends. Convergent muscles collect fibres from a broad origin towards a narrower attachment. Circular arrangements act around openings. Pennate muscles have fibres angled to a tendon and may be unipennate, bipennate or multipennate. [9]

Architecture influences the balance between excursion and force. Longer fibres allow more shortening distance, while a larger physiological cross-sectional area generally supports greater force. Pennation accommodates more fibres within a given muscle volume, although only a component of each fibre's force acts along the tendon. [9]

5.6.3 Levers and joint torque

Bones act as levers, joints provide axes and muscles generate effort through their attachments. Torque is the turning effect of a force: torque equals force multiplied by the perpendicular moment arm. A muscle with a small moment arm may need to generate a large force to balance a relatively modest external load. Moment arms change with joint position, so mechanical advantage changes during movement. [9]

In a first-class lever, the axis lies between effort and resistance, as in a simplified model of head extension at the atlanto-occipital joint. In a second-class lever, resistance lies between axis and effort, as in a simplified heel-raise model. In a third-class lever, effort lies between axis and resistance, as in elbow flexion while holding a load. Third-class arrangements often favour movement speed and range over force advantage. [9]

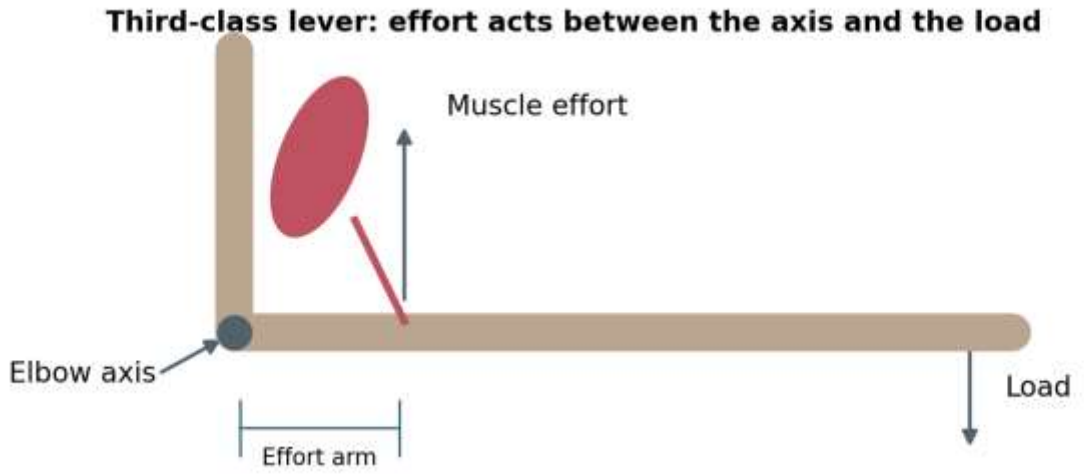


Figure 5.5. Simplified elbow-flexion lever with a horizontal forearm. The muscle effort acts between the elbow axis and the external load; actual anatomy and tendon force direction are simplified.

5.6.4 Terminology of movement

Flexion usually decreases the angle between body segments, whereas extension increases it. Abduction moves a segment away from the relevant reference midline, and adduction moves it towards that line. Medial and lateral rotation turn a segment around its longitudinal axis. Circumduction combines flexion, abduction, extension and adduction so that the distal end traces a cone-like path. [9]

Pronation and supination describe rotation of the forearm, not simply movement of the wrist. Dorsiflexion brings the top of the foot towards the leg, while plantar flexion points the foot downward. Inversion turns the sole medially and eversion turns it laterally. Elevation and depression move a structure superiorly and inferiorly; protraction and retraction move it forward and backward. Anatomical position provides the reference for these descriptions. [9]

5.7 Major skeletal muscles by region

5.7.1 Principles of muscle naming

Names often describe location, shape, size, fibre direction, attachments, number of heads or action. Deltoid refers to a triangular shape; rectus indicates a relatively straight fibre direction; and flexor describes an action. The name sternocleidomastoid identifies attachments related to the sternum, clavicle and mastoid process. Learning these components makes unfamiliar names easier to interpret. [10]

5.7.2 Head and neck

Muscles of facial expression commonly attach to skin and alter the shape of facial openings. Orbicularis oculi closes the eyelids, while orbicularis oris helps close and shape the lips. These muscles are supplied by the facial nerve. The muscles of mastication act on the mandible and receive motor supply from the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve. Masseter and temporalis elevate the mandible; the pterygoid muscles also contribute to jaw movements. [11]

The sternocleidomastoid rotates the face towards the opposite side when one side contracts and contributes to neck flexion when both sides act together. Deep neck muscles provide segmental support and movement. Neck function depends on coordinated activity rather than isolated action by a single superficial muscle. [11]

5.7.3 Trunk, respiration and pelvic floor

The diaphragm is the principal muscle of quiet inspiration. Its contraction lowers its dome, increasing thoracic volume and helping draw air into the lungs. The phrenic nerves, primarily from C3–C5, supply its motor innervation. External intercostals help elevate the ribs. Quiet

expiration is mainly passive, whereas abdominal muscles and parts of the internal intercostals contribute during forceful expiration. [11]

Rectus abdominis flexes the trunk, the obliques contribute to rotation and lateral flexion, and transversus abdominis compresses the abdominal contents. Erector spinae and deeper posterior muscles support and move the vertebral column. The pelvic floor, including levator ani, supports pelvic viscera and participates in continence. Coordinated abdominal, diaphragmatic and pelvic floor activity helps regulate pressure and trunk stability. [11]

5.7.4 Shoulder and upper limb

Scapular position provides a moving foundation for arm activity. Trapezius and serratus anterior cooperate in upward rotation during elevation of the arm. The deltoid is a major abductor at the shoulder, while the rotator cuff helps stabilise the humeral head against the glenoid. The cuff comprises supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor and subscapularis. [12]

Biceps brachii flexes the elbow and strongly contributes to forearm supination. Brachialis is an important elbow flexor regardless of forearm rotation. Triceps brachii extends the elbow. Forearm muscles move the wrist and digits, while intrinsic hand muscles refine grip and finger positioning. A strong grasp therefore requires both the long tendons crossing the wrist and the smaller muscles within the hand. [12]

5.7.5 Hip and lower limb

Gluteus maximus extends the hip, particularly during rising from a chair or climbing. Gluteus medius and minimus abduct the hip and help keep the pelvis level during single-leg support. Iliopsoas is a major hip flexor. The thigh adductors bring the thigh towards the midline and contribute to control during walking. [13]

Quadriceps femoris extends the knee. Rectus femoris also crosses the hip and contributes to hip flexion. Most hamstrings extend the hip and flex the knee; the short head of biceps femoris does not cross the hip. Tibialis anterior dorsiflexes and inverts the foot. Gastrocnemius and soleus produce plantar flexion through the calcaneal tendon; gastrocnemius also crosses the knee. The fibularis muscles contribute to eversion and lateral stability. [13]

Muscle or group	Region	Representative action
Masseter	Jaw	Elevates mandible
Sternocleidomastoid	Neck	Contralateral rotation; bilateral flexion

Muscle or group	Region	Representative action
Diaphragm	Thoracoabdominal boundary	Principal muscle of inspiration
Deltoid	Shoulder	Major contributor to arm abduction
Rotator cuff	Shoulder	Stabilises glenohumeral joint
Biceps brachii	Anterior arm	Elbow flexion and supination
Triceps brachii	Posterior arm	Elbow extension
Gluteus maximus	Buttock	Hip extension
Gluteus medius	Lateral hip	Hip abduction and pelvic stability
Quadriceps femoris	Anterior thigh	Knee extension
Hamstrings	Posterior thigh	Knee flexion; most extend hip
Tibialis anterior	Anterior leg	Dorsiflexion and inversion
Gastrocnemius and soleus	Posterior leg	Plantar flexion

5.7.6 Integrated example of walking

Walking requires alternating support and advancement of the limbs. During stance, hip abductors on the supporting side help prevent the opposite side of the pelvis from dropping. Knee extensors help control the knee during early loading, while ankle plantar flexors contribute to forward progression and push-off. During swing, hip flexion advances the limb and dorsiflexors help the toes clear the ground. [9]

Muscles frequently absorb energy before generating or transferring it. For example, eccentric control can slow a moving segment without reversing its direction. Sensory feedback, spinal circuits and descending commands continuously adjust timing. Gait is therefore a coordinated whole-body activity whose quality depends on joint mobility, balance, sensation and muscle force. [9]

5.8 Adaptation and clinical correlations

5.8.1 Development, repair and ageing

Skeletal muscle fibres develop through fusion of precursor cells called myoblasts, explaining their multiple nuclei. Satellite cells remain associated with adult fibres and contribute to repair and adaptation. Regeneration is limited by the extent of injury, the condition of the

surrounding tissue and other biological factors. Extensive damage may be replaced partly by connective tissue rather than fully restored contractile fibres. [5, 9]

Resistance training can increase fibre size through greater accumulation of cellular proteins, while endurance training commonly improves oxidative capacity. Immobilisation and denervation can produce atrophy. Age-related declines in muscle strength and mass vary between individuals; sarcopenia involves clinically meaningful impairment in muscle health and function. Adaptation reflects loading, neural activity, nutrition, hormones and recovery rather than exercise alone. [5, 9]

5.8.2 Strain and tendon injury

A strain involves injury to muscle or its associated tendon, whereas a sprain involves a ligament. Strains often occur when the tissue experiences loading beyond its current capacity. Pain, tenderness and reduced function may follow. Tendinopathy refers to a painful tendon disorder related to loading and tissue changes; it should not be assumed to be simply acute inflammation. [14]

Anatomical location matters when interpreting weakness. A painful tendon may limit force transmission despite relatively preserved muscle fibres, while a nerve lesion can prevent otherwise viable fibres from being activated. This distinction illustrates why examination considers movement, pain, sensation and reflexes together. [14]

5.8.3 Muscular dystrophy and neuromuscular disease

Muscular dystrophies are inherited disorders involving progressive muscle weakness and degeneration. Duchenne muscular dystrophy is associated with pathogenic variants in the dystrophin gene and a severe deficiency of functional dystrophin. Loss of membrane stability contributes to repeated fibre injury. The effects may extend beyond limb movement to respiratory and cardiac function. [14]

Myasthenia gravis illustrates a different site of dysfunction: impaired transmission at the neuromuscular junction, usually from an autoimmune process. Weakness can fluctuate and commonly involves ocular or bulbar muscles. A primary muscle disorder, a neuromuscular junction disorder and a peripheral nerve disorder can all cause weakness, but their mechanisms are different. [14]

5.8.4 Assessment and laboratory relevance

Assessment begins with the distribution and time course of weakness, associated pain, fatigability and functional limitations. Strength testing examines active force, while inspection may reveal wasting or asymmetry. Electromyography and nerve conduction studies investigate electrical activity and peripheral nerve function. Imaging can demonstrate

structural changes, and genetic testing or biopsy may be appropriate for selected disorders. [14]

Creatine kinase can increase when skeletal muscle fibres are damaged, but a raised value does not identify a single disease and a normal value does not exclude every muscle disorder. Recent strenuous exercise, trauma and medicines can affect interpretation. AST and LDH are present in multiple tissues and are not specific markers of skeletal muscle injury. Laboratory findings must be interpreted with the clinical pattern and the method-specific reference interval. [14]

5.9 Chapter summary and key terms

5.9.1 Chapter summary

Muscle function depends on organisation at several levels. Actin and myosin interactions generate force within sarcomeres; myofibrils transmit this activity along fibres; connective tissue collects force from fibres and fascicles; and tendons transfer it to the skeleton. Neural signals and calcium regulate the process, while continuous ATP regeneration supports both contraction and relaxation.

Whole-body movement adds another layer of organisation. Muscle architecture, joint position and moment arms influence mechanical performance. Agonists, antagonists and stabilisers cooperate in task-dependent patterns. Cardiac and smooth muscle use related contractile proteins but possess structural and regulatory specialisations suited to pumping blood and controlling internal organs. Disease may interrupt any level, from the contractile proteins to the nerve supply or tendon attachment.

5.9.2 Key terms

Term	Meaning
Sarcolemma	Plasma membrane of a muscle fibre
Sarcoplasmic reticulum	Intracellular membrane system that stores and releases calcium
Sarcomere	Contractile unit between successive Z discs
Fascicle	Bundle of skeletal muscle fibres
Motor unit	One alpha motor neuron and all fibres it supplies
Motor end plate	Specialised postsynaptic membrane at the neuromuscular junction
Recruitment	Activation of additional motor units

Term	Meaning
Proprioception	Sensory information about body position and movement
Agonist	Muscle contributing to the intended movement
Torque	Turning effect of force around an axis
Hypertrophy	Increase in cell or tissue size
Atrophy	Reduction in cell or tissue size

SVU

References

[1] Tortora GJ, Derrickson B. Principles of Anatomy and Physiology. 16th ed. Wiley.

[2] Marieb EN, Hoehn K. Human Anatomy & Physiology. 11th ed. Pearson.

[3] Hall JE, Hall ME. Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology. 14th ed. Elsevier.

[4] Boron WF, Boulpaep EL. Medical Physiology. 3rd ed. Elsevier.

[5] Mescher AL. Junqueira's Basic Histology: Text and Atlas. 17th ed. McGraw Hill.

[6] Pawlina W, Ross MH. Histology: A Text and Atlas: With Correlated Cell and Molecular Biology. 8th ed. Wolters Kluwer.

[7] Barrett KE, Barman SM, Brooks HL, Yuan JX-J. Ganong's Review of Medical Physiology. 26th ed. McGraw Hill.

[8] Costanzo LS. Costanzo Physiology. 7th ed. Elsevier.

[9] Neumann DA. Kinesiology of the Musculoskeletal System: Foundations for Rehabilitation. 3rd ed. Elsevier.

[10] Standring S, editor. Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice. 42nd ed. Elsevier.

[11] Splittgerber R. Snell's Clinical Anatomy by Regions. 10th ed. Wolters Kluwer.

[12] Dalley AF II, Agur AMR. Moore's Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 9th ed. Wolters Kluwer.

[13] Netter FH. Netter Atlas of Human Anatomy: A Systems Approach. 8th ed. Elsevier.

[14] Kumar V, Abbas AK, Aster JC, editors. Robbins & Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease. 10th ed. Elsevier.

CONTENT

- CHAPTER 6 -

THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM: HEART AND BLOOD VESSELS

6. Introduction……105

6.1. Position, Orientation and External Morphology of the Heart……106

6.2. Pericardium and Layers of the Cardiac Wall……..107

6.3. Chambers, Septa and Internal Landmarks……..109

6.4. Cardiac Valves and Fibrous Skeleton……..110

6.5. Coronary Circulation and Cardiac Veins……....112

6.6. Conducting System and Cardiac Innervation……..…114

6.7. Classification and Histological Structure of Blood Vessels……....115

6.8. Arteries, Arterioles and the Microcirculation……..116

6.9. Veins, Venules and Venous Return……...118

6.10. Major Systemic and Pulmonary Vessels……....119

6.11. Fetal Circulation and Postnatal Remnants……121

6.12. Applied Anatomy and Relevance to Medical Laboratory Technology……122

6.13. Summary……124

References……...…125

CHAPTER 6

THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM: HEART AND BLOOD VESSELS

Dr. Oly Banerjee

Department of Medical Laboratory Technology, School of Allied Health Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Telinipara, Barasat-Barrackpore Rd, Bara Kanthalia, West Bengal-700121, India

Overview

The cardiovascular system is a highly organized network consisting of the heart, arteries, veins, and capillaries that collectively establish blood circulation throughout the human body. Understanding its anatomical organization is fundamental to studying human anatomy, histology, pathology, and clinical laboratory sciences. This chapter provides a comprehensive account of the gross and microscopic anatomy of the heart, including its position, external features, pericardial coverings, chambers, septa, valves, and supporting structures. Particular emphasis is placed on coronary circulation, the anatomical components of the cardiac conduction system, and the structural characteristics of blood vessels. The histological differences between arteries, veins, and capillaries are explained alongside their anatomical distribution. The chapter also examines major systemic and pulmonary vessels, fetal cardiovascular structures, and relevant anatomical variations. Physiological functions are briefly discussed to establish their relationship with anatomical organization. Clinical correlations and applications in Medical Laboratory Technology are incorporated to support undergraduate learning.

6. Introduction

The cardiovascular system is one of the principal organ systems of the human body, consisting of the heart and an extensive network of blood vessels. Anatomically, it represents a continuous vascular arrangement through which blood is distributed to various tissues and organs. The heart functions as a central muscular organ, while arteries, veins, and capillaries form specialized channels that differ in their structure, location, wall thickness, and anatomical relationships.

The cardiovascular system is divided into two major circulatory pathways: systemic circulation and pulmonary circulation. Systemic circulation extends from the left ventricle

through the aorta and its branches to the tissues of the body, returning blood to the right atrium through the systemic veins. Pulmonary circulation originates from the right ventricle and extends through the pulmonary arteries to the lungs, from which blood returns to the left atrium through the pulmonary veins. These two pathways are anatomically interconnected through the four chambers of the heart (Standring, 2020; Moore et al., 2022).

The structural organization of the cardiovascular system demonstrates considerable specialization. The heart possesses a thick muscular wall, internal septa, valvular structures, and a specialized conduction system. Arteries possess relatively thick muscular and elastic walls, whereas veins have comparatively thinner walls and larger lumina. Capillaries form microscopic vascular channels composed predominantly of endothelial cells and their supporting basement membrane. These structural differences correspond to their respective roles within the circulation (Mescher, 2021; Ross and Pawlina, 2019).

From the perspective of Medical Laboratory Technology, knowledge of cardiovascular anatomy is essential for understanding vascular histology, blood specimen collection, cardiovascular diseases, tissue pathology, and the interpretation of laboratory findings associated with vascular and cardiac disorders.

6.1 Position, Orientation and External Morphology of the Heart

6.1.1 Anatomical Location and Position

The heart is a hollow, muscular organ situated within the thoracic cavity, predominantly in the middle mediastinum. It lies between the lungs, posterior to the sternum and anterior to the vertebral column and oesophagus. Inferiorly, the heart rests upon the diaphragm, with the fibrous pericardium attached to its central tendon.

Approximately two-thirds of the cardiac mass lies to the left of the median plane, while the remaining portion occupies the right side. The heart is oriented obliquely, with its long axis extending from the posterosuperior right region toward the anteroinferior left region.

In adults, the heart is approximately the size of a closed fist, although its dimensions vary according to age, sex, body size, and physiological conditions. The apex is generally located in the left fifth intercostal space near the midclavicular line (Drake et al., 2023; Snell, 2019).

6.1.2 Shape, Apex and Base

The human heart is roughly conical in shape and possesses an apex, base, surfaces, borders, and grooves.

Apex: The apex is the inferior, pointed end of the heart, formed almost entirely by the left ventricle. It is directed downward, forward, and toward the left. Its position provides an important anatomical landmark during clinical examination.

Base: The base is the broad posterior surface of the heart, formed predominantly by the left atrium, with a contribution from the right atrium. It is related to the oesophagus, descending thoracic aorta, and posterior mediastinal structures.

The anatomical orientation of the apex and base is important for interpreting radiological images, anatomical models, and cardiac sections (Moore et al., 2022; Netter, 2022).

6.1.3 Surfaces and Borders of the Heart

The heart possesses several identifiable surfaces.

- The **sternocostal or anterior surface** is formed predominantly by the right ventricle, with contributions from the right atrium and left ventricle.
- The **diaphragmatic or inferior surface** is formed mainly by the left ventricle and partly by the right ventricle.
- The **right pulmonary surface** is formed mainly by the right atrium.
- The **left pulmonary surface** is formed mainly by the left ventricle.

The right border is predominantly formed by the right atrium, whereas the left border is contributed mainly by the left ventricle and partly by the left auricle. The inferior border is formed chiefly by the right ventricle, with a contribution from the left ventricle near the apex.

6.1.4 External Grooves and Auricles

The external surface of the heart contains several grooves, known as sulci, which demarcate the boundaries between cardiac chambers.

The coronary or atrioventricular sulcus separates the atria from the ventricles. The anterior and posterior interventricular sulci indicate the approximate external positions of the interventricular septum.

These grooves contain coronary blood vessels, adipose tissue, and connective tissue.

The right and left auricles are muscular, pouch-like appendages of their respective atria. They increase the anatomical capacity of the atria and contain pectinate muscles (Tank, 2017).

6.2 Pericardium and Layers of the Cardiac Wall

6.2.1 Pericardium

The heart is enclosed within a fibroserous sac known as the pericardium. Anatomically, the pericardium consists of an outer fibrous pericardium and an inner serous pericardium.

Fibrous pericardium: This is a tough, dense connective tissue layer that surrounds the heart and the proximal portions of the great vessels. It is attached inferiorly to the diaphragm and blends superiorly with the outer connective tissue coverings of the great vessels.

Serous pericardium: This consists of two continuous layers. The parietal layer lines the inner surface of the fibrous pericardium, whereas the visceral layer covers the external surface of the heart and is called the epicardium.

The space between the parietal and visceral layers is termed the pericardial cavity. It normally contains a small quantity of serous fluid that reduces friction during cardiac movement (Standring, 2020).

The transverse and oblique pericardial sinuses are anatomical recesses formed by reflections of the serous pericardium around the great vessels and venous entrances.

6.2.2 Histological Layers of the Heart Wall

The wall of the heart consists of three principal layers: epicardium, myocardium, and endocardium.

Epicardium

The epicardium is the outermost layer of the cardiac wall and corresponds to the visceral layer of the serous pericardium. It consists of a layer of mesothelial cells supported by connective tissue. Variable amounts of adipose tissue, coronary vessels, lymphatics, and autonomic nerve fibres are present beneath the mesothelium.

Myocardium

The myocardium forms the thick, muscular middle layer of the heart wall. It is composed mainly of cardiac muscle fibres or cardiomyocytes, which are striated, branched, and connected by specialized junctional structures called intercalated discs.

The myocardium is considerably thicker in the ventricles than in the atria. The left ventricular myocardium is generally thicker than the right ventricular myocardium because of the greater pressure required in systemic circulation.

Endocardium

The endocardium is the innermost layer lining the cardiac chambers and covering the valves. It consists of endothelial cells resting on supporting connective tissue. The deeper subendocardial region contains small blood vessels, nerves, and specialized conducting cells, including Purkinje fibres in the ventricles.

These histological layers can be identified in appropriately prepared sections of cardiac tissue using light microscopy (Ross and Pawlina, 2019; Gartner and Hiatt, 2014; Mescher, 2021).

6.3 Chambers, Septa and Internal Landmarks

The human heart is divided into four chambers: the right atrium, right ventricle, left atrium, and left ventricle. The atrial chambers occupy the superior and posterior portions of the heart, whereas the ventricles contribute most of its muscular mass.

6.3.1 Right Atrium

The right atrium is a relatively thin-walled chamber located on the right side of the heart. It receives venous blood through the superior vena cava, inferior vena cava, and coronary sinus.

Its internal surface is divided into a smooth posterior region called the sinus venarum and an anterior region containing parallel muscular ridges known as pectinate muscles.

The crista terminalis is a prominent muscular ridge separating these two regions internally, while the sulcus terminalis represents its approximate external position.

The interatrial septum contains an oval depression called the fossa ovalis, representing a remnant of the fetal foramen ovale.

The right atrioventricular opening establishes communication between the right atrium and right ventricle (Drake et al., 2023).

6.3.2 Right Ventricle

The right ventricle is located mainly anteriorly and forms much of the sternocostal surface of the heart.

Its inner surface contains irregular muscular projections called trabeculae carneae. The papillary muscles project from the ventricular wall and connect with the tricuspid valve through fibrous strands called chordae tendineae.

A distinctive muscular structure, the septomarginal trabecula or moderator band, extends from the interventricular septum toward the anterior papillary muscle region. It carries part of the right bundle branch of the cardiac conduction system.

The smooth superior outflow region is called the infundibulum or conus arteriosus and leads to the pulmonary trunk through the pulmonary valve (Anderson et al., 2004).

6.3.3 Left Atrium

The left atrium is a relatively smooth-walled chamber forming most of the posterior base of the heart. It normally receives four pulmonary veins, two from each lung, although anatomical variations may occur.

The pectinate muscles of the left atrium are largely restricted to the left auricle.

The left atrium communicates with the left ventricle through the left atrioventricular opening, which is guarded by the mitral valve.

The relationship of the left atrium with the oesophagus is clinically important in imaging and certain cardiac procedures (Standring, 2020; Netter, 2022).

6.3.4 Left Ventricle

The left ventricle forms the apex of the heart and contributes substantially to the left and inferior cardiac surfaces.

It possesses the thickest myocardial wall among all four chambers. Its inner surface contains trabeculae carneae, generally finer than those observed in the right ventricle.

Two principal groups of papillary muscles, anterolateral and posteromedial, support the mitral valve through chordae tendineae.

The smooth outflow region, called the aortic vestibule, leads into the ascending aorta through the aortic valve.

6.3.5 Cardiac Septa

The interatrial septum separates the right and left atria, while the interventricular septum separates the right and left ventricles.

The interventricular septum consists predominantly of a thick muscular component and a smaller membranous component. The membranous region is an important anatomical site because congenital ventricular septal defects commonly occur within or adjacent to it.

Knowledge of septal anatomy is necessary for understanding congenital cardiovascular malformations and interpreting echocardiographic or pathological findings (Ho, 2009).

6.4 Cardiac Valves and Fibrous Skeleton

The cardiac valves are specialized connective tissue structures situated at the openings between the atria and ventricles and at the origins of the pulmonary trunk and aorta. Anatomically, they are classified into atrioventricular valves and semilunar valves.

6.4.1 Atrioventricular Valves

The atrioventricular valves are located between the atria and ventricles. They are composed of connective tissue covered by endocardium and are supported by chordae tendineae and papillary muscles.

Tricuspid Valve

The tricuspid valve is situated between the right atrium and right ventricle. It usually consists of three leaflets:

1. Anterior leaflet
2. Posterior leaflet
3. Septal leaflet

The leaflets are attached to the fibrous tissue surrounding the right atrioventricular opening. Their free margins are connected to papillary muscles through chordae tendineae.

The papillary muscles are muscular projections arising from the ventricular myocardium. Their contraction maintains tension within the chordae tendineae and helps prevent the valve leaflets from prolapsing into the right atrium during ventricular contraction.

Mitral Valve

The mitral or bicuspid valve is located between the left atrium and left ventricle. It possesses two principal leaflets, anterior and posterior.

The mitral valve apparatus consists of the valve annulus, leaflets, chordae tendineae, papillary muscles, and adjoining ventricular myocardium.

The anterior and posterior papillary muscle groups, commonly described as anterolateral and posteromedial, provide attachment to the chordae tendineae. Their structural integrity is important for proper leaflet alignment and valve competence (Carpentier et al., 2010; Standring, 2020).

6.4.2 Semilunar Valves

The semilunar valves are located at the ventricular outflow openings and are characterized by three pocket-shaped cusps.

Pulmonary Valve

The pulmonary valve is situated between the right ventricle and pulmonary trunk. It normally consists of anterior, right, and left semilunar cusps.

The cusps possess thin connective tissue cores covered by endothelium. Unlike the atrioventricular valves, semilunar valves do not contain chordae tendineae or papillary muscle attachments.

Aortic Valve

The aortic valve is located between the left ventricle and ascending aorta. It normally consists of three cusps associated with three aortic sinuses.

The cusps are designated right coronary, left coronary, and non-coronary according to their anatomical relationships.

The right and left coronary arteries generally arise from their corresponding aortic sinuses.

The supporting structures of the aortic valve are anatomically important in congenital valvular abnormalities, degenerative calcification, and pathological narrowing of the valve opening (Anderson et al., 2004; Ho, 2009).

6.4.3 Fibrous Skeleton of the Heart

The fibrous skeleton consists of dense connective tissue surrounding the cardiac valve openings.

Its principal components include fibrous rings around the atrioventricular and arterial orifices, fibrous trigones, and connecting connective tissue structures.

Anatomically, the fibrous skeleton provides attachment to valve leaflets and cardiac muscle fibres. It also separates much of the atrial myocardium from the ventricular myocardium, with the atrioventricular conduction bundle establishing the normal electrical connection between them.

The central fibrous body is a particularly important region associated with the membranous interventricular septum and the atrioventricular conduction pathway (Standring, 2020).

6.5 Coronary Circulation and Cardiac Veins

The heart possesses its own vascular system, known as the coronary circulation. This consists of the coronary arteries, their branches, myocardial microvascular networks, and cardiac veins.

The coronary arteries arise from the ascending aorta and distribute blood to different regions of the myocardium.

6.5.1 Right Coronary Artery

The right coronary artery originates from the right aortic sinus and passes through the right atrioventricular groove.

Its principal branches commonly include the right marginal artery, atrial branches, ventricular branches, and the posterior interventricular artery in right-dominant coronary circulation.

The right coronary artery usually supplies much of the right atrium, right ventricle, and portions of the inferior ventricular myocardium. The arterial supply of the cardiac conducting system varies according to coronary branching patterns.

Anatomical variations in the origin, course, and termination of coronary branches are clinically significant because they influence myocardial blood supply and the distribution of ischemic injury (Loukas et al., 2009).

6.5.2 Left Coronary Artery

The left coronary artery generally arises from the left aortic sinus and has a short main trunk that divides into the anterior interventricular and circumflex arteries.

Anterior Interventricular Artery

Also called the left anterior descending artery, it descends in the anterior interventricular sulcus toward the cardiac apex.

Its major branches include diagonal branches and septal perforating arteries. It supplies substantial portions of the anterior ventricular walls and interventricular septum.

Circumflex Artery

The circumflex artery courses within the left atrioventricular groove and distributes branches to the left atrium and lateral or posterior regions of the left ventricle.

The exact arrangement of the coronary arterial system varies considerably among individuals (Hosapatna et al., 2013; Kesieme et al., 2025).

6.5.3 Coronary Dominance

Coronary dominance is determined mainly by the coronary artery giving rise to the posterior interventricular artery.

Three major anatomical patterns are recognized:

- Right-dominant circulation, in which the posterior interventricular artery arises from the right coronary artery.
- Left-dominant circulation, in which it arises from the circumflex branch of the left coronary artery.
- Codominant circulation, in which branches from both coronary arterial systems contribute to the inferior or posterior interventricular region.

Right coronary dominance is the most frequently encountered pattern. Recognition of these variations is important during angiography, cardiac surgery, and anatomical examination (Wu et al., 2024; Lane et al., 2026).

6.5.4 Cardiac Veins and Coronary Sinus

Venous drainage of the myocardium occurs mainly through the coronary sinus and its tributaries.

The great cardiac vein accompanies the anterior interventricular artery before continuing toward the coronary sinus.

The middle cardiac vein occupies the posterior interventricular sulcus, while the small cardiac vein commonly accompanies the right coronary arterial distribution.

The coronary sinus is a large venous channel situated in the posterior portion of the atrioventricular groove. It opens into the right atrium.

Additional venous drainage occurs through anterior cardiac veins, which open directly into the right atrium, and the smallest cardiac veins, which drain directly into individual cardiac chambers.

Although coronary circulation is essential for myocardial blood supply, detailed regulation of coronary blood flow is beyond the anatomical scope of this chapter (Loukas et al., 2009; Wu et al., 2024).

6.6 Conducting System and Cardiac Innervation

6.6.1 Anatomical Components of the Conducting System

The cardiac conducting system consists of specialized myocardial cells arranged in defined anatomical regions.

The principal components are the sinoatrial node, atrioventricular node, atrioventricular bundle, right and left bundle branches, and Purkinje fibre network.

Sinoatrial Node

The sinoatrial node is situated in the right atrial wall near the junction of the superior vena cava and right atrium. It occupies a predominantly subepicardial position.

Histologically, the node consists of specialized myocardial cells embedded within connective tissue and associated with small blood vessels and autonomic nerve fibres.

Atrioventricular Node

The atrioventricular node lies within the inferior region of the interatrial septum, near the opening of the coronary sinus and the septal attachment of the tricuspid valve.

This region is associated with an anatomical area known as the triangle of Koch.

Atrioventricular Bundle and Bundle Branches

The atrioventricular bundle, or bundle of His, extends from the atrioventricular nodal region through the fibrous skeleton and enters the interventricular septum.

It divides into right and left bundle branches that distribute conducting fibres toward the corresponding ventricles.

Purkinje Fibres

Purkinje fibres are specialized conducting cardiac muscle cells located predominantly within the subendocardial region of the ventricular walls.

They are generally larger and more lightly stained than ordinary myocardial cells because of their relatively abundant glycogen and fewer centrally arranged myofibrils (Boyett et al., 2000; Anderson et al., 2009; Mescher, 2021).

6.6.2 Cardiac Innervation

The heart receives autonomic nerve fibres from sympathetic and parasympathetic sources.

Sympathetic cardiac fibres arise through the sympathetic nervous system, while parasympathetic fibres are provided predominantly by branches of the vagus nerves.

These fibres contribute to superficial and deep cardiac plexuses situated around the great vessels near the base of the heart.

Anatomically, autonomic nerves accompany vascular structures and distribute to the myocardium, conducting tissue, and coronary vessels.

Their physiological effects are concerned primarily with modifying cardiac rate, conduction, and myocardial activity (Moore et al., 2022).

6.6.3 Cardiac Lymphatic Drainage

The heart contains lymphatic capillaries and collecting vessels distributed throughout its connective tissue compartments.

Lymphatic vessels form networks within subendocardial, myocardial, and subepicardial regions.

Larger collecting channels generally follow coronary vascular pathways toward lymph nodes of the mediastinum.

Knowledge of these anatomical channels contributes to understanding inflammatory and pathological processes involving the heart (Standring, 2020).

6.7 Classification and Histological Structure of Blood Vessels

Blood vessels constitute a continuous network of endothelial-lined tubes that differ in diameter, wall composition, and anatomical arrangement.

From a structural perspective, they are classified into arteries, arterioles, capillaries, venules, and veins.

6.7.1 General Organization of the Vascular Wall

Most blood vessels larger than capillaries possess three concentric layers or tunics: tunica intima, tunica media, and tunica adventitia.

Tunica Intima

The tunica intima is the innermost layer and is directly exposed to circulating blood.

It consists of an endothelial lining supported by a basement membrane and variable amounts of subendothelial connective tissue.

In many arteries, the tunica intima is separated from the tunica media by an internal elastic lamina.

Tunica Media

The tunica media forms the middle vascular layer and contains smooth muscle cells arranged predominantly in a circular orientation.

Depending on the type of vessel, it also contains elastic fibres, elastic lamellae, collagen fibres, and extracellular matrix.

The tunica media is generally much thicker and more developed in arteries than in corresponding veins.

Tunica Adventitia

The tunica adventitia is the outer connective tissue layer. It consists mainly of collagen fibres, elastic fibres, fibroblasts, and associated nerves and blood vessels.

In large vessels, the adventitia may contain small nutrient vessels known as vasa vasorum.

The relative thickness and composition of these three tunics provide important histological criteria for identifying blood vessels (Ross and Pawlina, 2019; Munjal and Bordoni, 2023).

6.7.2 Vascular Endothelium

The endothelium is a continuous layer of flattened cells lining the internal surface of blood vessels.

Endothelial cells rest upon a basal lamina and form a structural interface between circulating blood and surrounding tissues.

Their morphology varies according to vessel type and location.

Beyond providing a lining, endothelial cells contribute to vascular permeability, maintenance of the blood–tissue interface, and regulation of coagulation and inflammatory interactions.

These activities are briefly mentioned because the endothelium has substantial importance in vascular pathology and clinical laboratory investigations (Aird, 2007).

6.7.3 Vasa Vasorum and Nervi Vasorum

Large arteries and veins possess walls that are too thick to receive adequate nutrients exclusively through diffusion from their lumina.

They therefore contain small blood vessels called vasa vasorum, which supply the outer layers of the vascular wall.

These vessels are particularly prominent in the adventitia and outer media.

Nervi vasorum are autonomic nerve fibres distributed mainly within the adventitia and outer vascular wall. They are associated with the innervation of vascular smooth muscle.

The presence of these structures is an important histological characteristic of large blood vessels (Mescher, 2021).

6.8 Arteries, Arterioles and the Microcirculation

6.8.1 Elastic Arteries

Elastic arteries are large vessels located close to the heart. Examples include the aorta, pulmonary trunk, and proximal portions of major arterial branches.

Their most distinctive histological feature is a thick tunica media containing numerous concentric elastic lamellae.

Smooth muscle cells are distributed between the elastic layers, together with collagen fibres and extracellular matrix.

The tunica adventitia consists of connective tissue containing vasa vasorum and nerve fibres.

The abundant elastic tissue allows large arteries to accommodate changes in vessel diameter during the cardiac cycle (Junqueira and Carneiro, 2005; Ross and Pawlina, 2019).

6.8.2 Muscular Arteries

Muscular arteries are medium-sized distributing arteries found throughout the body.

Examples include the radial, brachial, femoral, and many visceral arteries.

They possess a relatively thick tunica media containing multiple layers of smooth muscle cells.

A prominent internal elastic lamina is often visible between the intima and media. An external elastic lamina may separate the tunica media from the adventitia.

Compared with elastic arteries, muscular arteries contain fewer elastic lamellae and a proportionately greater amount of smooth muscle.

Under light microscopy, their thick muscular wall and relatively rounded lumen provide useful identification features (Gartner and Hiatt, 2014).

6.8.3 Small Arteries and Arterioles

Small arteries gradually divide into arterioles, which represent the smallest arterial branches leading toward capillary networks.

Arterioles possess an endothelial lining surrounded by a comparatively thin smooth muscle layer, commonly one or two cell layers in smaller arterioles.

The internal elastic lamina becomes less conspicuous and may be absent in the smallest vessels.

Arterioles are anatomically important because they connect larger distributing arteries to the microvascular network.

Histologically, they can be distinguished from similarly sized venules by the presence of a relatively organized muscular wall (Mescher, 2021).

6.8.4 Capillaries

Capillaries are the smallest blood vessels and form extensive microscopic networks within tissues.

Their walls consist mainly of endothelial cells, a basal lamina, and associated supporting cells such as pericytes.

Capillaries are classified into three major structural types.

Continuous Capillaries

Continuous capillaries possess an uninterrupted endothelial lining and generally a continuous basal lamina. They are widely distributed in skeletal muscle, connective tissue, and nervous tissue.

Fenestrated Capillaries

Fenestrated capillaries contain small openings or fenestrations within endothelial cells. They occur in tissues where relatively rapid movement of substances across the vascular wall is required, including endocrine organs and intestinal mucosa.

Sinusoidal or Discontinuous Capillaries

Sinusoidal capillaries possess relatively large, irregular lumina and discontinuities in their endothelial lining, basal lamina, or both.

They are characteristic of the liver, spleen, and bone marrow, although their detailed morphology differs among these organs.

The structural specialization of capillary walls is related to the functional requirements of the tissues in which they are located (Aird, 2007; Godwin et al., 2023).

6.8.5 Microcirculatory Organization

The microcirculation comprises terminal arterioles, capillary networks, and venules.

In some tissues, arteriovenous anastomoses provide direct connections between arterial and venous channels, bypassing portions of the capillary network.

Pericytes are contractile supporting cells associated with the outer surfaces of capillary and small venular endothelial tubes.

They contribute to structural support and maintenance of the microvascular wall.

The arrangement of microvascular networks varies considerably among organs and should not be regarded as anatomically identical throughout the body (Augustin and Koh, 2017).

6.9 Veins, Venules and Venous Return

6.9.1 Venules

Venules are small vessels that collect blood from capillary networks.

Postcapillary venules possess thin walls comprising endothelial cells, a basal lamina, and associated pericytes.

As venules increase in size, smooth muscle cells become more prominent within the vessel wall.

Postcapillary venules are particularly significant in inflammatory processes because they represent major sites of leukocyte migration from blood into surrounding tissues.

6.9.2 Small and Medium-Sized Veins

Small and medium-sized veins possess three tunics, although their boundaries are often less clearly defined than those of arteries.

The tunica intima consists of endothelium and supporting connective tissue. The tunica media is relatively thin and contains fewer smooth muscle layers, while the adventitia is often prominent.

Veins typically possess a larger lumen and thinner wall than corresponding arteries.

Many medium-sized veins, particularly those of the limbs, contain valves formed by folds of the tunica intima.

These valves help prevent the backward movement of blood under normal circulatory conditions (Eberhardt and Raffetto, 2014; Ross and Pawlina, 2019).

6.9.3 Large Veins

Large veins include the superior vena cava, inferior vena cava, and major tributaries.

They possess a relatively thin tunica media and a well-developed tunica adventitia.

The adventitia may contain longitudinally oriented smooth muscle bundles, collagen fibres, elastic fibres, and vasa vasorum.

This distinctive arrangement can be observed in histological preparations of large systemic veins (Mescher, 2021).

6.9.4 Superficial and Deep Veins

Superficial veins lie mainly within the subcutaneous tissues, while deep veins are positioned beneath the deep fascia, frequently accompanying major arteries.

Perforating veins establish communications between the superficial and deep venous systems.

The great and small saphenous veins are important superficial veins of the lower limb.

The anatomical arrangement of venous valves, surrounding skeletal muscles, and fascial compartments contributes to venous return, particularly from the lower limbs (Standring, 2020).

6.10 Major Systemic and Pulmonary Vessels

6.10.1 Aorta and Its Principal Branches

The aorta is the largest artery of the body and originates from the left ventricle.

It is divided into four major anatomical regions: the ascending aorta, aortic arch, descending thoracic aorta, and abdominal aorta.

The ascending aorta gives rise to the right and left coronary arteries.

The aortic arch normally gives three major branches: the brachiocephalic trunk, left common carotid artery, and left subclavian artery.

The brachiocephalic trunk subsequently divides into the right common carotid and right subclavian arteries.

The descending thoracic aorta distributes branches to the thoracic wall and thoracic viscera.

After passing through the aortic hiatus of the diaphragm, it continues as the abdominal aorta.

Major abdominal branches include the celiac trunk, superior mesenteric artery, renal arteries, and inferior mesenteric artery.

The abdominal aorta usually terminates near the fourth lumbar vertebra by dividing into the right and left common iliac arteries (Standring, 2020; Drake et al., 2023).

6.10.2 Arteries of the Upper and Lower Limbs

In the upper limb, the subclavian artery continues as the axillary artery at the lateral border of the first rib.

The axillary artery becomes the brachial artery at the inferior border of teres major.

The brachial artery normally divides into radial and ulnar arteries near the elbow.

These vessels contribute to arterial arches and branches supplying the hand.

In the lower limb, the external iliac artery becomes the femoral artery beneath the inguinal ligament.

The femoral artery passes through the adductor hiatus and continues as the popliteal artery.

The popliteal artery gives rise to anterior and posterior tibial arterial pathways, which contribute to the circulation of the leg and foot.

These anatomical relationships are relevant to arterial pulse examination, vascular access, and the identification of peripheral arterial disease (Moore et al., 2022; Tank, 2017).

6.10.3 Superior and Inferior Venae Cavae

The superior vena cava is formed by the union of the right and left brachiocephalic veins.

It returns venous blood from the head, neck, upper limbs, and much of the thoracic region to the right atrium.

The inferior vena cava is formed by the union of the common iliac veins and ascends through the abdomen before passing through the diaphragm and entering the right atrium.

Its principal tributaries include lumbar, renal, hepatic, and other regional veins.

The azygos venous system provides an additional pathway connecting thoracic venous drainage with the superior vena cava (Standring, 2020).

6.10.4 Hepatic Portal Venous System

The hepatic portal venous system is a specialized vascular arrangement in which blood passes through two capillary beds before returning to the systemic circulation.

The hepatic portal vein is usually formed by the union of the superior mesenteric and splenic veins posterior to the neck of the pancreas.

It carries blood from much of the gastrointestinal tract, pancreas, and spleen toward the liver.

Within the liver, portal venous branches terminate in hepatic sinusoids.

Blood subsequently passes through central veins and hepatic veins before entering the inferior vena cava.

Anatomical connections between portal and systemic venous channels are clinically important in portal hypertension (Drake et al., 2023; Snell, 2019).

6.10.5 Pulmonary Trunk and Pulmonary Vessels

The pulmonary trunk originates from the right ventricle and extends superiorly before dividing into the right and left pulmonary arteries.

These arteries enter the respective lungs and subdivide into progressively smaller arterial branches associated with the bronchial tree.

Their terminal branches give rise to extensive pulmonary capillary networks surrounding the alveoli.

Pulmonary venous channels collect blood from these networks and usually form four major pulmonary veins, two from each lung, which enter the left atrium.

Unlike systemic arteries, pulmonary arteries carry relatively deoxygenated blood, whereas pulmonary veins carry oxygenated blood.

This distinction illustrates that arteries and veins are anatomically defined by the direction of blood movement relative to the heart rather than by oxygen content (West and Luks, 2021; Moore et al., 2022).

6.11 Fetal Circulation and Postnatal Remnants

The fetal cardiovascular system possesses several specialized vascular connections that permit blood to circulate through the developing body while the placenta performs essential exchange functions.

Important fetal cardiovascular structures include the umbilical vein, ductus venosus, foramen ovale, ductus arteriosus, and umbilical arteries.

The umbilical vein transports oxygenated blood from the placenta toward the fetus.

The ductus venosus permits a substantial portion of umbilical venous blood to bypass the hepatic sinusoids and enter the inferior vena cava.

The foramen ovale establishes an opening between the right and left atria, allowing part of the fetal venous return to pass directly into the left atrium.

The ductus arteriosus connects the pulmonary trunk region to the descending aorta and diverts much of the right ventricular output away from the high-resistance fetal pulmonary circulation.

After birth, separation from placental circulation and expansion of the lungs result in major cardiovascular adaptations.

The following fetal structures ordinarily undergo closure or anatomical transformation:

- Foramen ovale — fossa ovalis
- Ductus arteriosus — ligamentum arteriosum
- Ductus venosus — ligamentum venosum
- Umbilical vein — ligamentum teres hepatis
- Distal portions of umbilical arteries — medial umbilical ligaments

Failure of normal closure may result in congenital cardiovascular abnormalities such as patent ductus arteriosus or persistent interatrial communication.

Understanding these structures is important for identifying congenital defects and interpreting the developmental anatomy of the heart and great vessels (Sadler, 2019; Moore et al., 2020).

6.12 Applied Anatomy and Relevance to Medical Laboratory Technology

6.12.1 Identification of Cardiovascular Tissues in Histological Preparations

Histological examination of cardiovascular tissue forms an essential component of anatomical and pathological laboratory training.

In sections stained with haematoxylin and eosin, arteries can generally be distinguished by a prominent tunica media, relatively thick wall, and comparatively regular lumen.

Veins commonly possess a thinner muscular wall, wider or irregular lumen, and relatively prominent adventitia.

Elastic arteries demonstrate numerous elastic lamellae within their tunica media. Special staining methods, including elastic tissue stains, may be used to visualize these structures.

Cardiac muscle can be distinguished microscopically by its branching fibres, central nuclei, cross-striations, and intercalated discs.

Purkinje fibres may appear as comparatively large, pale cells in the subendocardial tissue.

Recognition of these structural features provides a foundation for interpreting cardiovascular histopathology (Ross and Pawlina, 2019; Mescher, 2021).

6.12.2 Anatomical Basis of Venepuncture

Venepuncture is one of the most frequently performed procedures in Medical Laboratory Technology.

Superficial veins of the cubital fossa, particularly the median cubital vein, are commonly used for venous blood collection.

The median cubital vein often connects the cephalic and basilic veins and is generally accessible because of its superficial location.

However, variations in the superficial venous pattern and proximity to arteries and nerves must be considered.

Knowledge of regional vascular anatomy assists laboratory professionals in identifying appropriate puncture sites and reducing the risk of accidental arterial puncture or nerve injury.

Appropriate patient identification, aseptic technique, specimen labelling, and sample handling remain essential parts of safe blood collection (WHO, 2010; CLSI, 2017).

6.12.3 Anatomical Basis of Atherosclerosis

Atherosclerosis is a pathological process affecting the arterial wall, particularly the tunica intima.

The lesion is characterized by accumulation of lipids, inflammatory cells, fibrous connective tissue, and other components within the intimal layer.

Progressive development of atherosclerotic plaques may narrow the arterial lumen.

Advanced lesions may develop calcification, ulceration, or rupture, potentially contributing to thrombosis.

Coronary, carotid, and peripheral arteries are important sites of atherosclerotic disease.

Microscopic examination may demonstrate lipid-rich regions, cholesterol clefts, fibrous caps, inflammatory infiltrates, and calcification.

The structural changes associated with atherosclerosis provide a direct connection between vascular anatomy and cardiovascular pathology (Libby et al., 2019; Kumar et al., 2020).

6.12.4 Myocardial Infarction and Coronary Anatomy

Myocardial infarction involves injury and necrosis of cardiac muscle associated with myocardial ischemia.

Its anatomical distribution frequently corresponds to the territory supplied by an affected coronary artery.

Obstruction of the anterior interventricular artery may involve regions of the anterior left ventricular wall and interventricular septum.

Obstruction of the right coronary artery or circumflex artery may affect other myocardial regions, depending on coronary dominance and individual vascular anatomy.

Histopathological changes following infarction develop over time and may include cardiomyocyte necrosis, inflammatory cell infiltration, granulation tissue formation, and eventual fibrous scar formation.

Cardiac troponins are important laboratory biomarkers of myocardial injury. Their interpretation, however, requires correlation with clinical and other diagnostic findings because increased troponin concentrations alone do not establish myocardial infarction (Thygesen et al., 2018; Kumar et al., 2020).

6.12.5 Venous Thrombosis and Pulmonary Embolism

Venous thrombosis involves the formation of a thrombus within a vein.

Deep veins of the lower limbs are important sites of thrombus formation. A detached portion of a thrombus may travel through the inferior vena cava, right atrium, and right ventricle before entering the pulmonary arterial system.

This anatomical pathway explains the relationship between deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism.

D-dimer testing is used within appropriate diagnostic pathways for suspected venous thromboembolism. Results require interpretation alongside clinical probability and other investigations.

Knowledge of venous anatomy therefore contributes to understanding both the origin and possible consequences of venous thromboembolic disease (Eberhardt and Raffetto, 2014; Konstantinides et al., 2020).

6.13 Summary

The cardiovascular system consists of the heart and a highly specialized network of arteries, capillaries, and veins. The heart is located within the middle mediastinum and possesses four chambers, fibrous and serous coverings, muscular walls, septa, and valvular structures. Its coronary vessels provide a distinct arterial and venous circulation, while specialized conducting tissues are distributed through anatomically defined regions of the myocardium.

Blood vessels demonstrate important structural differences based on the organization of the tunica intima, media, and adventitia. Elastic arteries contain numerous elastic lamellae, muscular arteries possess prominent smooth muscle layers, and capillaries consist mainly of

endothelial structures. Veins have comparatively thinner walls and frequently contain valves, particularly in the limbs.

The major systemic and pulmonary vessels connect the cardiac chambers with different anatomical regions. Fetal cardiovascular channels undergo characteristic postnatal modifications that produce recognizable adult remnants.

For students of Medical Laboratory Technology, understanding these gross and microscopic structures is fundamental to vascular histology, venepuncture, cardiovascular pathology, and interpretation of laboratory investigations associated with cardiac and vascular disease (Standring, 2020; Mescher, 2021).

References

1. Aird, W. C. (2007). Phenotypic heterogeneity of the endothelium: I. Structure, function, and mechanisms. *Circulation Research, 100*(2), 158–173. https://doi.org/10.1161/01.RES.0000255691.76142.4a

2. Anderson, R. H., Brown, N. A., & Moorman, A. F. M. (2009). Development and structures of the venous pole of the heart. *Developmental Dynamics, 238*, 1018–1030.

3. Anderson, R. H., Razavi, R., & Taylor, A. M. (2004). Cardiac anatomy revisited. *Journal of Anatomy, 205*(3), 159–177. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.0021-8782.2004.00330.x

4. Augustin, H. G., & Koh, G. Y. (2017). Organotypic vasculature: From descriptive heterogeneity to functional pathophysiology. *Science, 357*(6353), eaal2379. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aal2379

5. Boyett, M. R., Honjo, H., & Kodama, I. (2000). The sinoatrial node, a heterogeneous pacemaker structure. *Cardiovascular Research, 47*(4), 658–687.

6. Carpentier, A., Adams, D. H., & Filsoufi, F. (2010). *Carpentier's Reconstructive Valve Surgery*. Saunders Elsevier.

7. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI). (2017). *Collection of Diagnostic Venous Blood Specimens* (7th ed.; GP41). CLSI.

8. Drake, R. L., Vogl, A. W., & Mitchell, A. W. M. (2023). *Gray's Anatomy for Students* (5th ed.). Elsevier.

9. Eberhardt, R. T., & Raffetto, J. D. (2014). Chronic venous insufficiency. *Circulation, 130*(4), 333–346. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.113.006898

10. Gartner, L. P., & Hiatt, J. L. (2014). *Color Textbook of Histology* (3rd ed.). Saunders.

11. Godwin, L., Tariq, M. A., & Crane, J. S. (2023). Histology, capillary. In *StatPearls*. StatPearls Publishing. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK546578/

12. Ho, S. Y. (2009). Anatomy of the mitral valve. *Heart*, *95*(18), 1538–1543.

13. Hosapatna, M., D'Souza, A. S., Prasanna, L. C., Bhojaraja, V. S., & Sumalatha, S. (2013). Anatomical variations in the left coronary artery and its branches. *Singapore Medical Journal*, *54*(1), 49–52. https://doi.org/10.11622/smedj.2013012

14. Junqueira, L. C., & Carneiro, J. (2005). *Basic Histology: Text & Atlas* (11th ed.). McGraw-Hill.

15. Kesieme, E. B., Omoregbee, B., Ngaage, D. L., & Danton, M. H. D. (2025). Comprehensive review of coronary artery anatomy relevant to cardiac surgery. *Current Cardiology Reviews*. https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC12060931/

16. Konstantinides, S. V., et al. (2020). 2019 ESC Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of acute pulmonary embolism. *European Heart Journal*, *41*(4), 543–603. https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/ehz405

17. Kumar, V., Abbas, A. K., & Aster, J. C. (2020). *Robbins & Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease* (10th ed.). Elsevier.

18. Lane, C. P., et al. (2026). Anatomical variation in the external vasculature of the human heart: A cadaveric investigation of dominance in coronary artery branching and cardiac venous drainage. *Annals of Anatomy*, *263*, 152749. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aanat.2025.152749

19. Libby, P., Buring, J. E., Badimon, L., et al. (2019). Atherosclerosis. *Nature Reviews Disease Primers*, *5*, 56. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41572-019-0106-z

20. Loukas, M., Groat, C., Khangura, R., Owens, D. G., & Anderson, R. H. (2009). The normal and abnormal anatomy of the coronary arteries. *Clinical Anatomy*, *22*(1), 114–128. https://doi.org/10.1002/ca.20761

21. Mescher, A. L. (2021). *Junqueira's Basic Histology: Text and Atlas* (16th ed.). McGraw Hill.

22. Moore, K. L., Dalley, A. F., & Agur, A. M. R. (2022). *Clinically Oriented Anatomy* (9th ed.). Wolters Kluwer.

23. Moore, K. L., Persaud, T. V. N., & Torchia, M. G. (2020). *The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology* (11th ed.). Elsevier.

24. Munjal, A., & Bordoni, B. (2023). Histology, vascular. In *StatPearls*. StatPearls Publishing. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK554407/

25. Netter, F. H. (2022). *Atlas of Human Anatomy* (8th ed.). Elsevier.

26. Ross, M. H., & Pawlina, W. (2019). *Histology: A Text and Atlas* (8th ed.). Wolters Kluwer.

27. Sadler, T. W. (2019). *Langman's Medical Embryology* (14th ed.). Wolters Kluwer.

28. Snell, R. S. (2019). *Clinical Anatomy by Regions* (10th ed.). Wolters Kluwer.

29. Standring, S. (Ed.). (2020). *Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice* (42nd ed.). Elsevier.

30. Tank, P. W. (2017). *Grant's Dissector* (16th ed.). Wolters Kluwer.

31. Thygesen, K., Alpert, J. S., Jaffe, A. S., et al. (2018). Fourth universal definition of myocardial infarction (2018). *Circulation, 138*, e618–e651. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIR.0000000000000617

32. West, J. B., & Luks, A. M. (2021). *West's Respiratory Physiology: The Essentials* (11th ed.). Wolters Kluwer.

33. World Health Organization (WHO). (2010). *WHO Guidelines on Drawing Blood: Best Practices in Phlebotomy*. WHO.

34. Wu, B., Kheiwa, A., Swamy, P., et al. (2024). Clinical significance of coronary arterial dominance: A review of the literature. *Journal of the American Heart Association, 13*, e032851. https://doi.org/10.1161/JAHA.123.032851

SVU

CONTENT

- Chapter 7 -

The Lymphatic and Immune System

7.1 Introduction…….130

7.2 Anatomy of the Lymphatic System……..130

7.3 Mechanics of Fluid Homeostasis…….132

7.4 Overview of the Immune System……....132

7.5 Innate Immunity: The First and Second Lines of Defense……..133

7.6 Adaptive Immunity: Highly Specific Defense……...134

7.7 Humoral Immunity: B Cells and Antibodies……..135

7.8 Cellular Immunity: T Cells and Cell-Mediated Defense……..136

7.9 Immunological Memory and Clinical Applications……..137

7.10 Clinical Correlations and Homeostatic Imbalances……137

7.11 Summary…….138

References…….139

SVU

Chapter 7

The Lymphatic and Immune System

Dr. Barnini Bhattacharya

Department of Medical Laboratory Technology, School of Allied Health Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Telinipara, Barasat-Barrackpore Rd, Bara Kanthalia, West Bengal- 700121, India

Overview

The chapter examines the deeply integrated relationship between the human body's physical fluid infrastructure and its dynamic cellular defense network. The lymphatic system provides the structural framework, acting as a low-pressure hydraulic drainage conduit that processes approximately three liters of excess interstitial fluid daily to maintain cardiovascular blood volume and prevent tissue lymphedema. Concurrently, this fluid highway functions as an early-warning surveillance route, channelling antigens through specialized biological filters—including lymph nodes, the spleen, and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT)—where mobile immune populations are stationed. Defensively, the body coordinates a tiered protection strategy split into two cooperative arms: innate and adaptive immunity. Innate immunity delivers rapid, broad-spectrum containment via anatomical barriers, phagocytes, natural killer (NK) cells, and protective plasma cascades like the complement system. When pathogens breach these immediate lines of defense, the adaptive arm executes targeted clearance utilizing Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) presentation to activate highly specialized lymphocytes. This specific defense splits into humoral immunity (B cells engineering targeted immunoglobulins to neutralize extracellular threats) and cellular immunity (T cells directly eliminating compromised, intracellular host environments). A core highlight of this adaptive framework is the creation of long-lived memory cells, which ensure rapid secondary protection upon future exposures. Finally, this chapter explores the clinical consequences of homeostatic imbalances, detailing how structural blocks result in lymphedema, failures in self-tolerance prompt devastating autoimmune diseases, and target receptor disruption by agents like HIV cripples the entire immune architecture.

7.1 Introduction

The human body constantly interacts with an environment teeming with microscopic threats. To survive, it relies on two deeply interconnected networks: the lymphatic system and the immune system. While they are often studied together, they serve distinct but complementary roles.

The lymphatic system is a physical network of vessels, nodes, and organs. It acts as both a drainage system for fluid balance and a highway for cellular transit. The immune system, by contrast, is a functional population of cells and molecules dispersed throughout the body, dedicated to defense. Together, they form a highly coordinated security infrastructure that maintains homeostasis, neutralizes pathogens, and ensures survival.

The relationship between these two systems can be understood as an alliance between physical infrastructure and mobile security forces. The Lymphatic System as the Infrastructure: This is a tangible, anatomical network of vascular channels, fluid-filled conduits, specialized filtration nodes, and encapsulated organs. It acts simultaneously as a hydraulic drainage mechanism to preserve blood volume and an open transit highway for cellular migration. The other is the Immune System acting as the Specialized Population. By contrast, this is primarily a functional population of mobile cells, signaling proteins, and circulating macromolecules. Instead of being anchored to a single anatomical track, it is dispersed throughout every tissue fluid and organ system in the body, perpetually dedicated to defense.

Without the physical highway of the lymphatic vessels, immune cells could not travel efficiently to intercept infections. Conversely, without the defensive cells of the immune system, the fluid collected by the lymphatic vessels would quickly become a vector for systemic blood poisoning (septicemia). Together, they form a highly coordinated security and drainage infrastructure that maintains fluid homeostasis, neutralizes molecular pathogens, and ensures survival.

7.2 Anatomy of the Lymphatic System

The lymphatic system comprises a network of vessels, fluid called lymph, and various lymphoid tissues and organs. It functions under a one-way drainage mechanism, returning excess interstitial fluid back to the bloodstream.

Lymphatic Vessels and Capillaries

The system begins in the microscopic spaces between tissue cells with lymphatic capillaries. These capillaries are blind-ended tubes woven among blood capillaries. Unlike blood vessels, lymphatic capillaries are uniquely permeable. Their endothelial cells overlap loosely, forming minivalves. When interstitial fluid pressure increases, these valves open, allowing fluid, proteins, and large particles (including pathogens) to enter.

Once inside, the fluid is called lymph. Lymphatic capillaries merge to form larger lymphatic vessels, which resemble veins but have thinner walls and more internal valves to prevent backflow. Lymph is not pumped by the heart; instead, it moves via:

- **Skeletal muscle contractions** compressing the vessels
- **Rhythmic contractions** of the smooth muscle within vessel walls
- **Pressure changes** in the thorax during respiration

Eventually, lymph drains into two massive channels:

- **The Thoracic Duct:** Drains lymph from the entire lower body, left upper limb, and left side of the head and thorax. It empties into the left subclavian vein.
- **The Right Lymphatic Duct:** Drains lymph from the right upper limb and the right side of the head and thorax. It empties into the right subclavian vein.

Primary vs. Secondary Lymphoid Organs

Lymphoid organs are categorized based on whether they produce or deploy immune cells.

Primary Lymphoid Organs

These are the sites where lymphocytes form and mature [1].

- **Red Bone Marrow:** The site of hematopoiesis, where all blood cells originate. B lymphocytes (B cells) remain in the bone marrow to mature [2].
- **Thymus:** A bilobed organ located in the superior mediastinum. T lymphocytes (T cells) migrate from the bone marrow to the thymus to mature and undergo rigorous selection processes [3]. The thymus is highly active during youth but progressively atrophies after puberty.

Secondary Lymphoid Organs

These are the staging grounds where mature lymphocytes encounter antigens and initiate immune responses [1].

- **Lymph Nodes:** Small, bean-shaped structures clustered along lymphatic vessels. Major clusters occur in the cervical, axillary, and inguinal regions. Lymph nodes filter lymph, capturing foreign material for destruction by macrophages and activating lymphocytes.

- **Spleen:** The largest lymphoid organ, located in the left upper quadrant of the abdomen. It filters blood rather than lymph. It removes aged red blood cells and acts as a surveillance site for blood-borne pathogens [4].
- **Mucosa-Associated Lymphoid Tissue (MALT):** Collections of lymphoid tissue scattered throughout mucous membranes exposed to the exterior environment. Examples include the tonsils (pharynx), Peyer's patches (small intestine), and the appendix.

7.3 Mechanics of Fluid Homeostasis

Each day, the cardiovascular system filters approximately 20 liters of fluid out of blood capillaries into the interstitial spaces. Blood capillaries reabsorb about 17 liters of this fluid. The remaining 3 liters of fluid are left behind in the tissue spaces [5].

If this fluid were not continuously returned to the circulation, the blood volume would drop rapidly, causing cardiovascular collapse, and tissues would swell uncontrollably. The lymphatic capillaries absorb this excess fluid, transport it through the lymphatic network, filter it for pathogens within the lymph nodes, and return it directly back into the venous system [5].

7.4 Overview of the Immune System

The immune system is divided into two functional arms that work in tandem: innate (nonspecific) immunity and adaptive (specific) immunity [6]. The Table (Table 1) shows the comparative features of the innate and adaptive immunity.

Table 1: The comparative features of the innate and adaptive immunity

Characteristic	Innate Immunity	Adaptive Immunity
Response Time	Rapid (minutes to hours)	Slow (days to weeks)
Specificity	Nonspecific; recognizes general molecular patterns	Highly specific; tailored to distinct antigens
Memory	No immunological memory	Long-term memory; faster subsequent responses
Components	Barriers, phagocytes, natural killer cells, complement	B cells, T cells, antibodies

7.5 Innate Immunity: The First and Second Lines of Defense

Innate immunity is the defense system with which a person is born. It does not require prior exposure to a pathogen to function effectively.

First Line of Defense: Physical and Chemical Barriers

The body's primary shield consists of epithelial membranes that block pathogen entry [6].

- **Skin:** The keratinized stratified squamous epithelium forms a physical barrier. Epidermal secretions have an acidic pH (3 to 5), creating an inhospitable "acid mantle" for bacterial growth.
- **Mucous Membranes:** Line body cavities open to the exterior (digestive, respiratory, urinary, and reproductive tracts). Mucus traps microorganisms, while specialized structures like cilia in the respiratory tract sweep trapped debris away from the lungs.
- **Chemical Secretions:** Lysozyme, an enzyme found in saliva, tears, and sweat, actively destroys bacterial cell walls. Gastric juice in the stomach contains hydrochloric acid and protein-digesting enzymes that kill most swallowed pathogens.

Second Line of Defense: Internal Innate Defenses

When pathogens breach physical barriers, internal innate mechanisms are triggered immediately [6].

- **Phagocytes:** Cells that engulf and digest cellular debris and pathogens. Macrophages are the primary phagocytic cells, deriving from monocytes. They patrol tissues continuously. Neutrophils are the most abundant white blood cells, arriving rapidly at sites of acute infection to phagocytize bacteria.
- **Natural Killer (NK) Cells:** A unique population of granular lymphocytes that patrol the blood and lymph. Unlike adaptive T cells, NK cells can detect and destroy infected host cells or cancer cells without specific antigen recognition [7]. They induce apoptosis (programmed cell death) by releasing perforins and granzymes.
- **The Inflammatory Response:** A localized tissue response to injury or infection characterized by four cardinal signs: redness, heat, swelling, and pain. It isolates the injured area, disposes of pathogens, and sets the stage for tissue repair. Mast cells release histamine, causing vasodilation (increased blood flow, creating redness and heat) and increased capillary permeability (allowing fluid and clotting factors to leak into tissues, causing swelling and pain) [8].
- **Antimicrobial Proteins:** Interferons are secreted by virus-infected cells to warn and protect neighboring uninfected cells. The complement system consists of circulating

plasma proteins that, when activated, amplify inflammation, coat pathogens for easier phagocytosis (opsonization), or punch holes in bacterial membranes via the Membrane Attack Complex (MAC) [9].

- **Fever:** A systemic response triggered by pyrogens resetting the hypothalamic thermostat upward. A moderate fever inhibits bacterial reproduction and accelerates metabolic rates to speed up tissue repair.

7.6 Adaptive Immunity: Highly Specific Defense

Adaptive immunity is an acquired defense system that targets specific pathogens with precision. It relies on the ability to distinguish self-antigens from nonspecific foreign antigens [10].

Antigens and Antigenic Determinants

An antigen is any substance capable of mobilizing the immune system and provoking an immune response. Most are large, complex molecules (proteins, nucleic acids, or polysaccharides) not normally found in the body. The specific structural region of an antigen that an antibody or lymphocyte receptor binds to is called the antigenic determinant or epitope.

Lymphocyte Development, Maturation, and Activation

All lymphocytes originate in the red bone marrow from hematopoietic stem cells. Their development follows strict phases [10]:

- **Maturation:** Lymphocytes develop immunocompetence (the ability to recognize one specific antigen) and self-tolerance (the ability to remain unresponsive to the body's own antigens). T cells mature in the thymus; B cells mature in the bone marrow [2, 3].
- **Seeding Secondary Lymphoid Organs:** Mature but "naive" lymphocytes leave their maturation sites and populate lymph nodes, the spleen, and MALT, where they are likely to encounter foreign antigens.
- **Antigen Encounter and Activation:** When a naive lymphocyte's receptor binds to its specific antigen, the cell is activated.
- **Proliferation and Differentiation:** Once activated, the lymphocyte undergoes rapid mitosis (clonal selection). This produces a massive army of identical cells. Most become effector cells that fight the immediate infection, while a small percentage become memory cells that persist for decades to provide long-term immunity [2, 3].

7.7 Humoral Immunity: B Cells and Antibodies

Humoral immunity is mediated by B lymphocytes and involves the production of antibodies that circulate freely in body fluids (humors) [2].

B Cell Activation and Clonal Selection

When an antigen binds to a matching receptor on a naive B cell, the cell internalizes the antigen and presents it to a helper T cell. With T cell assistance, the B cell undergoes clonal selection. The resulting effector cells are called plasma cells. Plasma cells are specialized factories that secrete highly specific proteins called antibodies into the blood and lymph at a rate of thousands of molecules per second [2].

Antibody Structure and Classes

Antibodies, or immunoglobulins (Igs), are Y-shaped proteins consisting of four polypeptide chains: two identical heavy chains and two identical light chains. The tips of the Y form the variable regions, which contain the specific antigen-binding sites. The stem of the Y forms the constant region, which determines how the antibody functions.

There are five major classes of antibodies [10]:

- **IgM:** The first class released into the blood during a primary response; a potent agglutinating agent due to its pentameric shape.
- **IgA:** Found in body secretions (saliva, sweat, tears, intestinal juice, and breast milk); prevents pathogen attachment to epithelial surfaces.
- **IgD:** Functions primarily as an antigen receptor on the surface of naive B cells.
- **IgG:** The most abundant antibody in plasma (accounting for roughly 80%); crosses the placenta to provide passive immunity to the fetus.
- **IgE:** Binds to mast cells and basophils, triggering the release of histamine during allergic reactions and parasitic infections.

Mechanisms of Antibody Action

Antibodies do not directly destroy pathogens; instead, they mark them for destruction using several mechanisms [10]:

- **Neutralization:** Antibodies bind to dangerous sites on viral surfaces or bacterial toxins, blocking their ability to bind to tissue cells.
- **Agglutination:** Because antibodies have multiple binding sites, they can cross-link foreign cells into large clumps, making them easier targets for phagocytes.
- **Precipitation:** Soluble molecules are cross-linked into large complexes that settle out of solution, simplifying clearance.

- **Complement Fixation and Activation:** The binding of antibodies to a cellular target exposes complement-binding sites on their constant regions, triggering cell lysis and inflammation [9].

7.8 Cellular Immunity: T Cells and Cell-Mediated Defense

Humoral immunity defends against pathogens in body fluids, but it cannot reach pathogens inside cells. Cellular immunity, managed by T lymphocytes, targets virus-infected cells, intracellular bacteria, parasites, and cancer cells [3].

Antigens and MHC Proteins

T cells cannot recognize free, unattached antigens. They can only detect antigens that are processed and presented on cell surfaces by specialized molecules called Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) proteins [11].

- **Class I MHC Proteins:** Found on virtually all nucleated cells of the body. They present endogenous antigens (proteins made inside the cell). If a cell is infected or cancerous, its Class I MHC displays foreign viral or abnormal proteins, signaling cytotoxic T cells to destroy it [11].
- **Class II MHC Proteins:** Found only on the surfaces of professional Antigen-Presenting Cells (APCs), such as dendritic cells, macrophages, and B cells. They present exogenous antigens (proteins engulfed from outside the cell) to helper T cells to coordinate a wider immune response [11].

T Cell Populations

T cells differentiate based on structural glycoproteins on their surfaces [10]:

- **Helper T Cells ($CD4^+$ Cells):** Act as the managers of the adaptive immune response. When activated by Class II MHC-antigen complexes, they secrete cytokines that activate cloning of B cells and Cytotoxic T cells, recruit innate phagocytes, and amplify the inflammatory response. Without helper T cells, there is no functional adaptive immune response.
- **Cytotoxic T Cells ($CD8^+$ Cells):** The only T cells that directly attack and kill other cells. Activated by Class I MHC-antigen complexes, they track down target cells, bind to them, and release perforins (to punch holes) and granzymes (to trigger apoptosis).
- **Regulatory T Cells:** A subset of T cells that suppress the immune response once an infection has been cleared. They prevent autoimmune destruction by keeping immune system activities in check.

7.9 Immunological Memory and Clinical Applications

The immune system's defining trait is its capacity to "remember" previous infections, leading to long-term resistance.

Primary vs. Secondary Immune Responses

- **Primary Immune Response:** Occurs on the first exposure to a specific antigen. It features a lag phase of several days while naive cells differentiate into plasma cells and effector T cells. Antibody levels peak in about 10 days and then decline.
- **Secondary Immune Response:** Occurs when the body encounters the same antigen again. Because millions of memory cells are already in circulation, the response is almost instantaneous. Within hours, a massive wave of antibodies and effector cells is produced. Antibody levels peak within 2 to 3 days, reach much higher concentrations, and persist in the bloodstream for months or years [10].

Types of Acquired Immunity

Acquired immunity can be organized based on how it is established [10]:

- **Active Immunity:** The individual's own B and T cells respond to an antigen, establishing memory.
- **Natural Active:** Contracted by getting sick and recovering from an infection.
- **Artificial Active:** Established through vaccination, introducing dead or weakened pathogens to prompt an immune response without causing full disease [12].
- **Passive Immunity:** Ready-made antibodies are introduced into the body; no immunological memory is established.
- **Natural Passive:** Passing maternal antibodies to a fetus via the placenta or to an infant through breast milk.
- **Artificial Passive:** Infusing harvested antibodies (e.g., antivenom for snakebites or intravenous immunoglobulin therapy).

7.10 Clinical Correlations and Homeostatic Imbalances

When the lymphatic or immune systems malfunction, severe disorders can develop. The chapter discusses some of the common disorders.

Lymphedema

If lymphatic vessels are damaged, surgically removed, or blocked, fluid balance fails. Interstitial fluid accumulates in the surrounding tissues, causing severe chronic swelling

known as lymphedema. This is common in limbs following cancer surgeries where local lymph nodes were removed [5].

Autoimmune Diseases

An autoimmune disease occurs when the immune system loses its capacity for self-tolerance, causing antibodies and cytotoxic T cells to destroy the body's own healthy tissues [13]. Examples include:

- **Rheumatoid Arthritis:** Systemic destruction of joint tissues.
- **Multiple Sclerosis:** The immune destruction of the myelin sheaths protecting the central nervous system.
- **Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus:** Target destruction of insulin-producing beta cells in the pancreas.

Immunodeficiencies

An immunodeficiency is any congenital or acquired condition causing immune cells, phagocytes, or complement to behave abnormally.

- **Severe Combined Immunodeficiency (SCID):** A genetic defect resulting in a deficit of B and T cells, leaving individuals vulnerable to minor infections.
- **Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS):** Caused by the Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV). HIV selectively targets and destroys helper T ($CD4^+$) cells. Over time, the loss of these critical immune regulators cripples both humoral and cellular immunity, leaving patients vulnerable to opportunistic infections and rare malignancies.

Hypersensitivities (Allergies)

Hypersensitivities occur when the immune system mounts an aggressive, damaging response to a harmless environmental agent (allergen), such as pollen, dander, or peanuts.

- **Immediate Hypersensitivity (Type I):** Mediated by IgE antibodies bound to mast cells. Upon re-exposure, the allergen causes massive, systemic degranulation of histamine. This can lead to anaphylactic shock, an acute systemic allergic reaction causing widespread vasodilation, a drastic drop in blood pressure, and bronchiolar constriction that threatens airway stability [8].

7.11 Summary

The lymphatic system maintains fluid balance by returning excess tissue fluids to the bloodstream and houses vital cells for immunological defense. Lymph nodes, the spleen, and

MALT filter foreign invaders, acting as surveillance checkpoints. Innate defenses provide rapid, broad-spectrum containment using barriers, phagocytes, inflammation, and protective plasma proteins. Adaptive defenses provide target-specific immunity using B cells (humoral immunity, utilizing secreted antibodies) and T cells (cellular immunity, killing infected hosts directly). Immunological memory ensures that secondary exposures to a pathogen are crushed before illness can fully manifest. Deficiencies, hyper-reactivity, or errors in distinguishing self from non-self cause significant clinical pathology, highlighting the precise balance needed to protect the human body.

References

[1] Mudgal, P., & Kulkarni, S. (2022). Structural organization of primary and secondary lymphoid organs. Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, 38(2), 112-125.

[2] Melchers, F. (2019). B cell development and activation. Annual Review of Immunology, 37(1), 21-45.

[3] Kumar, B., & Swain, R. (2021). T lymphocyte maturation pathways and functional differentiation. Cellular & Molecular Immunology, 18(4), 845-859.

[4] Mebius, R. E., & Kraal, G. (2005). Structure and function of the spleen. Nature Reviews Immunology, 5(8), 606-616.

[5] Mortimer, P. S., & Rockson, S. G. (2014). New developments in clinical lymphedema and fluid homeostasis. The Journal of Clinical Investigation, 124(3), 915-921.

[6] Janeway, C. A., & Medzhitov, R. (2002). Innate immune recognition. Annual Review of Immunology, 20(1), 197-216.

[7] Vivier, E., Tomasello, E., Baratin, M., Walzer, T., & Ugolini, S. (2008). Functions of natural killer cells. Nature Immunology, 9(5), 503-510.

[8] Galli, S. J., Tsai, M., & Piliponsky, A. M. (2008). The development of allergic inflammation and immediate hypersensitivity. Nature, 454(7203), 445-454.

[9] Ricklin, D., Hajishengallis, G., Yang, K., & Lambris, J. D. (2010). Complement: a key system for immune surveillance and homeostasis. Nature Immunology, 11(9), 785-797.

[10] Abbas, A. K., Lichtman, A. H., & Pillai, S. (2020). Cellular and Molecular Immunology (10th ed.). Elsevier Health Sciences.

[11] Neefjes, J., Jongsma, M. L., Paul, P., & Bakke, O. (2011). Towards a systems understanding of MHC class I and MHC class II antigen presentation. Nature Reviews Immunology, 11(12), 823-838.

[12] Plotkin, S. A. (2010). Correlates of protection induced by vaccination. Clinical and Vaccine Immunology, 17(7), 1055-1065.

[13] Theofilopoulos, A. N., Kono, D. H., & Baccala, R. (2017). The multiple pathways to autoimmunity. Nature Immunology, 18(7), 716-724.

CONTENT

- Chapter 8 –

The Respiratory System: Anatomy of Breathing

8.1 Introduction and overview……142

8.1.1 Learning objectives

8.1.2 Functional divisions

8.1.3 Breathing and respiration

8.2 Nose and nasal cavity……143

8.2.1 External nose and internal boundaries

8.2.2 Conchae and meatuses

8.3 Paranasal sinuses and pharynx……144

8.3.1 Paranasal sinuses

8.3.2 Nasopharynx

8.3.3 Oropharynx and laryngopharynx

8.3.4 Integrated protective role

8.4 Larynx and the protected airway……145

8.4.1 Cartilaginous framework

8.4.2 Folds and laryngeal cavity

8.4.3 Muscles and nerves

8.5 Trachea and bronchial tree……146

8.5.1 Tracheal position and supporting wall

8.5.2 Right and left main bronchi

8.5.3 Bronchioles and respiratory acini

8.6 Gross anatomy of the lungs……147

8.6.1 Position surfaces and borders

8.6.2 Lobes and fissures

8.6.3 Hilum and root

8.7 Bronchopulmonary segments and surface anatomy……149

8.7.1 Segmental organisation

8.7.2 Surface projections

8.7.3 Interpreting anatomical variation

8.8 Pleura and pleural cavities……150

8.8.1 Visceral and parietal layers

8.8.2 Recesses and sensory supply

8.8.3 Clinical significance

8.9 Microscopic anatomy of the respiratory tract……151

8.9.1 Regional epithelial adaptation

8.9.2 Changes from bronchi to bronchioles

8.9.3 Recognising an airway in a section

8.10 Alveoli and the blood air barrier……152

8.10.1 Alveolar organisation and cell types

8.10.2 Surfactant and structural stability

8.10.3 Alveolar connections

8.11 Diffusion and the pulmonary circulation……...153

8.11.1 Blood air barrier

8.11.2 Pulmonary and bronchial blood supplies

8.11.3 Ventilation and perfusion

8.12 Lymphatics innervation and airway defence…….. 154

8.12.1 Lymphatic drainage

8.12.2 Pulmonary autonomic innervation

8.12.3 Mucociliary clearance and cough

8.12.4 Defence at the alveolar surface

8.13 Thoracic wall diaphragm and breathing……156

8.13.1 Diaphragmatic structure

8.13.2 Pressure changes during ventilation

8.13.3 Increased ventilatory effort

8.14 Development and changes across life…….. 157

8.14.1 Embryological origin

8.14.2 Maturation of gas exchanging tissue

8.14.3 Congenital and neonatal correlations

8.14.4 Childhood and ageing

8.15 Applied anatomy and chapter synthesis……158

8.15.1 Structural basis of common disorders

8.15.2 Examination imaging and laboratory relevance

8.15.3 Chapter summary

8.15.4 Key terms

References.....159

CHAPTER 8

The Respiratory System: Anatomy of Breathing

Mr. Wasim Firoz Molla

Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Barasat Rd, Telinipara, Malir Math, Bara Kanthalia, West Bengal 700121, India

8.1 Introduction and overview

The respiratory system provides a continuous route between the external atmosphere and the delicate gas-exchanging surfaces of the lungs. [1,2] Its anatomy combines a relatively rigid conducting pathway with a branching network of small airways and an enormous number of thin-walled alveoli. [1,3] Breathing depends on this airway network, the elastic lungs, the pleural membranes and the muscles of the thoracic wall acting together. [1,2]

This chapter follows inspired air from the nose to the alveolus, explains the organisation of the lungs and pleura, and relates microscopic structure to the mechanics of breathing. Particular attention is given to anatomical relationships that help students understand clinical examination, imaging and respiratory specimen collection.

8.1.1 Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, the learner should be able to identify the major respiratory organs; distinguish conducting and respiratory zones; describe the lobes, fissures and bronchopulmonary segments; recognise the main respiratory epithelial cell types; explain the anatomical basis of ventilation; and relate common respiratory disorders to the structures involved.

8.1.2 Functional divisions

The conducting zone extends from the nose through the terminal bronchioles and transports, warms, humidifies and cleans inspired air. [1,4] The respiratory zone begins with respiratory bronchioles and includes alveolar ducts, alveolar sacs and alveoli, where the walls are adapted for gas exchange. [4,5] These zones are defined by tissue structure and function rather than by whether an airway lies inside or outside the chest. [4]

The terms upper and lower respiratory tract are useful regional descriptions, but placement of the larynx varies between conventions. [1,6] In this chapter, the upper tract includes the nose, nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses and pharynx; the lower tract includes the larynx, trachea, bronchi and lungs. The conducting–respiratory distinction remains the more precise guide to gas-exchanging function. [4,7]

8.1.3 Breathing and respiration

Pulmonary ventilation means movement of air into and out of the lungs, whereas external respiration describes exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide between alveolar air and pulmonary capillary blood. [7,8] These processes differ from internal respiration at the tissues and from cellular reactions that use oxygen to release energy. [8] Anatomically normal airways alone cannot ensure adequate oxygen delivery if alveolar membranes, pulmonary circulation or blood oxygen-carrying capacity are impaired. [7,8]

8.2 Nose and nasal cavity

8.2.1 External nose and internal boundaries

The external nose is supported by nasal bones, adjacent facial bones and flexible cartilages that maintain the openings of the nostrils. [1,2] Each nostril opens into a vestibule lined initially by skin, where coarse hairs help intercept larger particles. [1,4] Posteriorly, the nasal cavity communicates with the nasopharynx through the choanae. [1]

The nasal septum divides the cavity into right and left passages and includes septal cartilage, the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid and the vomer. [1,2] The hard palate forms most of its floor, while the roof includes the cribriform plate through which olfactory nerve fibres pass. [1,3] This relationship explains why injury near the anterior cranial base can affect smell or create communication with the cranial cavity. [2]

8.2.2 Conchae and meatuses

Three curved conchae project from each lateral wall, with a corresponding meatus beneath each concha. [1] They increase mucosal surface area and influence airflow so that inhaled air makes closer contact with the warm, moist lining. [1,8] A rich vascular supply transfers heat, while secretions humidify the air and retain particles for clearance. [4,8]

Most of the cavity contains ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium with mucus-producing goblet cells; specialised olfactory epithelium occupies a restricted superior region. [4,5] The entire nasal lining should therefore not be described as either olfactory or uniformly respiratory. [4]

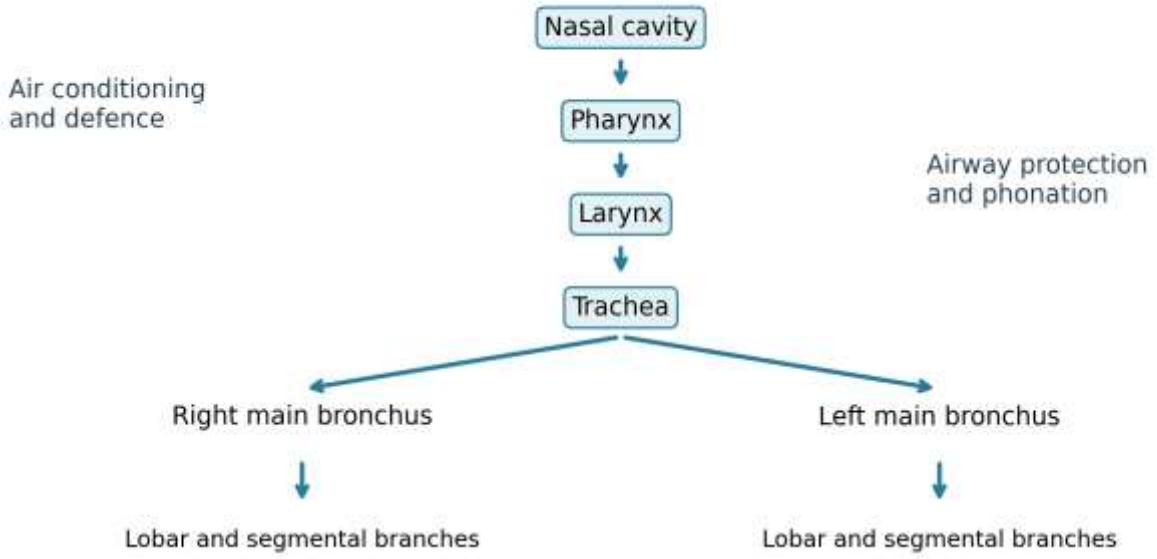


Figure 8.1. Regional route of inspired air and the division into main bronchi. This original schematic omits smaller branches and is not to scale. Anatomical basis: [1,2].

8.3 Paranasal sinuses and pharynx

8.3.1 Paranasal sinuses

The frontal, maxillary, ethmoidal and sphenoidal air spaces communicate with the nasal cavity and are lined by mucosa continuous with the nasal lining. [1,2] They contribute to the resonating properties of the upper airway and reduce the mass of the bones they occupy. [1] Mucociliary transport moves their secretions toward the drainage openings, whose patency matters more than gravity alone. [4]

The frontal sinus, maxillary sinus and anterior or middle ethmoidal air cells drain through pathways associated with the middle meatus; posterior ethmoidal cells open into the superior meatus. [1,3] The sphenoidal sinus drains into the sphenoethmoidal recess, while the nasolacrimal duct opens into the inferior meatus. [1,3] Swelling near these narrow pathways may obstruct drainage and contribute to retained secretions. [2]

8.3.2 Nasopharynx

The nasopharynx lies posterior to the nasal cavity and superior to the soft palate. [1] It provides an air passage and contains the pharyngeal tonsil in its roof and posterior wall, together with the openings of the auditory tubes on its lateral walls. [1,2] The auditory tubes

connect it to the middle ears, explaining the anatomical relationship between upper airway inflammation and middle-ear disease. [2]

8.3.3 Oropharynx and laryngopharynx

The oropharynx lies behind the oral cavity and extends from the soft palate toward the upper border of the epiglottis. [1] Because food and air share this passage, much of its lining is non-keratinised stratified squamous epithelium adapted to friction. [4,5] The palatine tonsils lie between the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal arches. [1,3]

The laryngopharynx lies posterior to the larynx and continues inferiorly into the oesophagus near the lower border of the cricoid cartilage. [1,2] Its anterior communication leads to the laryngeal inlet, while the piriform recesses lie to either side of that inlet. [1] Swallowing requires coordinated movement of the soft palate, pharyngeal walls, hyoid and larynx to direct food away from the airway. [1,8]

8.3.4 Integrated protective role

Protection is distributed across several structures: the nose conditions air, pharyngeal lymphoid tissue participates in immune surveillance, and laryngeal closure reduces entry of swallowed material. [1,4] This arrangement explains why mouth breathing bypasses some nasal conditioning without bypassing the remaining airway defences. [1,8]

8.4 Larynx and the protected airway

8.4.1 Cartilaginous framework

The larynx links the pharynx to the trachea and lies approximately opposite cervical vertebrae C3–C6 in adults, with position changing during swallowing and varying with age. [1,2] Its unpaired cartilages are the thyroid, cricoid and epiglottic cartilages; the arytenoid, corniculate and cuneiform cartilages are paired. [1] The cricoid forms a complete ring, whereas the thyroid consists chiefly of two laminae meeting anteriorly. [1,3]

8.4.2 Folds and laryngeal cavity

Vestibular folds lie above the true vocal folds, with a laryngeal ventricle between them on each side. [1,4] The vocal folds contain vocal ligaments and vocalis muscle, and the opening between them is the rima glottidis. [1] Their vibration during expiration produces sound, which the pharynx, oral cavity and nasal cavity subsequently modify. [8]

8.4.3 Muscles and nerves

The posterior cricoarytenoid muscles are the only abductors of the vocal folds; several other intrinsic muscles bring the folds together or modify their tension. [1,2] Most intrinsic muscles receive motor fibres through the recurrent laryngeal nerve, while the external branch of the

superior laryngeal nerve supplies cricothyroid. [1,2] Sensation above the vocal folds travels mainly through the internal laryngeal branch, and sensation below them through the recurrent laryngeal nerve. [1]

Airway protection during swallowing includes elevation of the larynx, closure of the folds and narrowing of the inlet; epiglottic movement is one component of this coordinated mechanism. [1,8] Consequently, the epiglottis should not be treated as a simple lid acting alone. [1]

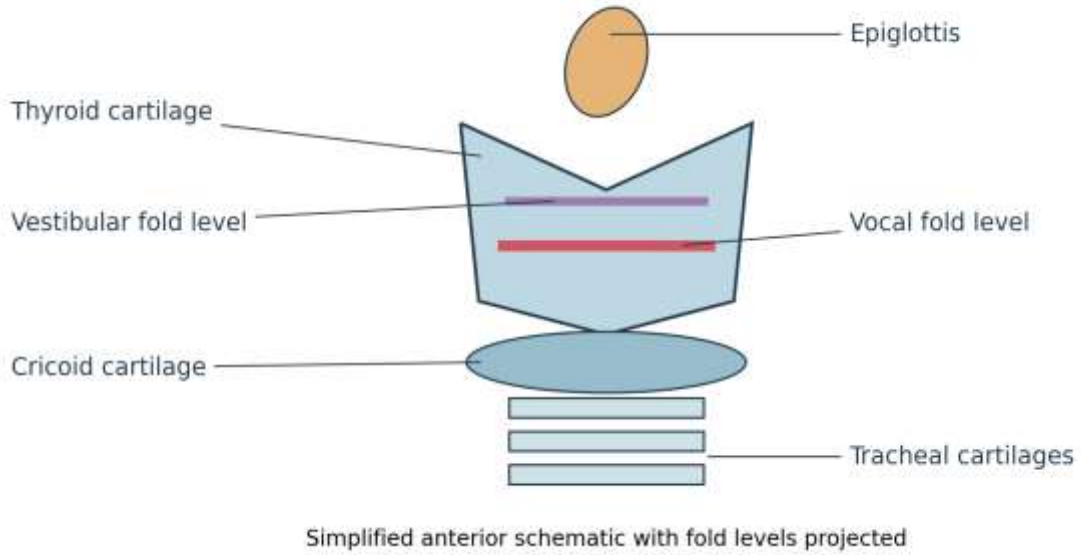


Figure 8.2. Laryngeal framework with the levels of vestibular and vocal folds projected onto an anterior schematic. The cartilages are simplified; this is not a dissection view. Anatomical basis: [1–3].

8.5 Trachea and bronchial tree

8.5.1 Tracheal position and supporting wall

The trachea begins below the cricoid cartilage at approximately C6 and descends through the lower neck into the superior mediastinum. [1,2] It usually bifurcates near the sternal angle and the T4–T5 plane, although this level varies with respiration and body position. [1,6] The ridge between the main bronchial openings is the carina, an important landmark during bronchoscopy. [1,2]

About 16–20 C-shaped hyaline cartilage rings support the adult trachea and help prevent collapse during pressure changes. [1,4] Their posterior gaps face the oesophagus and are bridged by a membranous wall containing the trachealis muscle. [1,4] This arrangement allows some deformation during swallowing and alteration of airway diameter during coughing. [4,8]

The tracheal mucosa contains ciliated cells and goblet cells, while submucosal seromucous glands contribute to the protective secretion layer. [4,5] Cilia move trapped material toward the pharynx, where it can be swallowed or expelled. [4] Cartilage and glands are structural features of the larger conducting airways and disappear before the smallest bronchioles are reached. [4,5]

8.5.2 Right and left main bronchi

The right main bronchus is generally wider, shorter and more vertical than the left, making the right bronchial tree a common destination for aspirated material in adults. [1,2] The actual site of aspiration also depends on posture and the circumstances of inhalation. [2] The left main bronchus follows a more oblique course beneath the aortic arch before entering the lung root. [1,3]

Main bronchi divide into lobar bronchi, normally three on the right and two on the left, corresponding to the lung lobes. [1] Lobar branches divide into segmental bronchi, which supply bronchopulmonary segments, and subsequently into smaller bronchi and bronchioles. [1,6]

8.5.3 Bronchioles and respiratory acini

Bronchioles lack cartilage plates and submucosal glands, and their walls contain proportionately prominent smooth muscle. [4,5] A terminal bronchiole is the final purely conducting airway, whereas a respiratory bronchiole has alveoli interrupting portions of its wall. [4] The lung tissue supplied beyond one terminal bronchiole constitutes a pulmonary acinus, the structural territory in which gas exchange occurs. [6,7]

An acinus is smaller than a bronchopulmonary segment and should not be confused with the secondary pulmonary lobule, which contains several acini and is bounded by connective tissue septa. [6] These different levels of organisation connect gross anatomy, microscopy and thoracic imaging. [6]

8.6 Gross anatomy of the lungs

8.6.1 Position surfaces and borders

The lungs occupy the right and left pleural compartments on either side of the mediastinum. [1,2] Each lung has an apex projecting into the root of the neck, a concave base resting on the diaphragm, a convex costal surface and a mediastinal surface facing the central thoracic structures. [1,3] The right lung is usually broader and shorter, partly because the liver elevates the right diaphragmatic dome. [1]

The anterior, posterior and inferior borders mark transitions between these surfaces. [1] The anterior border of the left lung contains a cardiac notch; the tongue-like lingula belongs to its superior lobe and is not a separate lobe. [1,2]

8.6.2 Lobes and fissures

An oblique fissure divides the left lung into superior and inferior lobes. [1] The right lung has both oblique and horizontal fissures, separating superior, middle and inferior lobes. [1,3] Fissures are clefts lined by visceral pleura, but their completeness and exact course vary between individuals. [6]

8.6.3 Hilum and root

The hilum is the area on the mediastinal surface through which the root structures enter and leave; the root is the actual bundle of bronchi, vessels, lymphatics and nerves. [1,2] A pleural sleeve surrounds this bundle and extends below it as the pulmonary ligament. [1] The phrenic nerve passes anterior to the root and the vagus nerve passes posterior to it. [1,3]

At the hilum, the right pulmonary artery lies anterior to the main bronchus, while the left pulmonary artery lies superior to the main bronchus. [1,2] This side-to-side difference is useful when identifying the roots in anatomical specimens. [1]

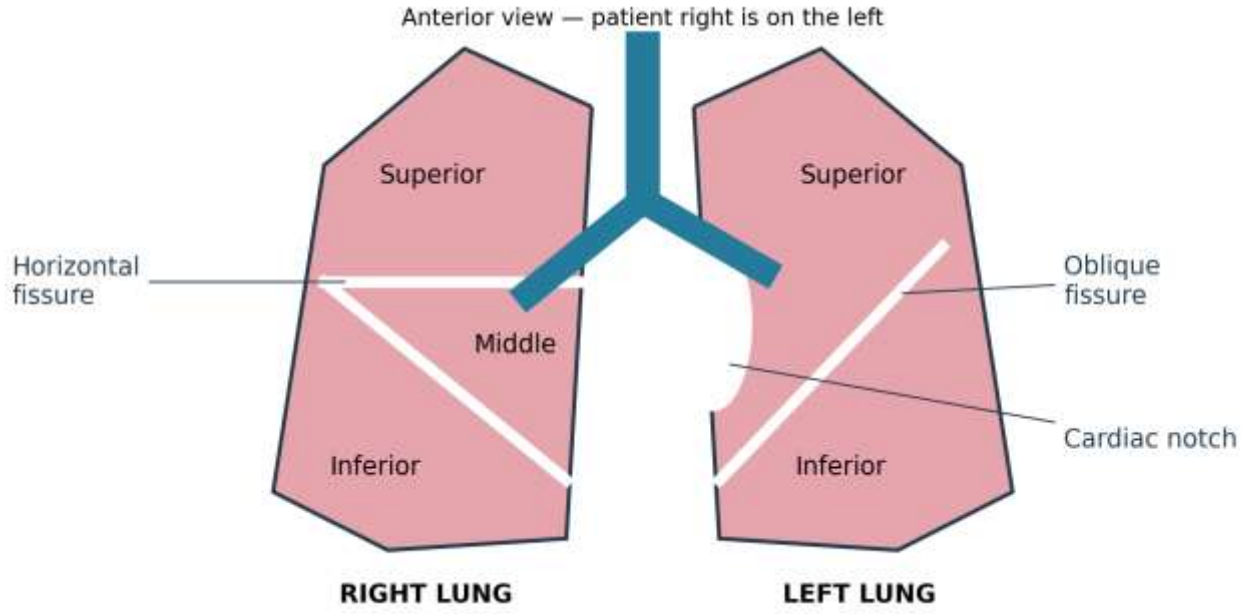


Figure 8.3. Lung lobes and major fissures in a simplified anterior view. Patient right appears on the left of the figure. Fissure positions are illustrative and vary anatomically. Basis: [1–3].

8.7 Bronchopulmonary segments and surface anatomy

8.7.1 Segmental organisation

A bronchopulmonary segment is a roughly pyramidal region supplied by a segmental bronchus and a corresponding branch of the pulmonary artery. [1,2] Its apex points toward the lung root, while its base approaches the pleural surface. [1] Pulmonary veins commonly follow intersegmental planes rather than travelling centrally with the segmental bronchi. [1,6]

The right lung usually has ten recognised segments. [1,2] The left is often described as eight to ten because apical and posterior territories, and sometimes anterior and medial basal territories, may be grouped differently. [1,6] Therefore, segment counts must be interpreted together with the naming system used. [6]

Table 8.1. Common segmental grouping of the lungs. Left-sided combinations vary. [1,2,6]

Lobe	Right lung	Left lung
Superior	Apical, posterior, anterior	Apicoposterior, anterior; superior and inferior lingular
Middle	Lateral, medial	No separate middle lobe
Inferior	Superior; medial, anterior, lateral and posterior basal	Superior; anteromedial basal (often combined), lateral basal, posterior basal

This organisation supports segmental localisation of disease and provides a basis for anatomical segmentectomy when clinically appropriate. [2,6] Segment boundaries are not visible as external fissures in the way that lobar boundaries may be, and anatomical variation must be established from imaging and operative assessment. [6]

8.7.2 Surface projections

During quiet respiration, the inferior lung border is commonly projected near the sixth rib in the midclavicular line, eighth rib in the midaxillary line and tenth rib posteriorly. [1,2] The parietal pleural reflection usually extends approximately two ribs lower at the corresponding reference lines. [1,2] These are teaching landmarks rather than fixed coordinates for every person, breath or procedure. [2]

The lung apices extend above the medial clavicles, while much of the lower lobes lies posteriorly. [1,3] Consequently, examining only the anterior chest provides an incomplete assessment of lung regions. [2] The middle lobe and lingula are better represented on the anterolateral chest than on the upper posterior chest. [1,2]

8.7.3 Interpreting anatomical variation

Accessory fissures, incomplete fissures and variable bronchial branching can alter the apparent arrangement of the lungs. [6] A normal variant must be distinguished from destruction, collapse or displacement caused by disease. [6] Cross-sectional imaging is valuable because it shows the bronchial and vascular pattern that surface inspection cannot establish. [2,6]

8.8 Pleura and pleural cavities

8.8.1 Visceral and parietal layers

Visceral pleura closely covers the lung and enters its fissures, while parietal pleura lines the thoracic wall, diaphragm and lateral mediastinum. [1,2] The layers become continuous around the lung root and enclose a potential space containing a thin lubricating fluid film. [1] This fluid permits low-friction movement while helping mechanically couple the lung surface to the moving thoracic wall. [7,8]

8.8.2 Recesses and sensory supply

The costodiaphragmatic recess is a dependent reserve space between costal and diaphragmatic pleura, into which the lung expands during deeper inspiration. [1,2] Costomediastinal recesses occur anteriorly where the costal and mediastinal pleura meet, with a larger recess commonly present on the left near the cardiac notch. [1]

Costal pleura and peripheral diaphragmatic pleura receive sensory fibres from intercostal nerves, producing relatively localised pain. [1,2] Mediastinal pleura and central diaphragmatic pleura are supplied by the phrenic nerve, so irritation may be perceived at the shoulder through shared cervical spinal segments. [2] Visceral pleura is relatively insensitive to ordinary pain. [1,2]

8.8.3 Clinical significance

Air in the pleural cavity can reduce the normal pressure difference that keeps the lung expanded, producing pneumothorax. [7] Fluid accumulation constitutes a pleural effusion and may compress the adjacent lung. [2,7] Clinical procedures require assessment of the individual patient and imaging guidance where indicated; surface projections alone do not establish a safe access site. [2]

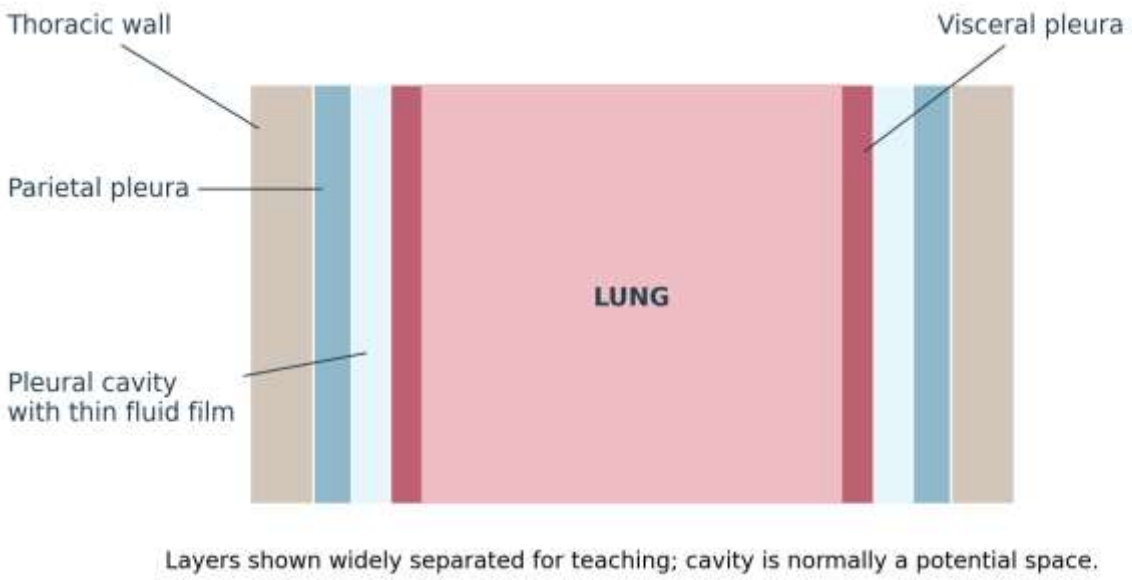


Figure 8.4. Relationship of thoracic wall, parietal pleura, pleural cavity and visceral pleura. Layer spacing is greatly exaggerated; the normal cavity contains only a thin fluid film. Original schematic based on [1,2,7].

8.9 Microscopic anatomy of the respiratory tract

8.9.1 Regional epithelial adaptation

Respiratory epithelium is a functional description of the ciliated pseudostratified columnar lining found in much of the conducting tract. [4,5] Not every airway surface has this lining: the vestibule begins with skin, while regions exposed to friction, including the true vocal folds, possess stratified squamous epithelium. [4,5] Microscopic identification must therefore combine epithelial appearance with anatomical location. [4]

Ciliated cells move the surface secretion layer, goblet cells release mucins and basal cells provide a population involved in epithelial renewal. [4,5] The lamina propria contains vessels, connective tissue and immune cells; larger airways also possess submucosal glands. [4] The mucosal system intercepts particles before they reach the thin gas-exchanging tissue. [4]

8.9.2 Changes from bronchi to bronchioles

Within the lung, bronchi retain irregular cartilage plates and glands, while a surrounding smooth-muscle layer regulates lumen calibre. [4,5] As branching continues, the epithelium becomes lower and the amount of cartilage decreases until cartilage and glands are absent in bronchioles. [4] Club cells become prominent in smaller airways and contribute secretory, protective and progenitor functions. [4,5]

Smooth muscle is important in bronchioles because contraction, mucosal swelling and retained secretions can substantially reduce the lumen. [7] In asthma, these mechanisms contribute to airflow limitation; the normal anatomical organisation explains why small changes in airway calibre can be functionally significant. [7,8]

Table 8.2. Structural differences along the airway. [4,5]

Region	Supporting wall	Characteristic lining
Trachea	C-shaped cartilage; glands	Ciliated pseudostratified epithelium
Intrapulmonary bronchus	Cartilage plates; glands	Ciliated epithelium with goblet cells
Terminal bronchiole	No cartilage or glands	Low ciliated cells and club cells
Alveolus	Thin septum with capillaries	Type I and type II pneumocytes

8.9.3 Recognising an airway in a section

Cartilage and glands favour identification as a bronchus rather than a bronchiole. [4,5] An airway whose wall is interrupted by alveolar openings is part of the respiratory zone, whereas a terminal bronchiole retains a continuous epithelial wall. [4] Oblique sectioning, folding and specimen shrinkage can change apparent lumen size, so diameter alone is an unreliable criterion. [4]

The alveolar septum contains capillaries and supporting connective tissue between neighbouring air spaces. [4,5] A healthy lung section therefore shows a delicate network rather than uniformly thick partitions; apparent thickening must be assessed with attention to inflation, fixation and disease. [4]

8.10 Alveoli and the blood air barrier

8.10.1 Alveolar organisation and cell types

Alveoli are small air spaces that open from respiratory bronchioles, alveolar ducts and alveolar sacs. [4,5] Their thin septa contain capillaries, elastic fibres, collagen and resident cells that support the gas-exchanging surface. [4] Type I pneumocytes are flattened epithelial cells covering most of that surface, despite not being the most numerous epithelial cell population. [4,5]

Type II pneumocytes are more cuboidal and contain lamellar bodies associated with surfactant production. [4,5] They also contribute to renewal of the alveolar epithelium after injury. [4] Alveolar macrophages remove inhaled particles and cellular debris from locations beyond the main mucociliary escalator. [4,5]

8.10.2 Surfactant and structural stability

Surfactant reduces surface tension at the air–liquid interface and helps stabilise alveoli while reducing the work required to inflate the lung. [7,8] It acts with connective-tissue support and mechanical interdependence between neighbouring air spaces; alveoli should not be understood as isolated soap bubbles. [7] Loss of surfactant activity can therefore impair ventilation even when the large conducting airways remain open. [7,8]

8.10.3 Alveolar connections

Small interalveolar pores can provide communication between adjacent alveoli. [4,6] Such pathways may assist collateral ventilation, but they can also permit movement of fluid or inflammatory material between neighbouring air spaces. [4] Their function must be interpreted within the larger organisation of acini and lobules. [6]

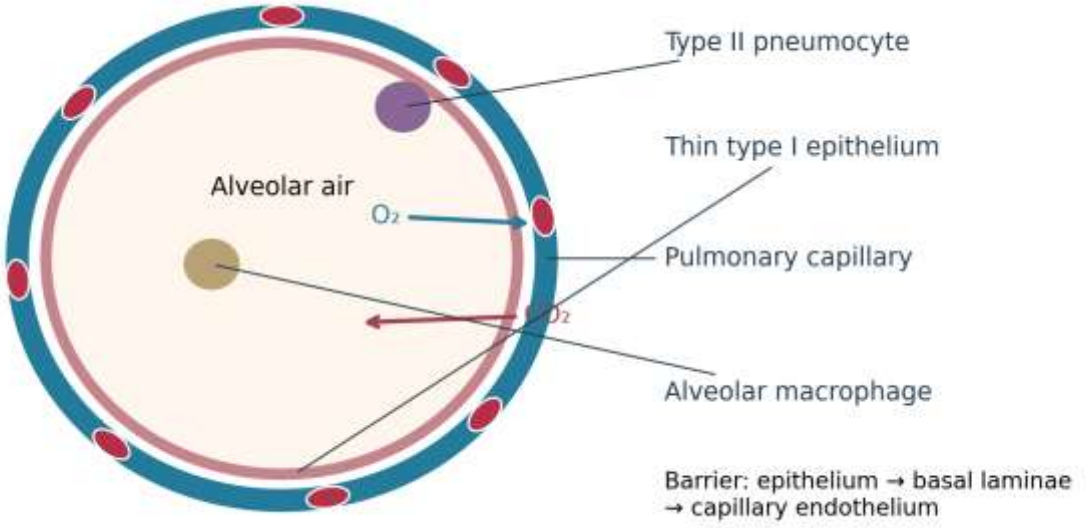


Figure 8.5. Enlarged alveolar schematic showing epithelial cells, macrophage, capillary and directions of gas movement. Cell sizes and capillary arrangement are simplified for clarity. Original artwork based on [4,5,7].

8.11 Diffusion and the pulmonary circulation

8.11.1 Blood air barrier

At thin gas-exchanging regions, oxygen crosses the surface lining, type I alveolar epithelial cytoplasm, closely associated basal laminae and capillary endothelium before reaching the blood. [4,5] Carbon dioxide moves in the opposite direction along its partial-pressure gradient. [7,8] The very short diffusion distance and extensive surface area favour rapid exchange, whereas thickening, fluid accumulation or destruction of septa can impair it. [7]

8.11.2 Pulmonary and bronchial blood supplies

The pulmonary arteries carry relatively deoxygenated blood from the right ventricle toward alveolar capillaries; pulmonary veins return oxygenated blood to the left atrium. [1,8] This low-pressure circulation is distinct from the systemic bronchial circulation that supports the larger airway walls and other lung tissues. [1,7] Bronchial arteries usually arise from the thoracic aorta or its branches, with variable arrangements. [1,6]

Some bronchial venous blood drains into the azygos system, while some joins pulmonary venous blood. [1,6] The latter contributes to normal venous admixture, so systemic arterial oxygen tension is not simply identical to ideal alveolar oxygen tension. [7,8]

8.11.3 Ventilation and perfusion

Gas exchange requires matching alveolar ventilation with capillary perfusion. [7] An obstructed airway may leave perfused tissue poorly ventilated, whereas a blocked pulmonary artery may leave ventilated tissue poorly perfused. [7] These examples show why anatomical assessment must consider airways and vessels together. [7]

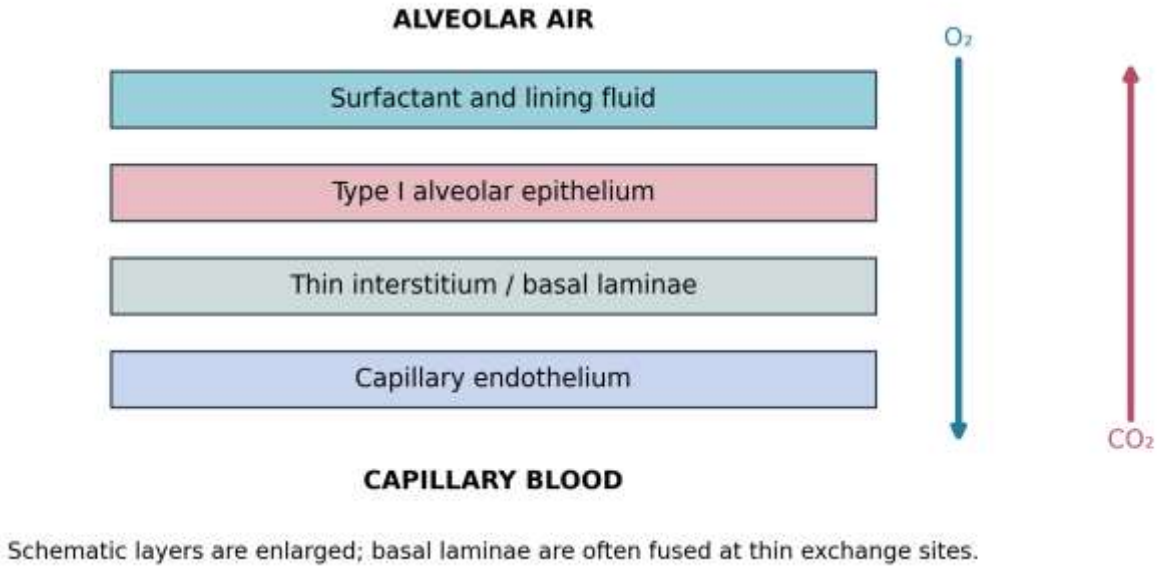


Figure 8.6. Components of the blood–air barrier and opposite directions of oxygen and carbon dioxide diffusion. Layers are enlarged and displayed separately; basal laminae commonly fuse at thin exchange regions. Basis: [4,5,7].

8.12 Lymphatics innervation and airway defence

8.12.1 Lymphatic drainage

Superficial lymphatic vessels lie beneath the visceral pleura, while deep lymphatic channels accompany bronchi and pulmonary vessels. [1,6] They drain toward pulmonary and

bronchopulmonary nodes and then toward tracheobronchial and paratracheal groups. [1,2] The drainage pathways ultimately connect with bronchomediastinal lymphatic trunks. [1]

These connections help explain the distribution of enlarged nodes during infection and the patterns by which malignant cells can spread from the lung. [2,6] Drainage is not always confined to the same side: some lower-lobe pathways, particularly from the left, may cross toward right-sided tracheobronchial nodes. [1,6] A simple one-lung–one-node-chain model is therefore incomplete. [6]

8.12.2 Pulmonary autonomic innervation

Autonomic fibres reach the lungs through anterior and posterior pulmonary plexuses around the roots. [1] Parasympathetic fibres carried by the vagus promote bronchoconstriction and glandular secretion, while adrenergic effects favour smooth-muscle relaxation through beta-2 receptors. [1,7] In humans, circulating catecholamines are particularly important for this bronchodilator effect, and a dense direct sympathetic motor supply to airway smooth muscle should not be assumed. [7]

Visceral afferent fibres participate in reflex responses to stretch, irritants and other mechanical or chemical stimuli. [7,8] These pathways influence cough and breathing pattern, linking airway anatomy to protective behaviour. [8]

8.12.3 Mucociliary clearance and cough

The mucus layer traps particles, and coordinated ciliary movement carries them toward the pharynx. [4] Adequate hydration and intact cilia are essential to this clearance mechanism; epithelial injury can allow secretions to accumulate. [4,8] Cough supplements clearance by producing rapid expiratory airflow after coordinated inspiration, glottic closure and contraction of expiratory muscles. [8]

8.12.4 Defence at the alveolar surface

Because the distal gas-exchanging surface lacks the continuous ciliated lining of conducting airways, alveolar macrophages and local immune mechanisms have an important protective role. [4,5] Defence must limit infection while preserving a very thin barrier, so extensive inflammation may itself interfere with exchange. [4,7] Respiratory anatomy thus embodies a functional compromise between environmental exposure, effective defence and minimal diffusion distance. [4,7]

8.13 Thoracic wall diaphragm and breathing

8.13.1 Diaphragmatic structure

The diaphragm separates thoracic and abdominal cavities and is the principal muscle of quiet inspiration. [1,8] Its sternal, costal and lumbar muscular parts converge toward a central tendon, and its right dome usually lies higher than its left. [1,3] The phrenic nerves, arising chiefly from spinal segments C3–C5, provide motor innervation. [1,2]

Contraction lowers the domes and enlarges the vertical dimension of the thorax. [1,8] External intercostals and other inspiratory muscle components elevate the ribs, increasing anteroposterior and transverse dimensions through movements conventionally described as pump-handle and bucket-handle actions. [1,8]

8.13.2 Pressure changes during ventilation

During spontaneous inspiration, expansion makes intrapleural pressure more negative and increases the distending pressure across the lung. [7,8] Alveolar pressure falls briefly below atmospheric pressure, drawing air inward; at the end of inspiration, airflow stops as the pressures equalise. [7] Quiet expiration is mainly passive, resulting from relaxation of inspiratory muscles and elastic recoil. [7,8]

8.13.3 Increased ventilatory effort

During increased demand, accessory inspiratory muscles can assist thoracic expansion when their attachments are stabilised. [1,8] Forced expiration recruits abdominal muscles and expiratory portions of the intercostal musculature to reduce thoracic volume more actively. [8] Stiff lungs, narrowed airways or impaired muscle function increase the effort needed for ventilation through different anatomical mechanisms. [7,8]

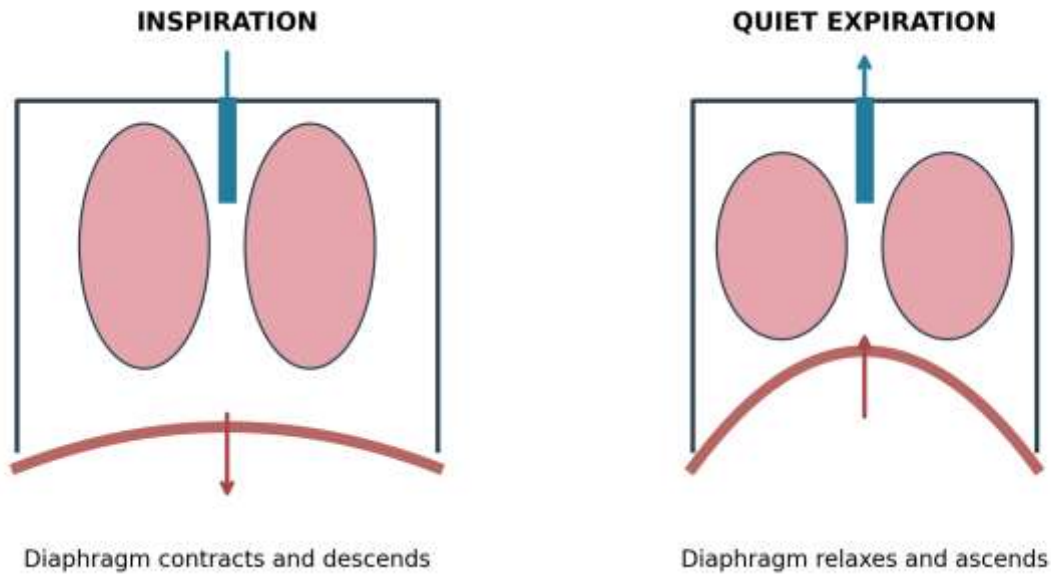


Figure 8.7. Simplified comparison of inspiration and quiet expiration. Blue arrows indicate airflow and red arrows indicate diaphragmatic movement. The thoracic outline and lung shapes are schematic. Basis: [1,7,8].

8.14 Development and changes across life

8.14.1 Embryological origin

The lower respiratory tract begins as an outgrowth from the ventral foregut during the fourth embryonic week. [9,10] Endoderm contributes the epithelial lining and glands, while surrounding splanchnic mesoderm contributes connective tissue, smooth muscle, cartilage and vascular components. [9,10] Separation of the developing airway from the oesophagus is therefore central to establishing independent respiratory and digestive passages. [9]

The lung bud divides into right and left primary bronchial buds and subsequently into lobar and segmental branches. [9,10] The early branching pattern provides the foundation for the adult lobes and bronchopulmonary segments. [9] Development of the visceral and parietal pleura reflects their different relationships to the embryonic lung and body wall. [9,10]

8.14.2 Maturation of gas exchanging tissue

The pseudoglandular stage establishes much of the conducting tree, but the lung is not yet structurally ready for effective gas exchange. [9,10] Canalicular and saccular development bring distal air spaces and capillaries into closer association, while epithelial differentiation and surfactant production progress. [9,10] These developmental stages overlap, so their timing is better understood as a range than as a single sharp boundary. [9]

Alveolar formation and enlargement continue after birth, and lung maturation is not complete merely because the newborn begins to breathe. [9,10] At birth, clearance of fetal lung fluid,

establishment of aeration and changes in pulmonary blood flow allow the lungs to assume their gas-exchanging role. [8–10]

8.14.3 Congenital and neonatal correlations

Abnormal separation of the foregut may produce tracheo-oesophageal fistula, often associated with oesophageal atresia. [9,10] A congenital diaphragmatic hernia can allow abdominal viscera into the thorax and impair lung development, producing pulmonary hypoplasia. [9,10] In premature infants, insufficient surfactant and structural immaturity contribute to neonatal respiratory distress. [8–10]

8.14.4 Childhood and ageing

Children have smaller airway diameters, so a similar absolute amount of swelling can produce proportionately greater obstruction than in a larger adult airway. [2,7] Ageing commonly reduces chest-wall flexibility and alters elastic properties, respiratory muscle performance and reserve. [7,8] These changes affect breathing mechanics but should not be equated automatically with a particular lung disease. [7]

8.15 Applied anatomy and chapter synthesis

8.15.1 Structural basis of common disorders

Asthma principally affects conducting airways through variable narrowing, inflammation and secretion, while emphysema involves destruction of alveolar walls and loss of elastic recoil. [7,8] In pulmonary fibrosis, thickened interstitial tissue and reduced compliance impair expansion and gas transfer. [7] These disorders can all cause breathlessness through different structural abnormalities. [7]

Pneumonia fills affected distal air spaces with inflammatory material, reducing effective ventilation of those regions. [7,8] Pulmonary embolism primarily interrupts perfusion, while pneumothorax primarily disrupts the mechanical relationship between lung and chest wall. [2,7] Distinguishing these anatomical targets helps explain why similar symptoms require different investigations. [7]

8.15.2 Examination imaging and laboratory relevance

Auscultation, percussion and chest imaging locate abnormalities by relating findings to lobes, pleura and neighbouring organs. [2] Spirometry evaluates airflow and ventilatory patterns, but ordinary spirometry does not directly measure residual volume or provide a complete anatomical diagnosis. [7] Blood gas analysis evaluates gas exchange and acid–base status, whereas pulse oximetry estimates oxygen saturation and does not directly measure ventilation or carbon dioxide tension. [7,8]

Respiratory specimens must also be interpreted in anatomical context: saliva reflects oral material, whereas expectorated sputum may contain lower-airway secretions mixed with material acquired during passage through the mouth. [4,5] The presence of squamous epithelial cells can indicate oral contribution; alveolar macrophages reflect distal respiratory material but do not by themselves establish a specific disease. [4,5] Interpretation therefore requires specimen quality, clinical information and the purpose of the investigation. [4,5]

8.15.3 Chapter summary

The conducting tract prepares and transports air; the respiratory zone provides a thin, extensive interface with the pulmonary circulation. [1,4] Lobes, segments and acini describe progressively smaller structural territories, while pleura and respiratory muscles enable lung expansion. [1,7] Successful respiration requires ventilation, diffusion and perfusion to work together, supported by airway protection and epithelial defence. [7,8,11]

8.15.4 Key terms

Acinus: gas-exchanging territory distal to a terminal bronchiole. [6] Carina: ridge at the tracheal bifurcation. [1] Hilum: entry and exit area for root structures. [1] Compliance: change in volume per unit change in distending pressure. [7] Surfactant: surface-active material that reduces alveolar surface tension. [7] Pleural recess: potential reserve space where parietal pleural surfaces oppose one another. [1]

References

1. Drake RL, Vogl AW, Mitchell AWM. Gray's Anatomy for Students. 5th ed. Elsevier; 2023.
2. Dalley AF II, Agur AMR. Moore's Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 9th ed. Wolters Kluwer; 2023.
3. Netter FH. Netter Atlas of Human Anatomy: Classic Regional Approach. 8th ed. Elsevier; 2022.
4. Pawlina W, Ross MH. Histology: A Text and Atlas With Correlated Cell and Molecular Biology. 8th ed. Wolters Kluwer; 2020.
5. Mescher AL. Junqueira's Basic Histology: Text and Atlas. 17th ed. McGraw Hill; 2024.
6. Standring S, ed. Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice. 42nd ed. Elsevier; 2021.
7. West JB, Luks AM. West's Respiratory Physiology: The Essentials. 11th ed. Wolters Kluwer; 2021.

8. Hall JE, Hall ME. Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology. 14th ed. Elsevier; 2021.
9. Sadler TW. Langman's Medical Embryology. 14th ed. Wolters Kluwer; 2019.
10. Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology. 11th ed. Elsevier; 2020.
11. Betts JG, Young KA, Wise JA, et al. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax; 2022. Chapter 22, The Respiratory System. Accessed September 17, 2026. https://openstax.org/books/anatomy-and-physiology-2e/pages/22-introduction

SVU

CONTENT

- Chapter 9 -

The Digestive System: From Mouth to Intestine

9.1. Introduction……162

9.2. Developmental organization and adult topology……163

9.3. The common wall plan……...164

9.4. Oral cavity and its boundaries……..165

9.5. Teeth, tongue and salivary glands……167

9.6. Pharynx and the swallowing junction……168

9.7. Esophagus and gastroesophageal junction……168

9.8. Stomach anatomy……..169

9.9. Peritoneum mesentery and abdominal spaces……...171

9.10. Duodenum……....172

9.11. Jejunum, ileum and the mesenteric root……173

9.12. Intestinal mucosa and the absorptive unit……...174

9.13. Cecum, appendix and colon……..176

9.14. Rectum, anal canal and continence anatomy……..177

9.15. Accessory organs at the duodenal interface……178

9.16. Arteries, veins and lymphatic routes……180

9.17. Enteric and autonomic innervation……..181

9.18. Mucosal defense and limited physiological integration……..182

9.19. Summary……..183

References……....183

Chapter 9

The Digestive System: From Mouth to Intestine

Manojit Bysack

Department of Medical Laboratory Technology, School of Allied Health Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Telinipara, Barasat-Barrackpore Rd, Bara Kanthalia, West Bengal-700121, India

Overview:

The digestive system is a continuous anatomical pathway whose regional specializations permit ingestion, transport, digestion, absorption, and controlled elimination. Its organization becomes clearer when organs are examined through three connected perspectives: the route followed by luminal contents, the tissue layers that construct the wall, and the mesenteric and neurovascular attachments that connect the tract to the body. This chapter develops that approach from the oral cavity to the large intestine, with the rectum and anal canal included as the terminal continuation. Gross anatomy and microscopic structure receive priority; physiology is introduced where it explains a structural arrangement. Particular attention is given to spaces, sphincters, epithelial transitions, arterial territories, lymphatic drainage, and anatomical variation. Classical anatomical descriptions are considered alongside morphometry, developmental studies, surgical observations, and human cell atlases. The resulting interpretation is that digestive anatomy is neither a fixed catalogue of organs nor a collection of molecular cell types: it is a spatially organized, adaptable system whose clinical meaning depends on the preservation of relationships across scales.

9.1. Introduction:

9.1.1. The digestive tract as a continuous structure:

The alimentary canal extends from the oral opening through the pharynx, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, and large intestine to the anus. Teeth, tongue, and major salivary glands support the oral phase; the liver, gallbladder, and pancreas deliver secretions into the duodenum. Food does not normally pass through these accessory glands. The lumen remains continuous with the external environment, whereas absorption requires passage across an epithelial boundary into the internal vascular or lymphatic compartments. This distinction

explains why luminal microorganisms are not equivalent to tissue infection and why a disrupted mucosa can have consequences beyond the intestinal wall (1-3) (7).

9.1.2. A critical framework for learning anatomy:

Three questions organize each regional examination: what forms the lumen and its boundaries, what structures lie beside it, and where do its vessels, nerves, and lymphatics travel? An organ name alone answers none of these questions. The position of a duodenal ulcer, for example, determines whether adjacent vessels or the peritoneal cavity are threatened. Likewise, a normal mucosal appearance does not establish that the muscular wall or mesentery is normal. Gross inspection, histology, imaging, and physiological measurements therefore provide complementary observations rather than interchangeable descriptions (1-4). Anatomical dimensions should be interpreted as approximate values influenced by age, body habitus, distension, muscle tone, fixation, and measurement technique. Intestinal length and surface-area estimates are particularly sensitive to these conditions. A morphometric reassessment estimated the total gastrointestinal mucosal surface at approximately 32 m^2, challenging much larger traditional teaching figures; this is a model-dependent estimate rather than a universal individual measurement (8).

9.2. Developmental organization and adult topology:

9.2.1. Germ layers and regional identity:

Most gastrointestinal epithelium and glandular parenchyma develop from endoderm. Surrounding connective tissue, smooth muscle, and visceral peritoneum arise mainly from splanchnic mesoderm, while neural crest cells contribute the enteric nervous system. Oral and terminal anal epithelial territories include ectodermal contributions. These developmental distinctions help explain why epithelial, mesenchymal, and neural abnormalities can affect the same organ differently. The three primary embryonic gut territories also establish an enduring framework for arterial supply: foregut with the celiac trunk, midgut with the superior mesenteric artery, and hindgut with the inferior mesenteric artery (1, 5).

9.2.2. Rotation and fixation:

The stomach changes orientation during development, and differential growth establishes its curvatures and associated peritoneal spaces. The midgut elongates, temporarily herniates, and returns to the abdominal cavity around the superior mesenteric vascular axis. The conventional description of approximately 270 degrees of counterclockwise rotation, viewed

anteriorly, is a useful summary of the final arrangement. However, developmental reconstruction shows that actual intestinal positioning involves regional growth and movement that are more complex than a rigid loop rotating as one object (5, 9). Experimental work on gut looping demonstrates that differential growth between intestine and attached mesentery can generate predictable loops. Its direct experimental basis is chiefly nonhuman and does not establish every detail of human embryogenesis. Together with human reconstruction, it supports teaching shape as the outcome of tissue growth under mechanical constraints. Malrotation matters because an abnormal mesenteric attachment can permit volvulus and compromise the vessels supplying an extensive bowel territory (9, 10).

9.2.3. Development persists in tissue architecture:

Human developmental single-cell studies identify changing epithelial, mesenchymal, immune, and neural populations across gestational stages and intestinal regions. They refine the concept of maturation but do not make fetal anatomy a miniature version of adult anatomy. Age and sampling position are essential when interpreting developmental cell identities, particularly when proposed links to childhood inflammatory disease are based on transcriptional similarity rather than demonstrated causal pathways (11-13).

9.3. The common wall plan:

9.3.1. Mucosa and submucosa:

From lumen outward, the typical digestive wall comprises mucosa, submucosa, muscularis externa, and an external serosal or adventitial covering. The mucosa contains epithelium, lamina propria, and muscularis mucosae. Its epithelial phenotype varies with regional demands: stratified squamous protection in the esophagus contrasts with simple columnar secretory and absorptive surfaces in the stomach and intestine. The lamina propria contains capillaries, immune cells, connective tissue, and regionally lymphatic channels. The muscularis mucosae produces local mucosal movement and should not be confused with the main propulsive muscle layers (3, 4, 7). The submucosa provides a supportive connective-tissue plane containing larger blood vessels, lymphatics, and submucosal neural elements. It also houses regionally distinctive glands, including esophageal glands and duodenal Brunner glands. A superficial biopsy usually samples mucosa and may include muscularis mucosae, but it cannot reliably characterize structures located deeper in the wall. This sampling boundary is fundamental when relating a biopsy report to an imaging abnormality or suspected neuromuscular disease (1, 3).

9.3.2. Muscularis externa and external coverings:

The usual arrangement is an inner circular and outer longitudinal muscular layer, with the myenteric plexus between them. Important modifications include an additional oblique component in the stomach and concentration of much of the colonic longitudinal muscle into taeniae coli. The proximal esophagus contains skeletal muscle, with a transition through mixed muscle to predominantly smooth muscle distally. These arrangements should be learned as regional modifications of a common plan rather than separate unrelated facts (1-3). Serosa consists of connective tissue covered by mesothelium and is continuous with visceral peritoneum. Adventitia anchors a surface to surrounding structures without a mesothelial covering. Different surfaces of one organ may have different coverings; consequently, describing an entire organ as uniformly serosal can obscure routes of local disease extension. The thoracic esophagus illustrates the importance of adventitial relations, while the rectum demonstrates progressive loss of peritoneal covering inferiorly (1, 2)

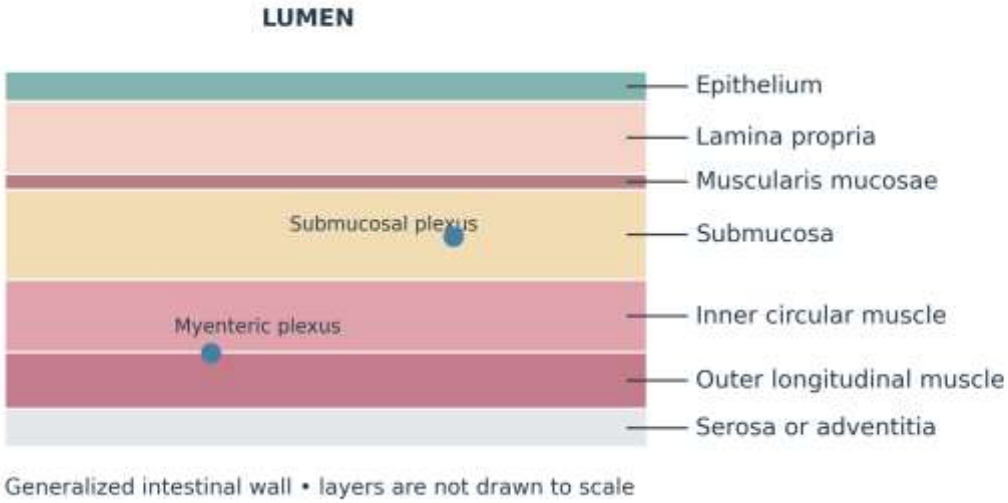


Figure 1: General organization of the digestive wall. The mucosa comprises epithelium, lamina propria, and muscularis mucosae. Larger vessels and submucosal plexuses lie deeper; the myenteric plexus lies between the major muscle layers. Original schematic based on anatomical descriptions (1-3)

9.4. Oral cavity and its boundaries:

9.4.1. Vestibule and oral cavity proper:

The oral vestibule lies between lips and cheeks externally and teeth and gingiva internally. The oral cavity proper lies within the dental arches and communicates posteriorly with the

oropharynx through the oropharyngeal isthmus. The hard palate forms the anterior roof, while the soft palate forms its mobile posterior continuation. The floor is supported principally by the mylohyoid muscles and accommodates the tongue, sublingual glands, ducts, and related neurovascular structures. Buccinator maintains the cheek against the teeth during mastication and assists containment of the food bolus (1, 2, 4). The hard palate is formed by the palatine processes of the maxillae and horizontal plates of the palatine bones. The soft palate contains skeletal muscles that elevate, tense, and reposition it during swallowing and speech. Tensor veli palatini is supplied through the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve, whereas most other palatal muscles receive motor supply through the pharyngeal plexus associated with the vagus nerve. Failure to distinguish these pathways can obscure the localization of palatal weakness (1, 2).

9.4.2. Oral mucosa and clinically important spaces:

Masticatory mucosa of the gingiva and hard palate is adapted to mechanical stress; lining mucosa over much of the cheeks, lips, and floor is more mobile. Specialized lingual mucosa contains papillae and taste structures. The sublingual and submandibular spaces communicate around the posterior border of mylohyoid, an arrangement relevant to the spread of infection. The roots of mandibular teeth relative to the mylohyoid attachment influence which space may initially become involved. Surface inspection alone therefore cannot define the full extent of disease in the floor of the mouth (1-3).

9.4.3. Blood supply and lymphatic drainage:

Branches of the external carotid system supply much of the oral region. The lingual artery supplies the tongue, while facial and maxillary arterial branches contribute to the lips, cheeks, palate, and dental structures. Venous pathways include deep facial and pterygoid connections as well as more superficial drainage. Lymph from oral territories reaches submental, submandibular, and deep cervical groups in patterns influenced by the precise subsite. The central tongue can drain bilaterally, whereas the lateral margins more often show initially ipsilateral pathways. These overlapping routes limit attempts to infer a lesion's origin solely from one enlarged cervical node (1, 2).

9.5. Teeth, tongue and salivary glands:

9.5.1. Teeth and supporting tissues:

A complete permanent dentition usually contains 32 teeth, including third molars, whereas the deciduous dentition contains 20. Each tooth has a crown, neck, and root. Enamel covers the crown; dentin forms most of the tooth; cementum covers the root; and the pulp contains vascular connective tissue and nerves. The periodontal ligament connects cementum to alveolar bone and distributes occlusal loads. Enamel is acellular after formation, so its biological response to injury differs fundamentally from that of vascularized pulp (2, 3, 6).

9.5.2. Tongue organization and innervation:

The tongue consists of interlacing intrinsic muscles that change shape and extrinsic muscles that alter position. The terminal sulcus separates the oral anterior two-thirds from the pharyngeal posterior third. Filiform papillae primarily contribute mechanical texture and lack taste buds; fungiform, foliate, and circumvallate papillae are associated with taste. Lingual tonsillar tissue occupies the posterior region. Human tongue muscle-fiber studies demonstrate specialization relevant to its diverse movements, but individual muscle actions cannot fully describe a deformable muscular organ whose fibers act together (1, 3, 14). Most tongue muscles receive hypoglossal motor innervation; palatoglossus is an exception supplied through the vagal pharyngeal pathway. General sensation from the anterior two-thirds travels mainly in the lingual nerve, whereas taste travels predominantly through chorda tympani fibers joining it. The posterior third receives both general sensation and taste chiefly through the glossopharyngeal nerve; circumvallate taste buds also follow this pathway despite their position anterior to the terminal sulcus. Lymphatic drainage may cross the midline, an important qualification when predicting regional spread (1, 2).

9.5.3. Major salivary glands and ducts:

The parotid gland lies predominantly behind the mandibular ramus and contains branches of the facial nerve passing through it. These branches supply facial muscles rather than parotid secretion. The parotid duct crosses masseter, turns medially, pierces buccinator, and opens opposite the maxillary second molar. Parasympathetic secretomotor supply originates with the glossopharyngeal pathway, synapses in the otic ganglion, and reaches the gland through the auriculotemporal nerve (1, 2). The submandibular gland curves around the posterior border of mylohyoid. Its duct opens at the sublingual caruncle beside the lingual frenulum,

and its relationship to the lingual nerve matters during dissection. The sublingual gland lies in the floor of the mouth and drains through multiple smaller ducts, with variable larger ductal connections. Parotid tissue is predominantly serous; submandibular tissue is mixed but mainly serous; sublingual tissue is mixed but mainly mucous. These microscopic differences complement duct anatomy in explaining the character and delivery of saliva (1-3).

9.6. Pharynx and the swallowing junction:

9.6.1. A shared respiratory and digestive passage:

The pharynx extends from the skull base to approximately the lower border of the cricoid cartilage at C6, where it continues as the esophagus. Its nasal, oral, and laryngeal subdivisions reflect adjacent cavities rather than three separate tubes. The nasopharynx normally conducts air, while the oropharynx and laryngopharynx participate in passage of food. The piriform recesses flank the laryngeal inlet; nearby superior laryngeal nerve branches explain the potential neurological consequences of injury in this region (1, 2, 4).

9.6.2. Muscles and upper esophageal opening:

The superior, middle, and inferior constrictors form an overlapping muscular wall. Longitudinal muscles elevate the pharynx during swallowing. Motor supply is predominantly vagal through the pharyngeal plexus, with stylopharyngeus supplied by the glossopharyngeal nerve. Cricopharyngeus contributes substantially to the upper esophageal high-pressure zone. Opening depends on muscle relaxation, anterior and superior displacement of the laryngeal complex, and bolus-related forces; it is not adequately explained as a circular valve simply switching open. Imaging studies demonstrate that these components must be assessed together (1, 2, 15). The posterior weakness between the thyropharyngeal and cricopharyngeal components of the inferior constrictor is associated with a pharyngoesophageal diverticulum. The anatomical site explains why symptoms can arise near the pharynx even though the lesion is often described in relation to the esophagus. Airway protection likewise depends on coordinated laryngeal closure and elevation, not solely on the epiglottis acting as a passive lid (1, 2, 15).

9.7. Esophagus and gastroesophageal junction:

9.7.1. Course constrictions and relations:

The adult esophagus is approximately 25 cm long and has cervical, thoracic, and short abdominal portions. It begins near C6, descends through the mediastinum, passes through the

diaphragmatic hiatus near T10, and joins the stomach below the diaphragm. The cervical segment lies behind the trachea. Thoracic relations include the aortic arch, left main bronchus, pericardium, and vertebral column. Normal narrowings occur at the upper opening, at aortic and bronchial crossings, and at the diaphragmatic passage. Exact levels and distances vary with posture and body size (1, 2, 4). Its mucosa is lined mainly by nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium, with submucosal glands contributing lubrication. Longitudinal folds allow expansion. Segmental arterial sources include inferior thyroid branches in the neck, thoracic aortic branches, and left gastric contributions inferiorly. Venous drainage connects systemic and portal territories near the distal esophagus. These communications acquire clinical significance in portal hypertension but should not be confused with a normal preferential bypass of hepatic circulation (1-3).

9.7.2. The junction is a coordinated anatomical region:

The lower esophageal sphincter is principally a physiological high-pressure zone, supported by intrinsic smooth muscle, diaphragmatic crura, and the geometry of the gastroesophageal junction. Unlike the pylorus, it is not ordinarily a conspicuous, sharply bounded muscular ring on gross dissection. The squamocolumnar junction, diaphragmatic impression, and anatomical gastroesophageal junction are related landmarks that may become separated, especially with a hiatus hernia. Their distinction is essential in endoscopic description (1, 2, 4). Esophageal lymphatics communicate longitudinally, allowing drainage beyond the immediately adjacent segment. Its predominantly adventitial external covering also influences local extension. A critical anatomical report should therefore describe lesion level, depth, circumference, and relationship to neighboring structures, rather than relying only on mucosal appearance or the distance from the incisors (1, 2).

9.8. Stomach anatomy:

9.8.1. Regions surfaces and attachments:

The stomach is a distensible intraperitoneal organ occupying mainly the epigastrium and left hypochondrium. Its regions are cardia, fundus, body, and pyloric part, the latter including antrum and canal. The lesser curvature forms the shorter medial border; the greater curvature forms the longer convex border. The incisura angularis marks a notch along the lesser curvature. Gastric position and contour change with filling and body habitus, so the familiar J shape represents a useful diagram rather than an invariant configuration (1, 2, 6). Anterior relations include the diaphragm, left hepatic lobe, and anterior abdominal wall. Posterior

relations across the lesser sac include the pancreas and other structures of the stomach bed. The lesser omentum attaches to the lesser curvature, while the greater omentum descends from the greater curvature. Gastrosplenic and gastrophrenic attachments further link the stomach to adjacent organs. The close relation of the posterior stomach to the pancreas explains why apparently gastric symptoms may coexist with disease in neighboring structures (1, 2)

9.8.2. Wall and glandular regions:

Rugae are folds involving mucosa and submucosa that become less prominent with distension. Gastric pits lead into glands within the mucosa. Fundic and body glands contain parietal cells, chief cells, mucous neck cells, and endocrine populations; antral glands have a different cellular composition, including gastrin-producing cells. Surface mucous cells form a protective epithelial interface. The muscularis externa includes oblique, circular, and longitudinal components, with circular muscle thickening at the pyloric sphincter (3, 7).

9.8.3. Vessels and clinical relationships:

Arterial supply forms interconnected networks along both curvatures: right and left gastric vessels along the lesser curvature, right and left gastro-omental vessels along the greater curvature, and short gastric vessels toward the fundus. Most arise through branches of the celiac system. Lymphatic routes broadly accompany the arteries toward regional and celiac nodes. This rich vascular arrangement should not be mistaken for protection against all ischemic injury, particularly when vessels have been divided or systemic perfusion is compromised (1, 2).

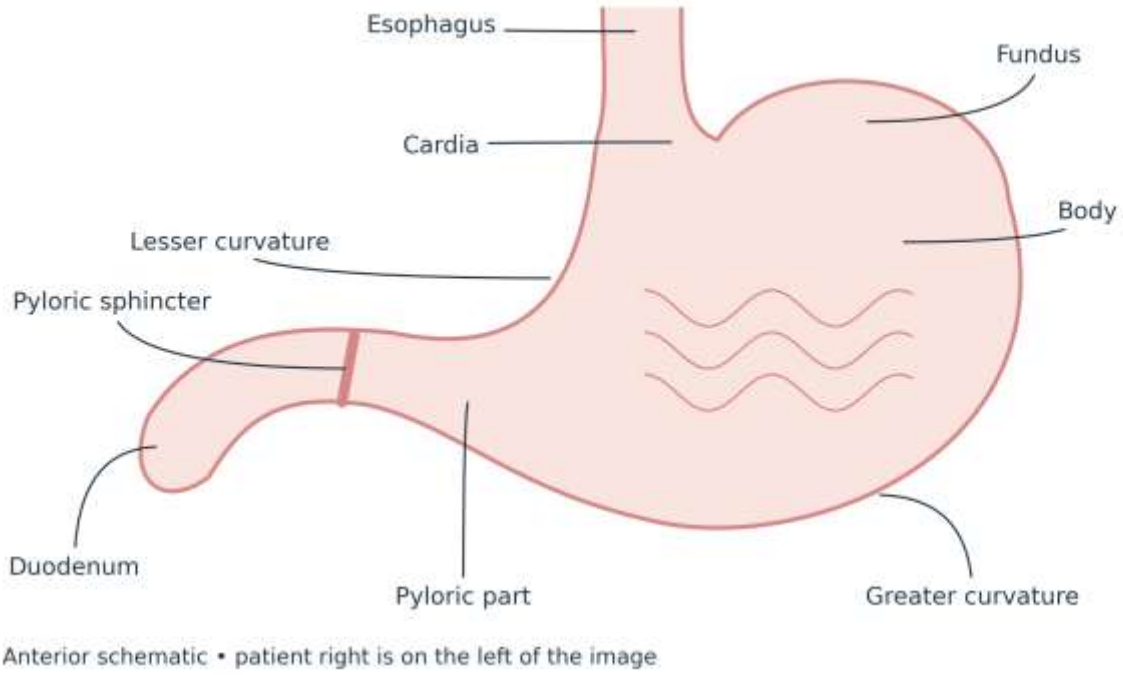


Figure 2: Regions of the stomach. Anterior schematic showing the cardia, fundus, body, curvatures, pyloric region, and duodenal continuation. The internal lines indicate mucosal folding schematically; organ shape changes with distension. Original illustration based on anatomical descriptions (1, 2, 6)

9.9. Peritoneum mesentery and abdominal spaces:

9.9.1. Peritoneal compartments:

Parietal peritoneum lines the body wall, and visceral peritoneum covers organ surfaces. The intervening cavity is a potential space containing a small amount of lubricating fluid, not an empty container in which organs float freely. The greater and lesser sacs communicate through the epiploic foramen. The hepatoduodenal ligament forms its anterior boundary and contains the portal triad, with the bile duct and hepatic artery generally anterior to the portal vein. Anatomical variations remain important at this compact passage (1, 2, 6). The transverse mesocolon helps separate supracolic and infracolic compartments. Paracolic gutters provide routes by which fluid can move between abdominal and pelvic regions. Intraperitoneal mobility and retroperitoneal fixation influence injury patterns and surgical exposure. Most of the duodenum and much of the pancreas are secondarily retroperitoneal, whereas the jejunum and ileum retain a mesentery. These categories describe relations to peritoneum and attachment planes rather than simply anterior or posterior position (1, 2).

9.9.2. Mesenteric continuity and its limits:

Operative and microscopic studies support continuity of mesenteric structures and describe fascial interfaces that can be followed during mobilization. These observations challenge diagrams that depict the adult mesocolon as disappearing completely wherever the colon becomes fixed. The practical contribution is a more coherent description of tissue planes and contained vessels, lymphatics, and fat. Whether a structure is named an organ is less clinically important than whether its boundaries and connections can be identified reproducibly (16, 17). Complete mesocolic excision applies a plane-based anatomical approach to colonic cancer surgery. Reported outcomes from standardized operative series are informative but cannot, by themselves, separate the effect of the dissection plane from surgeon experience, case selection, pathological assessment, and accompanying treatment. Anatomical plausibility is therefore a rationale for careful evaluation, not sufficient proof that a more extensive operation benefits every patient (18).

9.10. Duodenum:

9.10.1. Four parts and neighboring structures:

The duodenum forms a C-shaped segment approximately 25–30 cm long around the pancreatic head. Its superior first part begins at the pylorus, with a relatively mobile proximal portion. The descending second part receives biliary and pancreatic drainage. The horizontal third part crosses anterior to the aorta and inferior vena cava but posterior to the superior mesenteric vessels. The ascending fourth part reaches the duodenojejunal flexure, supported by the suspensory muscle and associated connective tissue. These relations are more useful than memorizing length alone (1, 2, 4). The major duodenal papilla is usually located on the posteromedial wall of the descending part. The common bile duct and main pancreatic duct often unite before opening, although separate openings and other variations occur. An accessory pancreatic duct may open at the minor papilla. A posterior ulcer in the proximal duodenum can threaten the gastroduodenal artery, whereas anterior perforation more directly involves the peritoneal cavity. The superior mesenteric vascular crossing is another site where spatial relationships may contribute to obstruction (1, 2, 19).

9.10.2. Histology and vascular transition:

Brunner glands in the submucosa distinguish the duodenum microscopically, although their abundance varies along its length. The mucosa contains villi and crypts. Pancreaticoduodenal

arterial arcades connect celiac-derived gastroduodenal branches with superior mesenteric branches, marking the transition between foregut and midgut supply. The embryological boundary near the major papilla should therefore be understood as a regional transition with vascular connections, not an isolated line that lacks collateral communication (1, 3, 5).

9.11. Jejunum, ileum and the mesenteric root:

9.11.1. A gradient rather than a sharp boundary:

The jejunum and ileum extend from the duodenojejunal flexure to the ileocecal junction. Jejunal loops tend to occupy the upper left abdomen, whereas ileal loops are more frequent inferiorly and to the right, but mobility prevents absolute localization. The proximal two-fifths and distal three-fifths of the mobile small intestine are conventionally designated jejunum and ileum. No external line reliably marks their junction. Identification depends on a combination of wall thickness, caliber, mucosal folds, vascular arcades, and mesenteric fat (1, 2). Jejunum generally has a thicker wall, more prominent circular folds, fewer arterial arcades, and longer vasa recta. Ileum tends toward more arcades, shorter vasa recta, and mesenteric fat extending nearer the intestinal border. Aggregated lymphoid nodules become particularly conspicuous in distal ileum. These are tendencies rather than diagnostic absolutes, and inflammatory or postoperative change can alter several of them simultaneously. A single feature should not be used to identify an isolated operative or pathological specimen (1-3).

9.11.2. Mesenteric attachment and vascular pathways:

The root of the small-intestinal mesentery runs obliquely from the duodenojejunal region toward the right iliac region. Its relatively short attachment accommodates a much longer folded intestinal border. Mesenteric arteries, veins, lymphatics, nodes, and nerves travel between its peritoneal layers. The root crosses major posterior structures, including the horizontal duodenum and great vessels. Torsion of a narrow or abnormal root can consequently impair both arterial inflow and venous drainage over a large intestinal territory (1, 2, 5).

Table 1: Typical jejunal and ileal differences. Features overlap and should be interpreted together (1-3)

Feature	Jejunum	Ileum
Wall and caliber	Usually thicker and wider	Usually thinner and narrower
Circular folds	Prominent proximally	Diminish distally
Arterial arcades	Fewer tiers	More tiers
Vasa recta	Generally longer	Generally shorter
Mesenteric fat	Less near the bowel border	Extends nearer the bowel border
Lymphoid aggregates	Less conspicuous	Peyer patches prominent distally

9.12. Intestinal mucosa and the absorptive unit:

9.12.1. Folds villi crypts and microvilli:

Circular folds include mucosa and submucosa. Villi are mucosal projections containing lamina propria, capillary loops, and a central lymphatic lacteal. Microvilli are much smaller apical projections of individual absorptive epithelial cells and form the brush border. These three levels of folding are structurally distinct and should never be presented as interchangeable names. Crypts extend downward into the mucosa between villi and contain proliferative and secretory cell populations (3, 7). Surface-area amplification does not translate directly into a fixed absorptive capacity. Perfusion, epithelial transporters, barrier integrity, and regional disease also matter. The modern morphometric estimate discussed earlier is valuable because it exposes how frequently anatomical numbers are repeated without checking the underlying measurement. Histological shrinkage, tissue orientation, and the inclusion of microvillar amplification must be specified before different estimates can be compared (8).

9.12.2. Cellular diversity and regeneration:

Enterocytes form most of the absorptive surface, while goblet cells, enteroendocrine cells, Paneth cells, tuft cells, and specialized antigen-sampling epithelial cells contribute additional functions. Lgr5 lineage-tracing experiments established a population of crypt stem cells in

mice. Subsequent culture studies showed that individual Lgr5-positive cells could generate crypt–villus-like epithelial structures under defined conditions. These findings transformed experimental intestinal biology, but they do not demonstrate that an isolated epithelial organoid reproduces all components of a human bowel wall (20-22). Paneth-cell niche experiments, neutral competition studies, and reserve-cell investigations show that epithelial renewal depends on both cellular context and the experimental injury model. Mesenchymal signals further regulate proliferation and repair. A rigid diagram assigning regeneration permanently to one cell type is therefore less accurate than a model that accommodates context-dependent plasticity. Human regional transcriptomic surveys confirm epithelial diversity while emphasizing that nutrient-processing programs vary along the proximal–distal axis (23-28).

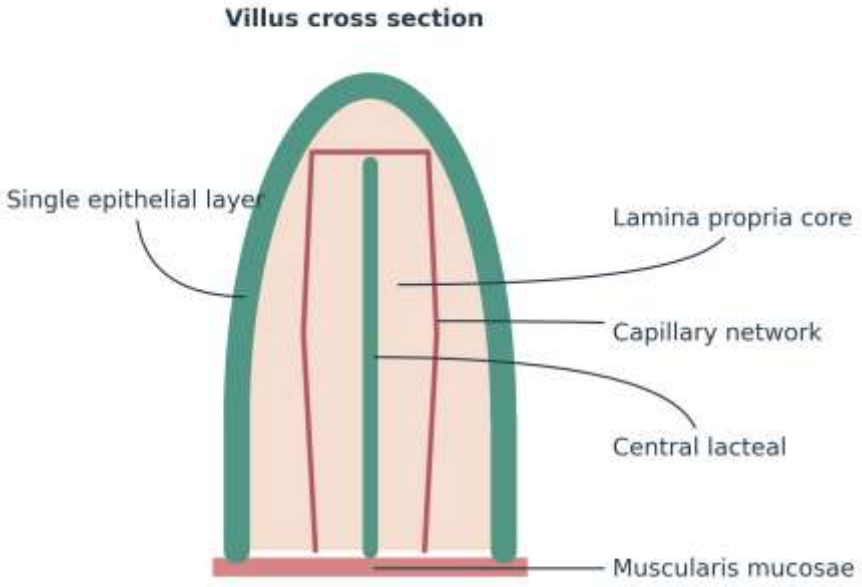


Figure 3: Villus architecture. The epithelial surface surrounds a lamina propria core containing capillaries and a lacteal. Crypts, individual cells, and microvilli are omitted. This is a conceptual section rather than a histological micrograph. Original schematic (3, 7, 8).

9.12.3. Interpreting intestinal histology:

A properly oriented intestinal biopsy allows assessment of villus height, crypt depth, surface continuity, and the distribution of inflammatory cells. Tangential sections can make normal villi appear shortened or fused, while crushed tissue can obscure epithelial detail. The presence of Brunner glands supports a duodenal origin, but their absence in a superficial specimen does not exclude it because these glands are principally submucosal. Similarly, an

isolated lymphoid aggregate does not establish that tissue is terminal ileum. Histological interpretation should combine architecture with the recorded sampling site and the depth actually represented (1, 3).

9.13. Cecum, appendix and colon:

9.13.1. Cecum and vermiform appendix:

The cecum is a blind pouch near the ileocecal junction, usually in the right iliac fossa. The appendix arises from its posteromedial aspect below the ileal opening. Convergence of the taeniae coli provides a useful guide to the appendiceal base, whereas the tip may occupy retrocecal, pelvic, subcecal, or other positions. This variability helps explain differences in the location of tenderness and in adjacent structures affected by inflammation. The mesoappendix carries the appendicular vessels (1, 2, 6). The appendix contains abundant lymphoid tissue, particularly in younger individuals, and has a narrow, irregular lumen. Its immune-associated architecture argues against describing it as an anatomically meaningless remnant. However, structure alone does not establish that any proposed microbial reservoir function is indispensable. The ileocecal junction comprises lips of tissue and regional muscular specialization; its resistance to reflux is influenced by pressure relationships and cannot be reduced to an inert flap (1, 3).

9.13.2. Colonic segments and external features:

The colon comprises ascending, transverse, descending, and sigmoid segments. The right colic flexure relates to the liver; the higher and relatively more fixed left flexure relates to the spleen and diaphragm. Ascending and descending segments are commonly secondarily retroperitoneal, whereas the transverse and sigmoid colon retain mesocolic attachments. The sigmoid colon varies considerably in length and mobility, influencing its position and susceptibility to torsion (1, 2). Taeniae coli, haustra, and fatty omental appendices are characteristic external features. Haustra are sacculations related to wall configuration and muscle tone rather than permanent separate chambers. Colonic mucosa has numerous straight tubular crypts and many goblet cells but normally lacks the villi typical of the small intestine. The longitudinal muscular layer spreads into a continuous sheet at the rectum. This transition is one reason why the rectum should not be treated as merely another haustrated colonic segment (1, 3, 7).

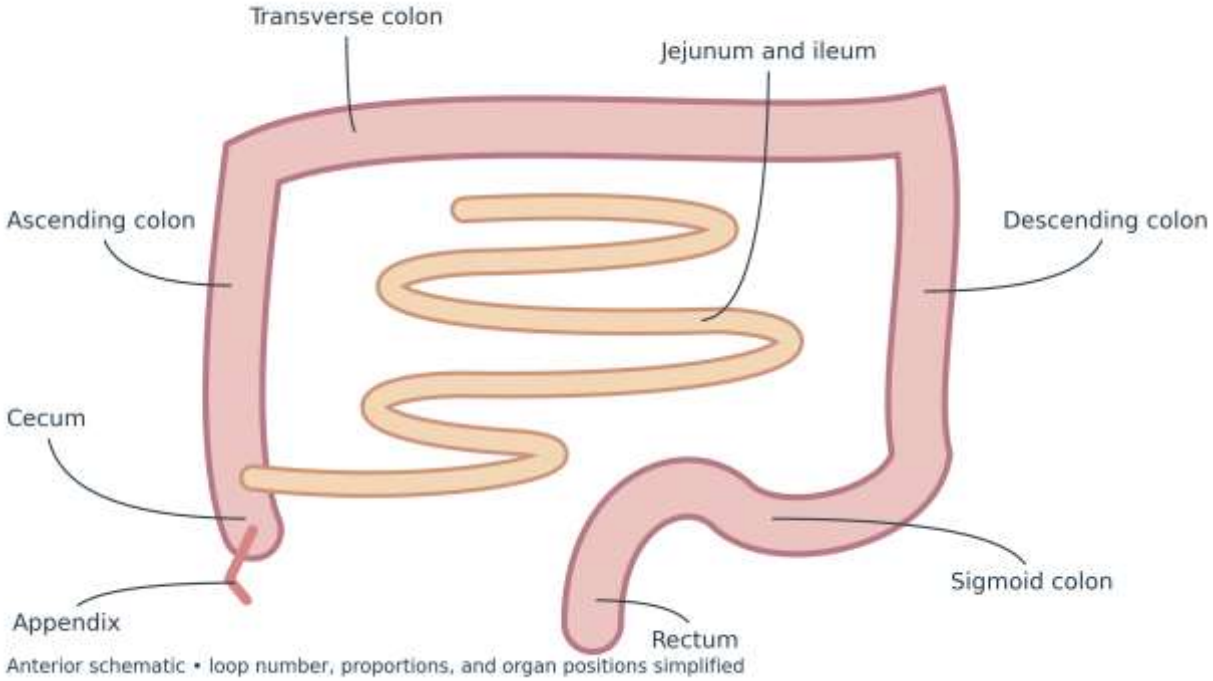


Figure 4: Small and large intestinal relationships. The colon frames the mobile jejunoileal loops. The terminal ileum joins the cecal region, and the sigmoid colon continues into the rectum. Loop number and proportions are simplified; this illustration is not an operative map. Original schematic (1, 2).

9.13.3. Structural routes of colonic disease:

Acquired colonic diverticula commonly represent herniation of mucosa and submucosa through weaker sites in the muscular wall, often where vessels penetrate. They differ from a true diverticulum containing all major wall layers. A Meckel diverticulum, by contrast, results from persistence of part of the embryonic vitelline duct and typically arises from the antimesenteric ileal border. Its position and tissue composition distinguish it from colonic diverticular disease. These examples show how embryological origin and the layers included in an outpouching clarify terminology that otherwise sounds anatomically equivalent (1-5).

9.14. Rectum, anal canal and continence anatomy:

9.14.1. Rectum and mesorectal envelope:

The rectum begins near the level of S3 as a continuation of the sigmoid colon and follows the sacral curvature. Peritoneal covering decreases inferiorly: the upper rectum has anterior and lateral coverage, the middle portion principally anterior coverage, and the lower rectum lacks a peritoneal covering. The mesorectal envelope contains fat, vessels, lymphatics, and nodes within a fascial boundary. Its surgical importance was emphasized by work relating

mesorectal removal to pelvic recurrence in rectal cancer (1, 2, 29). Anterior relationships differ by pelvic anatomy. In males, the bladder, seminal vesicles, and prostate are relevant; in females, the vagina and reproductive organs influence the relations. Pelvic autonomic nerves lie close to operative planes, explaining why technically successful resection can still impair urinary or sexual function if neural structures are injured. Clear identification of fascial and neural boundaries is therefore part of functional anatomy (1, 2)

9.14.2. Anal canal and the pectinate line:

The anal canal contains internal smooth-muscle and external skeletal-muscle sphincter components. Puborectalis forms a sling that contributes to the anorectal angle. Anal columns and valves define the pectinate line, a landmark associated with developmental, epithelial, sensory, vascular, and lymphatic transitions. Above it, visceral sensation predominates; below it, somatic innervation makes the region particularly sensitive to pain. Drainage patterns are regionally different but communicate, so the line should not be imagined as an impermeable vascular barrier (1, 2, 5). Continence also depends on rectal capacity, sensation, pelvic-floor coordination, and the anal vascular cushions. Hemorrhoidal cushions are normal anatomical structures; symptomatic hemorrhoidal disease is not synonymous with portal-hypertensive rectal varices. Maintaining this distinction prevents a common error in connecting normal anatomy to clinical terminology (1, 2).

9.14.3. Regional drainage below the pelvic brim:

The superior rectal artery is a continuation of the inferior mesenteric artery; middle rectal contributions arise variably from the internal iliac system, and inferior rectal branches usually arise from the internal pudendal artery. Lymph from the upper rectum follows superior rectal pathways, while lower regions also communicate with pelvic nodal groups. Below the pectinate line, superficial inguinal drainage becomes particularly relevant. These patterns are useful for understanding regional spread, but pathological drainage can deviate from simplified maps after obstruction, inflammation, or previous surgery (1, 2).

9.15. Accessory organs at the duodenal interface:

9.15.1. Liver and biliary tree:

The liver lies mainly beneath the right diaphragm and extends into the epigastrium and left upper abdomen. Surface lobes are not equivalent to functional segments, which are defined by branching portal inflow and biliary drainage, with hepatic veins occupying important

intersegmental planes. Portal blood and hepatic arterial blood mix in sinusoids before draining through central and hepatic veins. At the microscopic level, the classical lobule, portal lobule, and hepatic acinus emphasize different relationships; no single diagram captures every aspect of hepatic organization (1-3) (6). Right and left hepatic ducts typically form the common hepatic duct, which joins the cystic duct to form the common bile duct. The gallbladder has fundus, body, and neck and stores bile along this branching system. Its mucosa is folded, and its wall lacks the typical gastrointestinal muscularis mucosae and submucosa. Cystic duct length, insertion, and course vary, and hepatic arterial variation is common enough that the expected pattern must be confirmed rather than assumed. Observational arterial series and cholangiographic studies document this diversity (3) (30-32).

9.15.2. Pancreas and ductal relations:

The pancreas has a head within the duodenal curve, an uncinate process extending behind the superior mesenteric vessels, a neck, body, and tail extending toward the splenic hilum. Most of it is secondarily retroperitoneal; the tail has a different peritoneal relationship within the splenorenal ligament. The portal vein usually forms behind the pancreatic neck. These compact relationships explain the difficulty of separating pancreatic, vascular, and biliary disease anatomically (1, 2). Exocrine acini drain through a duct system beginning with centroacinar and intercalated ductal elements, while endocrine islets are dispersed within the gland. Single-cell pancreatic studies distinguish cell populations and age-associated transcriptional features, but dissociated cells do not preserve the three-dimensional branching pattern needed for operative planning. Variations of the pancreatic ducts likewise require direct anatomical or imaging assessment rather than inference from a standard textbook diagram (3, 19, 33, 34). The history of bile-duct injury during laparoscopic surgery illustrates the danger of identifying structures by expectation. A clear view of relevant relationships is essential because traction, inflammation, and variation can make one duct resemble another. Anatomical safety depends on demonstrating the course and attachments of structures, not merely recognizing a familiar-looking tubular profile (35).

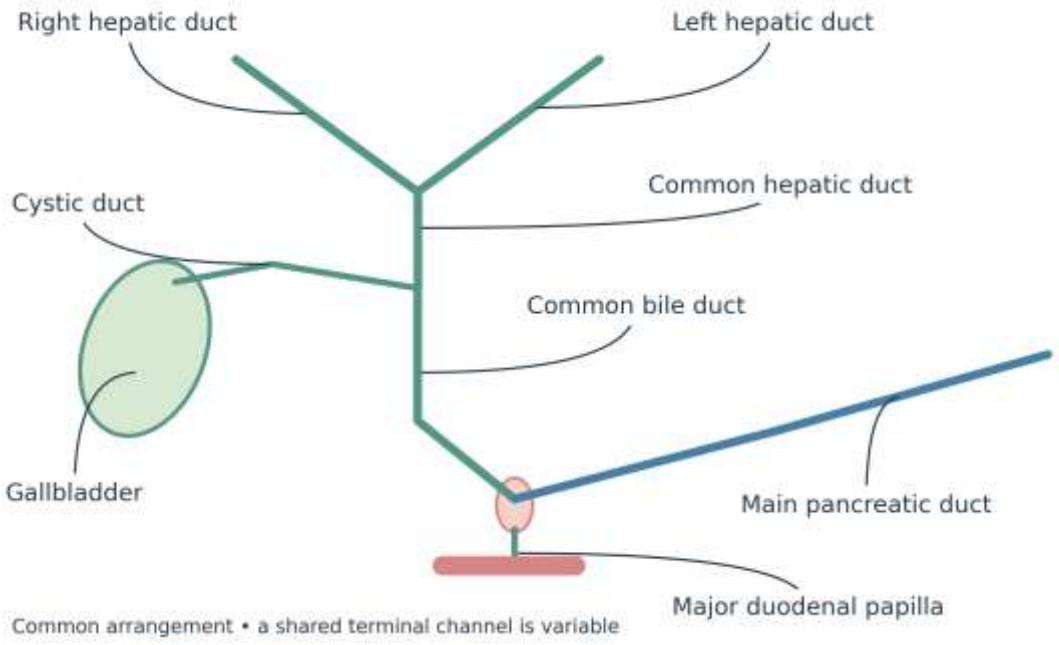


Figure 5: Biliary and pancreatic duct connections. A common arrangement of hepatic, cystic, bile, and pancreatic ducts. Duct junctions and the presence of a shared terminal channel vary. The diagram emphasizes connections rather than exact organ position. Original schematic (1, 2, 19, 30).

9.16. Arteries, veins and lymphatic routes:

9.16.1. Arterial territories and collateral pathways:

The celiac trunk supplies abdominal foregut derivatives, the superior mesenteric artery supplies midgut derivatives, and the inferior mesenteric artery supplies hindgut derivatives. The superior mesenteric system contributes jejunal, ileal, ileocolic, and colic branches; the inferior mesenteric system contributes left colic, sigmoid, and superior rectal branches. Colonic arterial connections form a marginal pathway of variable completeness. Watershed regions, including the splenic flexure and rectosigmoid region, may be vulnerable when perfusion or collateral supply is inadequate (1, 2, 5). Venous drainage from much of the tract enters the portal system through superior mesenteric, splenic, and associated tributaries. Inferior mesenteric venous termination varies. Rectal and esophageal communications connect portal and systemic territories. A vascular map should distinguish arteries from veins explicitly: their names may correspond, but their branching, confluence, pressure, and pathological consequences are not identical (1, 2).

9.16.2. Lymphatic continuity:

Intestinal lymphatics begin within the wall, with villous lacteals contributing to transport of absorbed lipid. Collecting vessels accompany mesenteric routes through successive nodal groups toward larger trunks. Regional lymphoid tissue and draining lymph nodes are connected but distinct structures: Peyer patches are organized lymphoid aggregates in the intestinal wall, not mesenteric nodes. Human anatomical observations demonstrate that their distribution and abundance vary with age, which limits interpretations based on a single idealized ileal section (1, 3, 36).

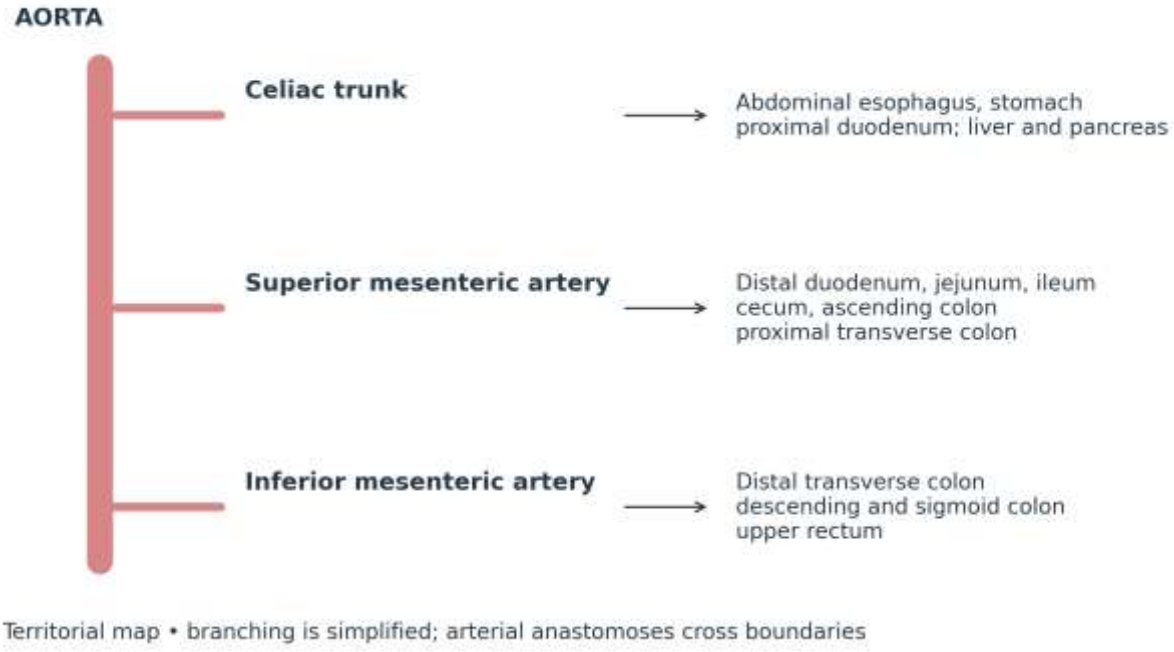


Figure 6: Principal arterial territories. Celiac, superior mesenteric, and inferior mesenteric distributions provide a developmental framework. Anastomoses connect territories, and individual branching patterns vary. The splenic arterial territory is omitted because the spleen is outside the digestive tract. Original schematic (1, 2, 5).

9.17. Enteric and autonomic innervation:

9.17.1. Plexuses and regional connections:

The myenteric plexus lies principally between the circular and longitudinal muscle layers; submucosal plexuses occupy the submucosal compartment. Both contain neuronal and glial elements organized into regional circuits. Parasympathetic supply reaches much of the tract through the vagus nerve, while pelvic splanchnic nerves supply distal hindgut territories. Sympathetic pathways travel through prevertebral ganglia and periarterial plexuses. Visceral

afferents follow multiple pathways, so the location of perceived pain need not precisely identify the diseased organ (1, 2, 37).

9.17.2. Neural anatomy beyond a two-plexus diagram:

Single-cell analysis of human and mouse enteric nervous systems demonstrates neuronal diversity beyond the simplified categories drawn in introductory diagrams. Interstitial cells of Cajal participate in electrical rhythmicity and neuromuscular organization but are not enteric neurons. Enteric glia also have regionally and experimentally distinct roles; a mouse ablation study found effects on motility without an obligatory requirement for epithelial maintenance under its tested conditions. Such findings argue against attributing every barrier or motor phenomenon to one universally acting cell population (38-40).

9.18. Mucosal defense and limited physiological integration:

9.18.1. A structurally organized barrier:

The intestinal barrier comprises epithelium, intercellular junctions, mucus, immune-associated structures, and underlying stromal and vascular support. Colonic mucus studies established a bacteria-excluding inner layer in experimental settings, while human ulcerative-colitis samples and animal models demonstrate altered penetrability. Other work shows that mucus organization is influenced by colonic contents and sampling conditions. The defensible conclusion is that barrier architecture is spatially structured and dynamic; a schematic two-layer description should not be applied without qualification to every intestinal region or preparation (41-44).

9.18.2. Physiology explained by anatomy:

Mastication increases food fragmentation, while saliva lubricates the bolus and initiates selected digestive reactions. Pharyngeal coordination protects the airway, and esophageal peristalsis transports the bolus. The stomach accommodates, mixes, and meters contents into the duodenum. Intestinal folds and epithelial specialization support absorption, while colonic architecture supports fluid recovery and fecal formation. Sphincters and neural circuits coordinate passage between regions. These functions depend on the structural arrangements described above, but normal gross anatomy does not exclude a physiological disorder (3, 7, 37). A particularly useful clinical connection joins gastric parietal cells to ileal absorption: intrinsic factor produced in the stomach is required for the normal receptor-mediated uptake of vitamin B12 in the terminal ileum. This relationship demonstrates why a functional deficit

may arise from disease at a site distant from the final absorptive surface. Similarly, loss of terminal ileal tissue has consequences that cannot be predicted from the removed length alone (3, 7).

9.19. Summary:

From mouth to intestine, the digestive tract preserves a common wall plan while changing its epithelial surfaces, muscle organization, attachments, and vascular connections. Understanding those transitions explains more than isolated lists of organ functions. Clinical interpretation depends especially on neighboring structures, tissue depth, anatomical variation, and the limits of each observation method. Modern developmental and cellular studies add important detail, but their strongest contribution comes from integration with established gross anatomy and histology. An anatomically informed account therefore links continuity with regional specialization and treats uncertainty in dimensions, models, and tissue sampling as part of scientific understanding.

References:

1. Standring S, ed. *Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice*. 42nd ed. Elsevier; 2021.
2. Dalley AF II, Agur AMR. *Moore's Clinically Oriented Anatomy*. 9th ed. Wolters Kluwer; 2023.
3. Mescher AL. *Junqueira's Basic Histology: Text and Atlas*. 16th ed. McGraw Hill; 2021.
4. Drake RL, Vogl AW, Mitchell AWM. *Gray's Anatomy for Students*. 4th ed. Elsevier; 2020.
5. Sadler TW. *Langman's Medical Embryology*. 15th ed. Wolters Kluwer; 2023.
6. Netter FH. *Atlas of Human Anatomy*. 7th ed. Elsevier; 2019.
7. Betts JG, DeSaix P, Johnson E, et al. *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax; 2022. Accessed September 12, 2026. https://openstax.org/details/books/anatomy-and-physiology-2e
8. Helander HF, Fändriks L. Surface area of the digestive tract - revisited. *Scand J Gastroenterol*. 2014;49(6):681-689. doi:10.3109/00365521.2014.898326
9. Soffers JH, Hikspoors JP, Mekonen HK, Koehler SE, Lamers WH. The growth pattern of the human intestine and its mesentery. *BMC Dev Biol*. 2015;15:31. doi:10.1186/s12861-015-0081-x
10. Savin T, Kurpios NA, Shyer AE, et al. On the growth and form of the gut. *Nature*. 2011;476(7358):57-62. doi:10.1038/nature10277

11. Fawkner-Corbett D, Antanaviciute A, Parikh K, et al. Spatiotemporal analysis of human intestinal development at single-cell resolution. *Cell*. 2021;184(3):810-826.e23. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2020.12.016
12. Elmentaite R, Kumasaka N, Roberts K, et al. Cells of the human intestinal tract mapped across space and time. *Nature*. 2021;597(7875):250-255. doi:10.1038/s41586-021-03852-1
13. Elmentaite R, Ross ADB, Roberts K, et al. Single-cell sequencing of developing human gut reveals transcriptional links to childhood Crohn's disease. *Dev Cell*. 2020;55(6):771-783.e5. doi:10.1016/j.devcel.2020.11.010
14. Sanders I, Mu L, Amirali A, Su H, Sobotka S. The human tongue slows down to speak: muscle fibers of the human tongue. *Anat Rec (Hoboken)*. 2013;296(10):1615-1627. doi:10.1002/ar.22755
15. Logemann JA, Rademaker AW, Pauloski BR, Ohmae Y, Kahrilas PJ. Normal swallowing physiology as viewed by videofluoroscopy and videoendoscopy. *Folia Phoniatr Logop*. 1998;50(6):311-319. doi:10.1159/000021473
16. Culligan K, Coffey JC, Kiran RP, Kalady M, Lavery IC, Remzi FH. The mesocolon: a prospective observational study. *Colorectal Dis*. 2012;14(4):421-428; discussion 428-430. doi:10.1111/j.1463-1318.2012.02935.x
17. Culligan K, Walsh S, Dunne C, et al. The mesocolon: a histological and electron microscopic characterization of the mesenteric attachment of the colon prior to and after surgical mobilization. *Ann Surg*. 2014;260(6):1048-1056. doi:10.1097/sla.0000000000000323
18. Hohenberger W, Weber K, Matzel K, Papadopoulos T, Merkel S. Standardized surgery for colonic cancer: complete mesocolic excision and central ligation--technical notes and outcome. *Colorectal Dis*. 2009;11(4):354-364; discussion 364-365. doi:10.1111/j.1463-1318.2008.01735.x
19. Dimitriou I, Katsourakis A, Nikolaidou E, Noussios G. The main anatomical variations of the pancreatic duct system: review of the literature and its importance in surgical practice. *J Clin Med Res*. 2018;10(5):370-375. doi:10.14740/jocmr3344w
20. Barker N, van Es JH, Kuipers J, et al. Identification of stem cells in small intestine and colon by marker gene Lgr5. *Nature*. 2007;449(7165):1003-1007. doi:10.1038/nature06196

21. Sato T, Vries RG, Snippert HJ, et al. Single Lgr5 stem cells build crypt-villus structures in vitro without a mesenchymal niche. *Nature*. 2009;459(7244):262-265. doi:10.1038/nature07935
22. Haber AL, Biton M, Rogel N, et al. A single-cell survey of the small intestinal epithelium. *Nature*. 2017;551(7680):333-339. doi:10.1038/nature24489
23. Wang Y, Song W, Wang J, et al. Single-cell transcriptome analysis reveals differential nutrient absorption functions in human intestine. *J Exp Med*. 2020;217(2):e20191130. doi:10.1084/jem.20191130
24. Burclaff J, Bliton RJ, Breau KA, et al. A proximal-to-distal survey of healthy adult human small intestine and colon epithelium by single-cell transcriptomics. *Cell Mol Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2022;13(5):1554-1589. doi:10.1016/j.jcmgh.2022.02.007
25. Sato T, van Es JH, Snippert HJ, et al. Paneth cells constitute the niche for Lgr5 stem cells in intestinal crypts. *Nature*. 2011;469(7330):415-418. doi:10.1038/nature09637
26. Snippert HJ, van der Flier LG, Sato T, et al. Intestinal crypt homeostasis results from neutral competition between symmetrically dividing Lgr5 stem cells. *Cell*. 2010;143(1):134-144. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2010.09.016
27. Tian H, Biehs B, Warming S, et al. A reserve stem cell population in small intestine renders Lgr5-positive cells dispensable. *Nature*. 2011;478(7368):255-259. doi:10.1038/nature10408
28. Jardé T, Chan WH, Rossello FJ, et al. Mesenchymal niche-derived neuregulin-1 drives intestinal stem cell proliferation and regeneration of damaged epithelium. *Cell Stem Cell*. 2020;27(4):646-662.e7. doi:10.1016/j.stem.2020.06.021
29. Heald RJ, Husband EM, Ryall RD. The mesorectum in rectal cancer surgery--the clue to pelvic recurrence? *Br J Surg*. 1982;69(10):613-616. doi:10.1002/bjs.1800691019
30. Sarawagi R, Sundar S, Gupta SK, Raghuwanshi S. Anatomical variations of cystic ducts in magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography and clinical implications. *Radiol Res Pract*. 2016;2016:3021484. doi:10.1155/2016/3021484
31. Hiatt JR, Gabbay J, Busuttil RW. Surgical anatomy of the hepatic arteries in 1000 cases. *Ann Surg*. 1994;220(1):50-52. doi:10.1097/00000658-199407000-00008
32. Michels NA. Newer anatomy of the liver and its variant blood supply and collateral circulation. *Am J Surg*. 1966;112(3):337-347. doi:10.1016/0002-9610(66)90201-7
33. Enge M, Arda HE, Mignardi M, et al. Single-cell analysis of human pancreas reveals transcriptional signatures of aging and somatic mutation patterns. *Cell*. 2017;171(2):321-330.e14. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2017.09.004

34. Muraro MJ, Dharmadhikari G, Grün D, et al. A single-cell transcriptome atlas of the human pancreas. *Cell Syst*. 2016;3(4):385-394.e3. doi:10.1016/j.cels.2016.09.002
35. Strasberg SM, Hertl M, Soper NJ. An analysis of the problem of biliary injury during laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *J Am Coll Surg*. 1995;180(1):101-125. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/8000648/
36. Cornes JS. Number, size, and distribution of Peyer's patches in the human small intestine: Part II The effect of age on Peyer's patches. *Gut*. 1965;6(3):230-233. doi:10.1136/gut.6.3.230
37. Furness JB. The enteric nervous system and neurogastroenterology. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2012;9(5):286-294. doi:10.1038/nrgastro.2012.32
38. Drokhlyansky E, Smillie CS, Van Wittenberghe N, et al. The human and mouse enteric nervous system at single-cell resolution. *Cell*. 2020;182(6):1606-1622.e23. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2020.08.003
39. Rao M, Rastelli D, Dong L, et al. Enteric glia regulate gastrointestinal motility but are not required for maintenance of the epithelium in mice. *Gastroenterology*. 2017;153(4):1068-1081.e7. doi:10.1053/j.gastro.2017.07.002
40. Sanders KM, Koh SD, Ward SM. Interstitial cells of Cajal as pacemakers in the gastrointestinal tract. *Annu Rev Physiol*. 2006;68:307-343. doi:10.1146/annurev.physiol.68.040504.094718
41. Johansson ME, Phillipson M, Petersson J, Velcich A, Holm L, Hansson GC. The inner of the two Muc2 mucin-dependent mucus layers in colon is devoid of bacteria. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008;105(39):15064-15069. doi:10.1073/pnas.0803124105
42. Johansson ME, Gustafsson JK, Holmén-Larsson J, et al. Bacteria penetrate the normally impenetrable inner colon mucus layer in both murine colitis models and patients with ulcerative colitis. *Gut*. 2014;63(2):281-291. doi:10.1136/gutjnl-2012-303207
43. Kamphuis JBJ, Mercier-Bonin M, Eutamène H, Theodorou V. Mucus organisation is shaped by colonic content; a new view. *Sci Rep*. 2017;7(1):8527. doi:10.1038/s41598-017-08938-3
44. Pelaseyed T, Bergström JH, Gustafsson JK, et al. The mucus and mucins of the goblet cells and enterocytes provide the first defense line of the gastrointestinal tract and interact with the immune system. *Immunol Rev*. 2014;260(1):8-20. doi:10.1111/imr.12182
45. Hickey JW, Becker WR, Nevins SA, et al. Organization of the human intestine at single-cell resolution. *Nature*. 2023;619(7970):572-584. doi:10.1038/s41586-023-05915-x

46. Smillie CS, Biton M, Ordovas-Montanes J, et al. Intra- and inter-cellular rewiring of the human colon during ulcerative colitis. *Cell*. 2019;178(3):714-730.e22. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2019.06.029
47. Parikh K, Antanaviciute A, Fawkner-Corbett D, et al. Colonic epithelial cell diversity in health and inflammatory bowel disease. *Nature*. 2019;567(7746):49-55. doi:10.1038/s41586-019-0992-y
48. Spence JR, Mayhew CN, Rankin SA, et al. Directed differentiation of human pluripotent stem cells into intestinal tissue in vitro. *Nature*. 2011;470(7332):105-109. doi:10.1038/nature09691
49. Workman MJ, Mahe MM, Trisno S, et al. Engineered human pluripotent-stem-cell-derived intestinal tissues with a functional enteric nervous system. *Nat Med*. 2017;23(1):49-59. doi:10.1038/nm.4233
50. Xu Q, Halle L, Hediyeh-Zadeh S, et al. An integrated transcriptomic cell atlas of human endoderm-derived organoids. *Nat Genet*. 2025;57(5):1201-1212. doi:10.1038/s41588-025-02182-6

SVU

CONTENT

- CHAPTER 10 -

THE URINARY SYSTEM: KIDNEYS AND URINARY TRACT

10.1. Introduction……....190
10.2. Components of the urinary system……..190
10.3. Kidneys……192
10.4. External anatomy of the kidney……192
10.5. Renal hilum……193
10.6. Coverings of the kidney……193
10.7. Internal structure of the kidney……193
10.8. Renal calyces and renal pelvis……...194
10.9. Nephron: functional unit of the kidney……195
10.10. Renal corpuscle……196
10.11. Glomerular filtration barrier……...197
10.12. Proximal convoluted tubule……..197
10.13. Loop of henle……..198
10.14. Distal convoluted tubule……198
10.15. Collecting duct system……..198
10.16. Types of nephrons……..199
10.17. Blood supply of the kidney……....199
10.18. Efferent arterioles and peritubular capillaries……....199
10.19. Renal venous drainage……...200
10.20. Nerve supply of the kidney……....200
10.21. Lymphatic drainage……...200
10.22. Juxtaglomerular apparatus……...…200
10.23. Renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system……...201
10.24. Ureters……201
10.25. Narrowings of the ureter……..…202
10.26. Histology of the ureter……..202
10.27. Urinary bladder…….....202
10.28. Parts of the urinary bladder.....203
10.29. Detrusor muscle……....203

10.30. Urethra……203
10.31. Histology of the urinary tract……...204
10.32. Urine formation……..204
10.33. Glomerular filtration rate…….205
10.34. Regulation of water balance……..205
10.35. Regulation of electrolytes……..205
10.36. Acid–base regulation……..206
10.37. Endocrine functions of the kidney……206
10.38. Concentration of urine……...207
10.39. Micturition……...207
10.40. Development of the urinary system……..207
10.41. Ascent of the kidneys…….….208
10.42. Clinical anatomy of the urinary system……...208
10.43. Renal calculi……209
10.44. Urinary tract infections……..209
10.45. Hydronephrosis……...210
10.46. Acute kidney injury……210
10.47. Chronic kidney disease……..210
10.48. Polycystic kidney disease……...211
10.49. Renal transplantation and applied anatomy……211
10.50. Clinical importance of urinalysis……...211
10.51. Important anatomical relationships…….……..212
10.52. Summary of urine flow……...212
10.53. Structure–function relationship…….…213
10.54. Conclusion……213
References……..213

CHAPTER 10

THE URINARY SYSTEM: KIDNEYS AND URINARY TRACT

Soumadip Sur

Department of Medical Laboratory Technology, School of Allied Health Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Barasat Rd, Telinipara, Malir Math, Bara Kanthalia, West Bengal 700121, India

10.1. INTRODUCTION

The urinary system is one of the major systems involved in maintaining homeostasis in the human body. Its principal organs are the paired kidneys and the urinary tract, which includes the ureters, urinary bladder, and urethra. [1,3] Although urine formation and excretion are its most recognizable functions, the urinary system performs numerous regulatory and endocrine activities that are essential for life. [2,4]

The kidneys continuously filter blood and selectively reabsorb substances that are required by the body while allowing metabolic waste products and excess substances to be eliminated in urine. [2,7] Important waste products removed by the kidneys include urea, creatinine, uric acid, and various metabolites of drugs and hormones. [1,4] At the same time, the kidneys regulate the concentrations of sodium, potassium, calcium, phosphate, chloride, bicarbonate, and other electrolytes in extracellular fluid. [2,8]

The kidneys also contribute significantly to the regulation of systemic blood pressure through control of extracellular fluid volume and through the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system. [8,9] In addition, renal tissue produces erythropoietin, which stimulates red blood cell production, and participates in the activation of vitamin D to calcitriol, an important regulator of calcium and phosphate metabolism. [2,10]

The urinary tract provides a continuous pathway for urine movement from the kidneys to the exterior. Urine passes from the renal papillae into the minor calyces, major calyces, renal pelvis, ureters, urinary bladder, and finally the urethra. [1,5] The coordinated anatomy and physiology of these structures allow urine to be formed, transported, stored, and eliminated efficiently.

10.2. COMPONENTS OF THE URINARY SYSTEM

The urinary system consists of four major anatomical components: [1,3]

a) Right kidney
b) Left kidney
c) Right and left ureters
d) Urinary bladder
e) Urethra

The kidneys are the primary functional organs of the system, whereas the ureters, bladder, and urethra form the urinary drainage pathway. [1,5]

Table 1. Major components of the urinary system

Structure	Number	Major function
Kidneys	2	Blood filtration, urine formation, homeostasis and endocrine functions
Ureters	2	Transport urine from kidneys to bladder
Urinary bladder	1	Temporary storage of urine
Urethra	1	Passage of urine from bladder to exterior

The upper urinary tract comprises the kidneys, renal pelvis, and ureters, whereas the lower urinary tract consists principally of the urinary bladder and urethra. [5,6] Anatomically and clinically, this distinction is important because infections and obstructive disorders may affect different portions of the urinary system.

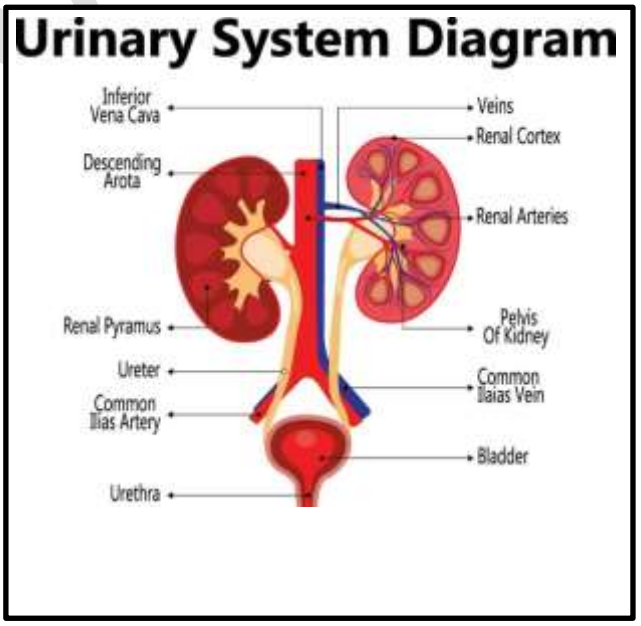


Figure source: narodnatribuna.info

10.3. KIDNEYS

The kidneys are paired, bean-shaped, reddish-brown organs situated on the posterior abdominal wall. [1,11] They are retroperitoneal organs and lie on either side of the vertebral column. The kidneys generally extend from approximately the level of the T12 to L3 vertebrae, although their exact position varies with respiration and body habitus. [1,11] The right kidney is usually positioned slightly lower than the left because of the presence of the liver above it. [1,12]

The kidneys are highly vascular organs and receive approximately 20% of resting cardiac output despite representing only a small fraction of total body mass. [2,7] This extensive blood supply is necessary because renal function depends on continuous filtration of plasma and subsequent modification of the filtrate. [7,13]

Recent anatomical reviews describe the kidneys as retroperitoneal organs located between approximately T12 and L3, containing a cortex, medulla, nephrons, and a collecting system that drains into the ureter. [1]

10.4. EXTERNAL ANATOMY OF THE KIDNEY

Each kidney has two surfaces, two borders, and two poles. [1,11]

10.4.1. Surfaces

The kidney has:

- Anterior surface
- Posterior surface

The anterior surface is related to several abdominal organs, whereas the posterior surface is related primarily to the posterior abdominal wall structures. [11,12]

10.4.2. Borders

The two borders are:

- Lateral border
- Medial border

The lateral border is convex, while the medial border is concave and contains the renal hilum. [1,11]

10.4.3. Poles

Each kidney possesses:

- Superior pole
- Inferior pole

The superior pole is related to the corresponding adrenal gland. [11,12]

10.5. RENAL HILUM

The renal hilum is a vertical slit-like region located on the medial border of the kidney through which important vessels, nerves, lymphatic vessels, and the renal pelvis enter or leave the organ. [1,11]

Structures passing through the renal hilum include:

- Renal artery
- Renal vein
- Renal pelvis
- Ureter
- Lymphatic vessels
- Autonomic nerves

A commonly described arrangement from anterior to posterior is:

Renal vein → Renal artery → Renal pelvis/ureter. [11,12]

The renal hilum opens into a larger internal cavity known as the renal sinus, which contains the renal pelvis, calyces, blood vessels, nerves, lymphatics, and adipose tissue. [1,11]

10.6. COVERINGS OF THE KIDNEY

The kidneys are protected and supported by several layers of connective tissue and fat. [11,12]

From inside outward, the principal coverings are:

1. Fibrous renal capsule
2. Perirenal fat
3. Renal fascia
4. Pararenal fat

The fibrous capsule closely surrounds the kidney and provides mechanical protection. [11] Outside the capsule is perirenal adipose tissue, which helps cushion the kidney and maintain its position. The renal fascia surrounds the kidney and associated structures, while pararenal fat is located outside the renal fascia. [11,12]

10.7. INTERNAL STRUCTURE OF THE KIDNEY

A longitudinal section through the kidney reveals two major regions:

- Renal cortex
- Renal medulla

The kidney also contains a collecting system consisting of renal papillae, minor calyces, major calyces, and the renal pelvis. [1,11]

The characteristic internal organization includes the cortex, medulla, renal pyramids, papillae, calyces, and renal pelvis.

10.7.1 Renal Cortex

The renal cortex is the outer portion of the kidney located immediately beneath the renal capsule. [1,2] It contains renal corpuscles, proximal convoluted tubules, distal convoluted tubules, cortical collecting ducts, blood vessels, and supporting connective tissue. [2,7]

The renal corpuscles are found exclusively within the cortex. [2] The cortex extends between the renal pyramids as structures called **renal columns** or columns of Bertin. [1,11]

10.7.2 Renal Medulla

The renal medulla is the inner region of the kidney. It contains structures associated with urine concentration, including loops of Henle, collecting ducts, and vasa recta. [2,7]

The medulla is organized into cone-shaped structures called **renal pyramids**. The apex of each pyramid is called the **renal papilla**, which projects toward a minor calyx. [1,11]

10.7.3 Renal Pyramids

Renal pyramids are conical structures with their bases directed toward the cortex and their apices directed toward the renal sinus. [1,11] The collecting ducts within the pyramids converge toward the renal papillae and eventually deliver urine into the minor calyces. [5,11]

10.7.4 Renal Columns

The renal columns are extensions of cortical tissue that pass between adjacent renal pyramids. [11] They contain blood vessels and connective tissue and provide structural continuity between the cortex and the medulla.

10.8. RENAL CALYCES AND RENAL PELVIS

Urine formed by the nephrons is collected by the collecting ducts and delivered to the renal papillae. [5,11] Each papilla projects into a **minor calyx**.

Several minor calyces unite to form **major calyces**, and the major calyces converge to form the **renal pelvis**. [1,5]

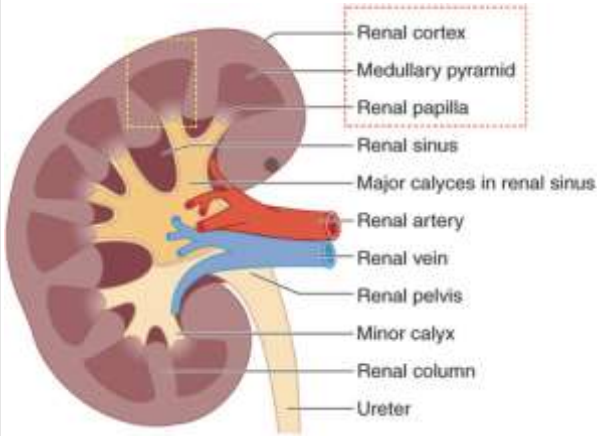


Figure source: quizlet.com

The sequence of urine flow can therefore be represented as:

Collecting ducts → Renal papilla → Minor calyx → Major calyx → Renal pelvis → Ureter → Urinary bladder → Urethra → Exterior. [5,6]

The renal pelvis is a funnel-shaped structure that continues inferiorly as the ureter. [1] Anatomical variations in the calyceal system are clinically important during procedures such as ureteroscopy and percutaneous nephrolithotomy.

10.9. NEPHRON: FUNCTIONAL UNIT OF THE KIDNEY

The nephron is the basic structural and functional unit of the kidney. [2,7] Each kidney contains approximately one million nephrons, although the number varies considerably between individuals. [1,2]

Each nephron consists of:

i. Renal corpuscle
ii. Proximal tubule
iii. Loop of Henle
iv. Distal tubule
v. Associated collecting system

The nephron is closely associated with a specialized vascular system that allows filtration and subsequent exchange between tubular fluid and blood. [2,7]

A current anatomical description identifies the major nephron components as the renal corpuscle, proximal convoluted tubule, nephron loop, distal convoluted tubule, and collecting duct, with associated afferent and efferent arterioles, peritubular capillaries, and vasa recta.

SVU

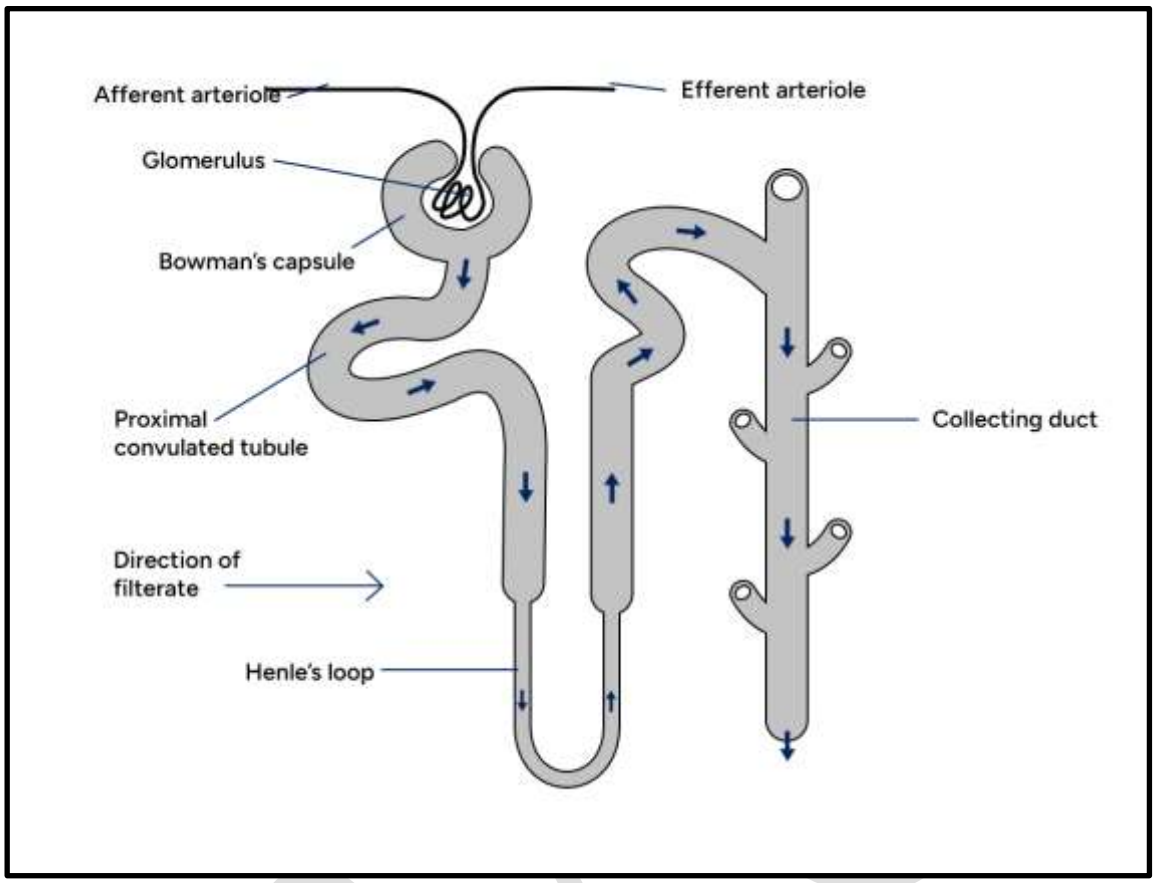


Figure source: tutoroot.com

10.10. RENAL CORPUSCLE

The renal corpuscle consists of:

- Glomerulus
- Bowman's capsule

It is the initial site of blood filtration. [2,7]

10.10.1 Glomerulus

The glomerulus is a tuft of specialized capillaries supplied by the afferent arteriole and drained by the efferent arteriole. [2,7]

This arrangement is unusual because the glomerular capillary bed lies between two arterioles rather than between an arteriole and venule. [2]

The glomerular capillary wall is highly specialized for filtration.

10.10.2 Bowman's Capsule

Bowman's capsule is a double-layered epithelial structure surrounding the glomerulus. [7]

It consists of:

- Parietal layer
- Visceral layer

- Bowman's/capsular space

The visceral layer contains specialized epithelial cells called **podocytes**. [2,7]

Blood entering through the afferent arteriole passes through the glomerular capillary network, and filtrate enters the capsular space before continuing into the proximal tubule.

10.11. GLOMERULAR FILTRATION BARRIER

The glomerular filtration barrier consists principally of three components:

1. Fenestrated glomerular endothelium
2. Glomerular basement membrane
3. Podocyte slit diaphragm

[2,7]

The barrier allows water and many small dissolved substances to pass while restricting the passage of blood cells and most large plasma proteins. [2,7]

The filtration barrier is therefore essential for the formation of an appropriate ultrafiltrate while maintaining the protein composition of circulating plasma. Damage to the filtration barrier can result in proteinuria and hematuria. [7,14]

10.12. PROXIMAL CONVOLUTED TUBULE

The proximal convoluted tubule is the first major tubular segment following the renal corpuscle. [2,7]

It is lined by cuboidal epithelial cells with a prominent brush border formed by numerous microvilli. [2] This structure greatly increases the surface area available for reabsorption.

The proximal tubule reabsorbs large quantities of:

- Water
- Sodium
- Chloride
- Bicarbonate
- Glucose
- Amino acids
- Phosphate

[2,8]

Under normal conditions, essentially all filtered glucose and amino acids are reabsorbed in the proximal tubule. [8]

The proximal tubule also participates in tubular secretion, including secretion of hydrogen ions, organic acids, organic bases, and certain medications. [2,8]

10.13. LOOP OF HENLE

The loop of Henle extends from the proximal tubule into the renal medulla and returns toward the cortex. [2,7]

It consists of:

- Descending limb
- Ascending limb

Different portions of the loop have different permeability properties. [8]

The descending limb is highly permeable to water, whereas the thick ascending limb is relatively impermeable to water and actively transports electrolytes. [8,15]

This functional arrangement contributes to the countercurrent multiplication mechanism, which establishes the medullary osmotic gradient required for concentration of urine. [8,15]

10.14. DISTAL CONVOLUTED TUBULE

The distal convoluted tubule follows the ascending limb of the loop of Henle. [2]

It contributes to the regulation of:

- Sodium balance
- Potassium balance
- Calcium balance
- Acid–base balance

[2,8]

The distal tubule also participates in the formation of the **juxtaglomerular apparatus**, an important regulatory structure involved in control of glomerular filtration and blood pressure. [8,9]

10.15. COLLECTING DUCT SYSTEM

The collecting duct receives fluid from multiple nephrons and transports it toward the renal papilla. [1,2]

Collecting ducts are particularly important in determining the final concentration and volume of urine. [8]

Their permeability to water is strongly influenced by **antidiuretic hormone (ADH)**. [8,15]
When ADH levels increase, water permeability of collecting duct principal cells increases, promoting water reabsorption and producing more concentrated urine. [8]
When ADH secretion is reduced, less water is reabsorbed and a larger volume of dilute urine may be produced.

10.16. TYPES OF NEPHRONS

Nephrons can broadly be classified into:

10.16.1 Cortical nephrons

These are predominantly located in the outer cortex and have relatively short loops of Henle. [2]

10.16.2 Juxtamedullary nephrons

These nephrons are located near the corticomedullary junction and possess long loops of Henle extending deep into the medulla. [2,15]
Juxtamedullary nephrons are particularly important for generating the medullary osmotic gradient required for production of concentrated urine. [8,15]

10.17. BLOOD SUPPLY OF THE KIDNEY

The kidneys receive a substantial proportion of cardiac output because of their role in filtration and homeostasis. [2,7]
The renal arteries arise directly from the abdominal aorta. [1,11]
The major sequence of arterial branching is:
Renal artery → Segmental arteries → Interlobar arteries → Arcuate arteries → Interlobular arteries → Afferent arterioles → Glomerular capillaries. [1,7,11]
Current anatomical descriptions emphasize that the renal artery enters through the hilum and divides into segmental, lobar, interlobar, arcuate, and interlobular branches before supplying the glomerular circulation.

10.18. EFFERENT ARTERIOLES AND PERITUBULAR CAPILLARIES

Blood leaves the glomerulus through the efferent arteriole. [2,7]
The efferent arteriole subsequently contributes to:

- Peritubular capillaries
- Vasa recta

The peritubular capillaries surround the renal tubules and facilitate exchange of water and solutes between tubular fluid and blood. [2]

The vasa recta are associated particularly with juxtamedullary nephrons and participate in maintaining the medullary concentration gradient. [8,15]

10.19. RENAL VENOUS DRAINAGE

Blood from the renal microcirculation ultimately drains into the renal veins. [11]

The renal veins empty directly into the inferior vena cava. [11,12]

The left renal vein is generally longer than the right renal vein and crosses anterior to the abdominal aorta before entering the inferior vena cava. [11]

The renal veins are clinically important because their anatomical relationships can influence vascular and surgical procedures.

10.20. NERVE SUPPLY OF THE KIDNEY

The kidneys receive autonomic innervation through the renal plexus. [11]

Sympathetic stimulation can cause renal vasoconstriction and influence renal blood flow and renin release. [8,11]

Sensory fibers from the kidney accompany sympathetic pathways and contribute to the transmission of renal pain. [11]

Renal pain may be perceived in the flank and may radiate toward the groin, particularly in conditions involving ureteric obstruction such as renal calculi. [11,16]

10.21. LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE

Renal lymphatic vessels accompany the renal vasculature and drain toward regional lymph nodes. [7,11]

Lymphatic drainage from the kidneys ultimately reaches lymphatic pathways associated with the para-aortic and paracaval regions. [11]

Knowledge of renal lymphatic drainage is important in the anatomical understanding of renal malignancy and its spread.

10.22. JUXTAGLOMERULAR APPARATUS

The juxtaglomerular apparatus (JGA) is a specialized anatomical region where the distal tubule comes into close association with the vascular pole of the renal corpuscle. [8,9]

It includes:

1. Macula densa cells
2. Juxtaglomerular cells
3. Extraglomerular mesangial cells

The JGA contributes to regulation of glomerular filtration and systemic blood pressure. [8,9]

Juxtaglomerular cells produce **renin**, an enzyme that initiates the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system. [9]

10.23. RENIN–ANGIOTENSIN–ALDOSTERONE SYSTEM

Renin is released in response to mechanisms including reduced renal perfusion, reduced sodium chloride delivery to the macula densa, and sympathetic stimulation. [8,9]

Renin converts angiotensinogen into angiotensin I, which is subsequently converted into angiotensin II. [9]

Angiotensin II:

- Promotes vasoconstriction
- Stimulates aldosterone secretion
- Promotes sodium retention
- Supports maintenance of arterial blood pressure

[8,9]

Aldosterone acts primarily on the distal nephron and collecting duct to increase sodium reabsorption and potassium secretion. [8]

10.24. URETERS

The ureters are paired muscular tubes that transport urine from the renal pelvis to the urinary bladder. [5,6]

Each ureter is approximately 25–30 cm long in adults, although dimensions vary. [5,11]

The ureter is divided anatomically into:

- Abdominal part
- Pelvic part
- Intramural part

[5,11]

Urine does not normally flow through the ureter solely because of gravity. Instead, rhythmic contractions of ureteric smooth muscle, known as **peristalsis**, propel urine toward the bladder. [5,6]

10.25. NARROWINGS OF THE URETER

The ureter has three important anatomical sites of relative narrowing:

1. Ureteropelvic junction
2. Crossing of the iliac vessels/pelvic brim
3. Ureterovesical junction

[5,6,11]

These sites are clinically important because urinary calculi may become lodged at these points. [16]

A stone obstructing the ureter can produce severe colicky pain due to ureteric smooth muscle contraction and increased pressure within the upper urinary tract. [16]

10.26. HISTOLOGY OF THE URETER

The wall of the ureter consists of three principal layers:

1. Mucosa
2. Muscular layer
3. Adventitia

[5,17]

The mucosa is lined by urothelium, also called transitional epithelium. [6,17]

Urothelium is specialized to accommodate changes in urinary tract volume while providing a relatively impermeable barrier to urine. [6]

The muscular wall generates peristaltic contractions that propel urine toward the urinary bladder. [5,17]

10.27. URINARY BLADDER

The urinary bladder is a hollow muscular organ situated within the pelvic cavity. [11,12]

Its principal functions are:

- Temporary storage of urine
- Coordination of urine elimination

[5,6]

The bladder expands as urine accumulates and can accommodate changing volumes because of the specialized properties of its wall.



Figure source: qaqooking.wiki

10.28. PARTS OF THE URINARY BLADDER

The urinary bladder can be described anatomically in terms of:

- Apex
- Body
- Fundus/base
- Neck

[11,12]

The **trigone** is a triangular region on the internal surface of the bladder formed by the two ureteric openings and the internal urethral opening. [11]

The trigone has particular clinical significance because it is relatively fixed compared with the more mobile portions of the bladder.

10.29. DETRUSOR MUSCLE

The main muscular component of the urinary bladder is called the **detrusor muscle**. [5,6]

It is composed primarily of smooth muscle arranged in interwoven bundles. [5]

During bladder filling, the detrusor remains relatively relaxed, allowing storage of urine. During micturition, coordinated contraction of the detrusor assists in expelling urine through the urethra. [6,18]

10.30. URETHRA

The urethra is the terminal component of the urinary tract and provides a passageway for urine from the bladder to the exterior. [5,11]

The anatomy differs considerably between males and females.

10.30.1. Female urethra

The female urethra is relatively short and opens anterior to the vaginal opening. [11,12]

Because of its shorter length and anatomical relationship to the perineal region, ascending urinary tract infections are relatively common in females. [19]

10.30.2. Male urethra

The male urethra is considerably longer and serves as a common pathway for urinary and reproductive secretions. [11,12]

It is divided into:

- Prostatic urethra
- Membranous urethra
- Spongy/penile urethra

[11]

10.31. HISTOLOGY OF THE URINARY TRACT

The urinary tract has a specialized epithelial lining known as **urothelium** or transitional epithelium. [6,17]

Urothelium is found principally in:

- Renal calyces
- Renal pelvis
- Ureters
- Urinary bladder
- Proximal portion of the urethra

[6,17]

The epithelial cells can change shape as the urinary tract expands and contracts. [17]

The superficial cells are often referred to as **umbrella cells** because of their characteristic morphology and role in forming a protective barrier against urine. [17]

10.32. URINE FORMATION

Urine formation involves three major processes:

1. Glomerular filtration
2. Tubular reabsorption
3. Tubular secretion

[2,8]

10.32.1. Glomerular filtration

Blood plasma is filtered through the glomerular filtration barrier into Bowman's space. [2,7]

10.32.2. Tubular reabsorption

Useful substances are selectively transported from tubular fluid back into the bloodstream. [2,8]

10.32.3. Tubular secretion

Selected substances are transported from blood into the tubular lumen for eventual elimination. [2,8]

The final urine composition therefore differs considerably from the original glomerular filtrate.

10.33. GLOMERULAR FILTRATION RATE

The **glomerular filtration rate (GFR)** represents the volume of filtrate produced by all functioning glomeruli per unit time. [2,20]

In healthy adults, GFR is commonly around **120 mL/min**, although it varies according to age, sex, body size, and other factors. [20]

This corresponds to approximately 170–180 litres of filtrate per day, most of which is subsequently reabsorbed. [2]

Current anatomical reviews similarly describe approximately 120 mL/min as a representative normal GFR and emphasize that most filtered fluid is reabsorbed before final urine formation.

10.34. REGULATION OF WATER BALANCE

The kidneys play a central role in maintaining body water balance. [8,15]

Water reabsorption occurs throughout the nephron but is particularly regulated in the distal nephron and collecting duct. [8]

Antidiuretic hormone (ADH) increases water permeability of collecting ducts by promoting insertion of aquaporin-2 water channels into the apical membrane of principal cells. [8,15]

This mechanism allows the kidneys to conserve water when body fluid osmolality rises or circulating volume decreases.

10.35. REGULATION OF ELECTROLYTES

The kidneys regulate several important electrolytes, including:

- Sodium
- Potassium

- Calcium
- Phosphate
- Chloride
- Magnesium

[2,8]

Sodium regulation is particularly important because sodium contributes significantly to extracellular fluid volume and therefore influences blood pressure. [8,9]

Potassium balance is also critically dependent on renal function. Abnormal renal function may result in potassium retention and potentially life-threatening hyperkalemia. [8]

10.36. ACID–BASE REGULATION

The kidneys maintain acid–base balance by:

- Reabsorbing filtered bicarbonate
- Secreting hydrogen ions
- Producing new bicarbonate
- Excreting titratable acids
- Excreting ammonium

[2,8]

The proximal tubule plays a major role in bicarbonate reabsorption, whereas distal nephron segments contribute substantially to final urinary acidification. [8]

Renal failure can therefore produce metabolic acidosis because the kidneys become unable to adequately excrete acid and maintain bicarbonate levels.

10.37. ENDOCRINE FUNCTIONS OF THE KIDNEY

The kidneys are important endocrine organs. [2,10]

Major endocrine functions include:

a) Erythropoietin production

Renal interstitial cells produce erythropoietin in response to reduced oxygen availability. [10]

Erythropoietin stimulates erythropoiesis in the bone marrow.

b) Vitamin D activation

The kidney converts 25-hydroxyvitamin D into the biologically active form 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D (calcitriol). [10]

Calcitriol contributes to calcium and phosphate homeostasis.

c) Renin production

Renin is produced by juxtaglomerular cells and participates in blood pressure regulation. [9]

10.38. CONCENTRATION OF URINE

The ability to produce concentrated urine depends on several coordinated anatomical and physiological mechanisms. [8,15]

These include:

- Loop of Henle
- Countercurrent multiplication
- Vasa recta
- Medullary osmotic gradient
- ADH
- Collecting ducts [8,15]

The long loops of Henle in juxtamedullary nephrons contribute significantly to the establishment of the medullary concentration gradient. [15]

The vasa recta help preserve this gradient through countercurrent exchange.

10.39. MICTURITION

Micturition is the process of emptying the urinary bladder. [6,18]

Bladder filling causes progressive stretching of the bladder wall. Sensory receptors detect this stretch and transmit information through neural pathways to the spinal cord and higher centers. [18]

Micturition involves coordinated activity of:

- Detrusor muscle
- Internal urethral sphincter
- External urethral sphincter
- Autonomic nervous system
- Somatic nervous system
- Higher brain centers [6,18]

The parasympathetic nervous system promotes detrusor contraction and bladder emptying.[18]

10.40. DEVELOPMENT OF THE URINARY SYSTEM

The urinary system develops primarily from the intermediate mesoderm during embryogenesis. [21,22]

Three successive kidney systems are recognized during development:

1. Pronephros
2. Mesonephros
3. Metanephros

[21,22]

The metanephros becomes the definitive kidney. [21]

The ureteric bud and metanephric mesenchyme interact through reciprocal induction to produce the collecting system and nephron structures. [21,22]

The ureteric bud gives rise to structures including:

- Ureter
- Renal pelvis
- Major calyces
- Minor calyces
- Collecting ducts

[21]

The metanephric mesenchyme contributes to the nephron components. [21,22]

10.41. ASCENT OF THE KIDNEYS

During embryonic development, the kidneys initially develop in the pelvic region and subsequently move superiorly to their final abdominal position. [21,22]

As the kidneys ascend, their vascular supply changes, with transient vessels developing and subsequently regressing while more definitive renal arteries form. [1,21]

Abnormalities of renal ascent and rotation can result in congenital anomalies such as:

- Horseshoe kidney
- Pelvic kidney
- Malrotation
- Ectopic kidney [1,21]

10.42. CLINICAL ANATOMY OF THE URINARY SYSTEM

The anatomical organization of the urinary system has direct clinical significance. [11,16]

Common disorders involving the urinary system include:

- Urinary tract infection
- Renal calculi
- Hydronephrosis

- Glomerulonephritis
- Nephrotic syndrome
- Acute kidney injury
- Chronic kidney disease
- Polycystic kidney disease
- Urinary obstruction
- Urinary incontinence
- Renal and bladder tumors [14,16,19,23]

10.43. RENAL CALCULI

Renal calculi, commonly called **kidney stones**, are solid crystalline deposits that develop within the urinary system. [16]

They may consist of substances such as:

- Calcium oxalate
- Calcium phosphate
- Uric acid
- Struvite
- Cystine [16,24]

A stone may remain in the kidney or enter the ureter. When it obstructs urinary flow, it may produce severe colicky pain, hematuria, nausea, and vomiting. [16]

The anatomical narrowings of the ureter are common sites for stone impaction.

10.44. URINARY TRACT INFECTIONS

Urinary tract infections may involve different regions of the urinary system. [19]

They are commonly classified as:

- Urethritis
- Cystitis
- Ureteritis
- Pyelitis
- Pyelonephritis [19]

Cystitis refers primarily to infection or inflammation of the urinary bladder, whereas **pyelonephritis** involves the renal pelvis and renal parenchyma. [19]

Most uncomplicated bacterial urinary tract infections are caused by organisms originating from the gastrointestinal/perineal flora, with *Escherichia coli* being a major pathogen. [19]

10.45. HYDRONEPHROSIS

Hydronephrosis refers to dilation of the renal pelvis and calyces due to obstruction of urinary flow. [16,25]

Possible causes include:

- Renal calculi
- Ureteric obstruction
- Congenital abnormalities
- Tumors
- Prostatic enlargement
- Urethral obstruction [16,25]

Persistent obstruction can increase pressure within the urinary tract and eventually damage renal tissue.

10.46. ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY

Acute kidney injury is characterized by an abrupt reduction in renal function. [23]

It may result from:

- Reduced renal perfusion
- Direct renal injury
- Urinary tract obstruction [23]

These are often classified as:

Prerenal → Intrinsic renal → Postrenal causes.

Renal dysfunction can result in accumulation of metabolic waste products, electrolyte abnormalities, acid–base disturbances, and fluid imbalance. [23]

10.47. CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE

Chronic kidney disease involves persistent abnormalities of kidney structure or function that have implications for health. [23,26]

Major causes include:

- Diabetes mellitus
- Hypertension
- Glomerular diseases
- Hereditary kidney disorders
- Chronic obstruction [23,26]

Progressive loss of nephron function can ultimately lead to end-stage kidney disease requiring renal replacement therapy.

10.48. POLYCYSTIC KIDNEY DISEASE

Polycystic kidney disease is a genetic disorder characterized by the development of multiple cysts in the kidneys. [27]

The cysts may progressively enlarge and compromise normal renal architecture and function.

Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease is one of the most important inherited renal disorders in adults and may also involve organs outside the kidney. [27]

10.49. RENAL TRANSPLANTATION AND APPLIED ANATOMY

Knowledge of renal vascular anatomy is essential for kidney transplantation and renal surgery. [1,11]

The presence of accessory renal arteries is relatively common and must be carefully considered during surgical procedures. [1]

The renal arteries are functionally important end-arterial vessels, meaning that interruption of a segmental artery may result in ischemia of the corresponding renal segment. [1]

The anatomical relationship between the renal vessels, renal pelvis, ureter, and surrounding structures is therefore critical in operative planning.

10.50. CLINICAL IMPORTANCE OF URINALYSIS

Urine examination provides important information about renal and urinary tract function. [28]

Common parameters assessed during urinalysis include:

- Colour
- Appearance
- pH
- Specific gravity
- Protein
- Glucose
- Ketones
- Blood
- Bilirubin
- Urobilinogen
- Nitrite

- Leukocyte esterase [28]

Microscopic examination may detect:

- Red blood cells
- White blood cells
- Epithelial cells
- Casts
- Crystals
- Microorganisms [28]

Thus, the anatomical and physiological knowledge of the urinary system provides an essential foundation for interpreting laboratory findings in renal disease.

10.51. IMPORTANT ANATOMICAL RELATIONSHIPS

The kidneys have important relationships with surrounding structures.

- **Right kidney**

The right kidney is related anteriorly to structures including the liver, duodenum, and portions of the colon. [11,12]

- **Left kidney**

The left kidney has anterior relationships with structures including the stomach, spleen, pancreas, and colon. [11,12]

Posteriorly, both kidneys are related to structures including the diaphragm, psoas major, quadratus lumborum, and transversus abdominis muscles. [11,12]

These relationships are important during renal surgery, trauma assessment, and interpretation of imaging studies.

10.52. SUMMARY OF URINE FLOW

The complete anatomical pathway of urine can be summarized as:

Nephron → Collecting duct → Papillary duct → Renal papilla → Minor calyx → Major calyx → Renal pelvis → Ureter → Urinary bladder → Urethra → External environment. [1,5,6]

This pathway illustrates the integration between the microscopic components of the kidney and the macroscopic urinary tract.

10.53. STRUCTURE–FUNCTION RELATIONSHIP

The urinary system demonstrates an excellent example of the principle that anatomical structure determines physiological function. [1,2]

The large blood supply of the kidneys facilitates filtration. [7] The specialized glomerular filtration barrier allows selective passage of plasma constituents. [2,7] The highly differentiated nephron segments permit selective reabsorption and secretion. [8] The loop of Henle and collecting duct system allow regulation of urine concentration. [8,15]

The muscular walls of the ureters facilitate urine transport through peristalsis. [5] The expandable urinary bladder allows temporary urine storage, while coordinated neural control enables micturition. [6,18]

Thus, the urinary system is not simply an excretory system but an integrated anatomical and physiological network responsible for maintaining the stability of the internal environment.

10.54. CONCLUSION

The urinary system is a highly specialized anatomical and physiological system that maintains the chemical and fluid environment necessary for normal cellular function. The kidneys are its principal organs and perform filtration, selective reabsorption, secretion, endocrine regulation, and homeostatic control. [1–4]

The structural organization of the kidneys—from the renal cortex and medulla to the microscopic nephron—provides the anatomical basis for urine formation and regulation of body fluids. [2,7] The renal corpuscle performs filtration, while specialized tubular segments modify the filtrate through precisely regulated processes of reabsorption and secretion. [2,8]

The urinary tract, consisting of the renal collecting system, ureters, bladder, and urethra, provides an efficient pathway for urine transport, storage, and elimination. [5,6] The muscular and epithelial specializations of these structures ensure that urine can be transported without significant backflow while allowing temporary storage and controlled elimination.

The urinary system also demonstrates the close integration between anatomy, physiology, histology, embryology, and clinical medicine. [1,11,21] Understanding its structure is therefore fundamental not only to anatomy but also to physiology, pathology, medical laboratory science, radiology, surgery, nephrology, urology, and allied health sciences.

REFERENCES

1. Garza FA, Leslie SW. Anatomy, Abdomen and Pelvis: Kidneys. *StatPearls [Internet]*. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; updated 2025. (NCBI)

2. Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 14th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2021.

3. Tortora GJ, Derrickson B. *Principles of Anatomy and Physiology*. 16th ed. Hoboken: Wiley; 2021.

4. Boron WF, Boulpaep EL. *Medical Physiology*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2017.

5. Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 14th ed. Chapter on renal physiology and micturition. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2021.

6. Costanzo LS. *Physiology*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2022.

7. Murray IV, Paolini MA. Histology, Kidney and Glomerulus. *StatPearls [Internet]*. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2023. (NCBI)

8. Koeppen BM, Stanton BA. *Renal Physiology*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.

9. Leslie SW, Sajjad H. Anatomy, Abdomen and Pelvis, Renal Artery. *StatPearls [Internet]*. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing. (NCBI)

10. Barrett KE, Barman SM, Brooks HL, Yuan JXJ. *Ganong's Review of Medical Physiology*. 26th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2019.

11. Standring S, editor. *Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice*. 42nd ed. London: Elsevier; 2020.

12. Moore KL, Dalley AF, Agur AMR. *Clinically Oriented Anatomy*. 9th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer; 2023.

13. Ross MH, Pawlina W. *Histology: A Text and Atlas*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer; 2020.

14. Kumar V, Abbas AK, Aster JC. *Robbins and Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease*. 10th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2020.

15. Silverthorn DU. *Human Physiology: An Integrated Approach*. 8th ed. Pearson; 2019.

16. Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Partin AW, Peters CA, editors. *Campbell-Walsh-Wein Urology*. 12th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2021.

17. Mescher AL. *Junqueira's Basic Histology: Text and Atlas*. 16th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2021.

18. StatPearls. Physiology, Urination. *StatPearls [Internet]*. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing. (NCBI)

19. Flores-Mireles AL, Walker JN, Caparon M, Hultgren SJ. Urinary tract infections: epidemiology, mechanisms of infection and treatment options. *Nature Reviews Microbiology*. 2015;13:269–284.

20. Levey AS, Stevens LA, Schmid CH, et al. A new equation to estimate glomerular filtration rate. *Annals of Internal Medicine*. 2009;150:604–612.

21. Sadler TW. *Langman's Medical Embryology*. 14th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer; 2019.

22. Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. *The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology*. 11th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2020.

23. KDIGO. KDIGO 2024 Clinical Practice Guideline for the Evaluation and Management of Chronic Kidney Disease. *Kidney International*. 2024.

24. Moe OW. Kidney stones: pathophysiology and medical management. *The Lancet*. 2006;367:333–344.

25. Campbell MF, Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, et al. *Campbell-Walsh Urology*. Philadelphia: Elsevier.

26. Levey AS, Coresh J. Chronic kidney disease. *The Lancet*. 2012;379:165–180.

27. Torres VE, Harris PC, Pirson Y. Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *The Lancet*. 2007;369:1287–1301.

28. McPherson RA, Pincus MR, editors. *Henry's Clinical Diagnosis and Management by Laboratory Methods*. 24th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2021.

29. Burtis CA, Bruns DE, editors. *Tietz Fundamentals of Clinical Chemistry and Molecular Diagnostics*. 8th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2019.

30. McCance KL, Huether SE, Brashers VL, Rote NS. *Pathophysiology: The Biologic Basis for Disease in Adults and Children*. 9th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2023.

31. National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases. *Your Kidneys and How They Work*. National Institutes of Health.

32. National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases. *Urinary Tract and How It Works*. National Institutes of Health.

33. American Urological Association. *Medical Management of Kidney Stones: AUA Guideline*. American Urological Association.

34. Leslie SW, Sajjad H. Renal artery anatomy and clinical considerations. *StatPearls [Internet]*. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing. (NCBI)

35. Murray IV, Paolini MA. Kidney and glomerular histology. *StatPearls [Internet]*. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing. (NCBI)

CONTENT

- Chapter 11 -

The Nervous System and Special Senses

11.1 Abstract……...217

11.2 Introduction to the Nervous System…….217

11.3 Scope and Importance of the Nervous System……218

11.4 Organization of the Nervous System……219

11.5 Central Nervous System……219

11.6 Peripheral Nervous System……220

11.7 Autonomic Nervous System……...222

11.8 Neurons and Neuroglia……...222

11.9 Nerve Impulse and Synaptic Transmission……...223

11.10 Meninges and Cerebrospinal Fluid……..223

11.11 Major Parts of the Brain……..224

11.12 Spinal Cord and Reflex Activity……..226

11.13 Special Senses: An Introduction……226

11.14 Eye and Vision……....226

11.15 Ear and Hearing…….227

11.16 Vestibular Apparatus and Balance……...…227

11.17 Smell and Olfaction……228

11.18 Taste and Gustation……...228

11.19 Receptors and Sensory Pathways…….229

11.20 Clinical Importance and Laboratory Diagnosis……..229

11.21 Conclusion……...230

References……230

Chapter 11

The Nervous System and Special Senses

Ankur Adak

Department of Medical Laboratory Technology, School of Allied Health Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Telinipara, Barasat-Barrackpore Rd, Bara Kanthalia, West Bengal-700121, India

11.1. ABSTRACT

The nervous system is the principal coordinating and communication system of the human body. It receives information from the internal and external environment, processes sensory input, generates appropriate responses, and regulates voluntary and involuntary activities. Together with the endocrine system, it maintains homeostasis and allows the body to adapt to changing conditions. The nervous system is broadly divided into the central nervous system, consisting of the brain and spinal cord, and the peripheral nervous system, consisting of nerves and associated ganglia.

Special senses provide highly specialized forms of sensory information. Vision, hearing, equilibrium, smell, and taste depend on receptor cells and neural pathways that convert physical or chemical stimuli into electrical signals. These signals are transmitted to specific regions of the central nervous system where they are interpreted as meaningful sensations. The functional integrity of these systems is therefore essential for communication, movement, orientation, protection, and interaction with the environment.

This chapter introduces undergraduate Medical Laboratory Technology (MLT) students to the basic organization and functions of the nervous system and special senses. It discusses neurons and neuroglia, nerve impulse transmission, the brain and spinal cord, peripheral and autonomic nerves, cerebrospinal fluid, sensory receptors, and the anatomy and physiology of the eye, ear, olfactory system, and taste system. Particular emphasis is placed on concepts relevant to laboratory medicine, neurological disease, specimen handling, and diagnostic investigations.

11.2. INTRODUCTION TO THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

The nervous system is an integrated network of specialized cells, tissues, and organs responsible for rapid communication and coordination throughout the body (Kiernan and

Barr 2009). It detects changes in the environment through sensory receptors, transmits information through nerves, interprets signals in the central nervous system, and produces motor or autonomic responses. This organization allows the body to respond rapidly to both internal and external stimuli (Burnham 1917).

Functionally, nervous activity can be considered under three broad processes: sensory input, integration, and motor output (Kandel et al. 2021). Sensory receptors detect changes such as light, sound, temperature, pressure, pain, and chemical composition. The central nervous system processes these signals and determines an appropriate response. Motor output is then transmitted to skeletal muscles, smooth muscles, cardiac muscle, or glands (Purves et al. 2018).

The nervous system also participates in higher functions such as consciousness, learning, memory, emotion, language, reasoning, and voluntary movement (Squire et al. 2012). Disturbance of neural structure or function can therefore produce a wide range of clinical manifestations, including weakness, altered sensation, seizures, impaired coordination, loss of vision or hearing, and changes in cognition (Kiernan and Barr 2009).

11.3. SCOPE AND IMPORTANCE OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

The study of the nervous system includes neuroanatomy, neurophysiology, sensory physiology, motor control, autonomic regulation, and neurological pathology (Purves et al. 2018). It overlaps with anatomy, physiology, histology, biochemistry, immunology, microbiology, pharmacology, and molecular biology. Modern neuroscience also incorporates electrophysiology, neuroimaging, molecular diagnostics, and genetic investigations (Kandel et al. 2021).

For MLT professionals, knowledge of the nervous system is important because several laboratory investigations contribute to the diagnosis and monitoring of neurological disease (Seeley et al. 2019). Analysis of cerebrospinal fluid, biochemical assessment, microbiological examination, immunological testing, molecular assays, and selected cytological studies may provide valuable diagnostic information (Deisenhammer et al. 2006).

Understanding normal nervous-system structure and function helps laboratory personnel appreciate the significance of abnormal findings (Seeley et al. 2019). Conditions such as meningitis, encephalitis, multiple sclerosis, neurodegenerative disorders, metabolic encephalopathy, and inherited neurological diseases may require laboratory support (Seeley et al. 2019, Deisenhammer et al. 2006). Correct specimen collection, processing, analysis, and reporting are essential for reliable results (Burnham 1917, Deisenhammer et al. 2006).

11.4. ORGANIZATION OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

The nervous system is anatomically divided into the central nervous system (CNS) and peripheral nervous system (PNS) (Kiernan and Barr 2009). The CNS consists of the brain and spinal cord and serves as the major site of integration and control. The PNS includes cranial nerves, spinal nerves, peripheral ganglia, and sensory receptors that connect the CNS with the rest of the body (Standring 2020).

The PNS can also be divided functionally into the somatic and autonomic nervous systems (Purves et al. 2018). The somatic system is primarily associated with conscious sensation and voluntary control of skeletal muscles. The autonomic nervous system regulates involuntary functions such as heart rate, vascular tone, gastrointestinal activity, glandular secretion, and pupil size (Saper 2002).

The autonomic system is commonly described as sympathetic, parasympathetic, and enteric divisions (Saper 2002, Furness 2012). These divisions interact continuously rather than functioning as completely independent systems. Their coordinated activity helps maintain internal stability while allowing the body to respond appropriately to stress, rest, feeding, exercise, and environmental changes (Saper 2002).

11.5. CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

The central nervous system consists of the brain and spinal cord. It receives and integrates sensory information, generates motor commands, and coordinates complex physiological and behavioural functions (Kandel et al. 2021). The CNS contains neurons, supporting neuroglial cells, blood vessels, connective tissue-associated structures, and specialized barriers that protect neural tissue (Kiernan and Barr 2009).

The brain is enclosed within the skull, while the spinal cord is protected by the vertebral column. Both are surrounded by the meninges and bathed by cerebrospinal fluid (Standring 2020). Despite this protection, nervous tissue is vulnerable to trauma, infection, hypoxia, toxins, metabolic disturbances, and vascular injury (Deisenhammer et al. 2006).

CNS organization includes grey matter, which contains neuronal cell bodies, dendrites, and supporting cells, and white matter, which is rich in myelinated axons (Kiernan and Barr 2009). Their arrangement differs between the brain and spinal cord and contributes to the organization of neural pathways (Purves et al. 2018).

11.5.1. Brain

The brain is the principal organ of the nervous system and controls sensory processing, movement, autonomic functions, cognition, emotion, and many endocrine-related activities

(Kandel et al. 2021). Major divisions include the cerebrum, diencephalon, brainstem, and cerebellum (Standring 2020). Each division contains specialized regions that communicate through extensive neural pathways.

The cerebrum is associated with conscious perception, voluntary movement, language, memory, reasoning, and higher mental activity (Squire et al. 2012). The diencephalon includes structures involved in sensory relay, autonomic regulation, endocrine control, and biological rhythms (Saper 2002). The brainstem contains important pathways and nuclei that participate in vital functions (Standring 2020).

The cerebellum contributes to coordination, posture, balance, and motor learning (Ito 2002). Although the brain is often described in separate anatomical divisions, its functions depend on continuous communication among multiple regions rather than isolated activity of individual structures (Kandel et al. 2021).

11.5.2. Spinal Cord

The spinal cord is a long cylindrical structure extending from the lower brainstem through the vertebral canal (Standring 2020). It serves as a major pathway for communication between the brain and peripheral tissues. Ascending tracts carry sensory information toward the brain, while descending tracts transmit motor commands to the spinal cord and peripheral effectors (Purves et al. 2018).

The spinal cord is organized into cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacral, and coccygeal segments (Kiernan and Barr 2009). Each segment is associated with spinal nerves that connect the CNS with specific regions of the body. Internally, grey matter is arranged centrally around the spinal canal, while white matter occupies the surrounding region (Standring 2020).

In addition to conducting information, the spinal cord contains neural circuits capable of producing reflex responses (Bear et al. 2020). These reflexes can occur rapidly without requiring conscious processing of every step, although higher brain centres can influence many spinal reflex activities (Purves et al. 2018).

11.6. PERIPHERAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

The peripheral nervous system consists of neural structures outside the brain and spinal cord (Kiernan and Barr 2009). It provides the communication network through which sensory information reaches the CNS and motor commands reach muscles and glands. Major components include cranial nerves, spinal nerves, peripheral nerves, ganglia, and sensory receptors (Standring 2020).

Peripheral nerves contain bundles of axons supported by connective tissue layers and associated Schwann cells (Jessen and Mirsky 2005). Depending on their function, nerves may carry sensory fibres, motor fibres, or a combination of both. Damage to peripheral nerves can therefore cause sensory loss, weakness, altered reflexes, pain, or autonomic disturbances (Purves et al. 2018).

The PNS also has considerable clinical importance in laboratory medicine because neurological disorders may involve infectious, inflammatory, metabolic, toxic, nutritional, or hereditary mechanisms (Deisenhammer et al. 2006). A clear understanding of peripheral pathways assists in correlating laboratory findings with clinical manifestations (Seeley et al. 2019).

11.6.1. Cranial Nerves

Cranial nerves arise from the brain or brainstem and are traditionally described as twelve pairs (Standring 2020). They carry sensory, motor, or mixed fibres and serve the head and neck as well as selected thoracic and abdominal structures (Kiernan and Barr 2009). Important functions include smell, vision, eye movement, facial sensation, facial expression, hearing, balance, swallowing, speech, and autonomic regulation (Purves et al. 2018).

The olfactory and optic nerves are primarily associated with smell and vision respectively (Doty 2015, Hubel 1988). Other cranial nerves control eye movements, facial sensation and expression, hearing and equilibrium, tongue movement, swallowing, and parasympathetic functions (Standring 2020). The vagus nerve has extensive distribution and contributes to autonomic regulation of thoracic and abdominal organs (Saper 2002).

Assessment of cranial-nerve function can provide useful information about the location of neurological lesions (Kiernan and Barr 2009). Laboratory findings may then support the investigation of infectious, inflammatory, metabolic, or other causes of neurological dysfunction (Deisenhammer et al. 2006).

11.6.2. Spinal Nerves

Spinal nerves arise from the spinal cord and connect the CNS with the trunk and limbs (Standring 2020). They are formed by the union of dorsal and ventral roots. Dorsal roots carry sensory information toward the spinal cord, while ventral roots carry motor information away from the spinal cord (Kiernan and Barr 2009).

After leaving the vertebral canal, many spinal nerves divide into branches and contribute to nerve plexuses. Major plexuses include the cervical, brachial, lumbar, and sacral plexuses (Standring 2020). These networks allow fibres from different spinal segments to combine and reach muscles and skin in an organized manner (Purves et al. 2018).

Spinal nerve dysfunction may produce characteristic patterns of pain, sensory loss, muscle weakness, and altered reflexes (Kiernan and Barr 2009). Such patterns can help clinicians determine whether a problem involves a nerve root, plexus, peripheral nerve, or central pathway (Purves et al. 2018).

11.7. AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

The autonomic nervous system regulates involuntary physiological activities and maintains internal homeostasis (Saper 2002). It controls smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands and influences functions such as heart rate, blood pressure, gastrointestinal motility, pupil diameter, sweating, and urinary activity (Purves et al. 2018).

The sympathetic division generally supports responses associated with alertness and increased physiological demand, whereas the parasympathetic division is prominent during rest, digestion, and energy conservation (Saper 2002). The enteric nervous system contains extensive neural networks within the gastrointestinal tract and coordinates many aspects of intestinal function (Furness 2012).

Autonomic responses are controlled through interactions among the hypothalamus, brainstem, spinal cord, peripheral ganglia, and visceral organs (Saper 2002). Disturbance of autonomic regulation can occur in metabolic, neurodegenerative, toxic, infectious, and hereditary conditions and may affect multiple organ systems (Deisenhammer et al. 2006).

11.8. NEURONS AND NEUROGLIA

Neurons are specialized excitable cells responsible for receiving, processing, and transmitting information (Kandel et al. 2021). A typical neuron contains a cell body, dendrites, and an axon. Dendrites primarily receive signals, while the axon conducts electrical activity away from the cell body toward other neurons or effector cells (Purves et al. 2018).

Neurons communicate through electrical changes in their membranes and chemical or electrical synapses (Bear et al. 2020). The structure of a neuron varies according to its function and location. Sensory neurons, motor neurons, and interneurons form interconnected circuits that permit information to move through the nervous system (Kiernan and Barr 2009).

Neuroglia provide structural, metabolic, protective, and functional support for neurons (Jessen and Mirsky 2005). Important glial cells include astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, microglia, and ependymal cells in the CNS, and Schwann cells and satellite cells in the PNS

(Kiernan and Barr 2009). Glial dysfunction can contribute to neurological disease and may influence neural repair and inflammation (Jessen and Mirsky 2005).

11.9. NERVE IMPULSE AND SYNAPTIC TRANSMISSION

A nerve impulse is an electrical signal produced by changes in the membrane potential of an excitable cell (Bear et al. 2020). The resting membrane potential is maintained by ion gradients and selective membrane permeability. When an adequate stimulus reaches threshold, voltage-dependent ion channels produce an action potential that propagates along the axon (Purves et al. 2018).

In myelinated fibres, action potentials are conducted rapidly by saltatory conduction between nodes of Ranvier (Bear et al. 2020). Myelin in the CNS is produced mainly by oligodendrocytes, whereas Schwann cells form myelin in the PNS (Jessen and Mirsky 2005). Damage to myelin can impair conduction and produce neurological dysfunction (Kiernan and Barr 2009).

At chemical synapses, arrival of an action potential causes release of neurotransmitter from the presynaptic terminal (Kandel et al. 2021). The neurotransmitter crosses the synaptic cleft and interacts with receptors on the postsynaptic membrane. Depending on the receptor and neurotransmitter, the resulting effect may be excitatory or inhibitory (Bear et al. 2020).

11.10. MENINGES AND CEREBROSPINAL FLUID

The brain and spinal cord are surrounded by three protective connective-tissue membranes called the meninges: dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater (Standring 2020). These layers protect neural tissue and provide structural relationships with blood vessels and cerebrospinal fluid spaces (Kiernan and Barr 2009).

Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) is a clear fluid that circulates around the brain and spinal cord and within the ventricular system (Deisenhammer et al. 2006). It provides mechanical protection, contributes to the chemical environment of neural tissue, and participates in transport and clearance processes (Seeley et al. 2019). CSF is produced mainly by the choroid plexuses and circulates through the ventricles and subarachnoid space (Standring 2020).

CSF examination is particularly important in laboratory diagnosis (Deisenhammer et al. 2006). Analysis may include appearance, cell count and differential, protein, glucose, microbiological studies, and selected immunological or molecular tests (Deisenhammer et al. 2006, Seeley et al. 2019). Results must always be interpreted with clinical findings and appropriate specimen-handling information (Deisenhammer et al. 2006).

11.11. MAJOR PARTS OF THE BRAIN

The brain contains multiple interconnected regions with specialized structural and functional roles (Kandel et al. 2021). For study purposes, the major divisions are the cerebrum, diencephalon, brainstem, and cerebellum (Standring 2020). Deep nuclei, limbic structures, ventricular spaces, and extensive white-matter pathways connect these regions (Kiernan and Barr 2009).

The cerebral hemispheres are divided into lobes that participate in different but overlapping functions (Squire et al. 2012). Subcortical structures contribute to movement, emotion, motivation, memory, and autonomic activity (Bear et al. 2020). The brainstem provides pathways between the brain and spinal cord and contains nuclei important for cranial-nerve functions and vital physiological control (Standring 2020).

The coordinated operation of these regions allows sensory information to be recognized, motor activity to be planned and executed, and internal physiological functions to be adjusted continuously (Kandel et al. 2021).

11.11.1. Cerebrum

The cerebrum forms the largest part of the human brain and consists of two cerebral hemispheres connected by commissural fibres, particularly the corpus callosum (Standring 2020). Its outer cerebral cortex contains extensive grey matter organized into functional regions. Beneath the cortex lies white matter containing pathways that connect cortical and subcortical areas (Kiernan and Barr 2009).

The frontal lobe contributes to voluntary motor control, planning, behaviour, decision-making, and aspects of language (Squire et al. 2012). The parietal lobe is important for somatic sensation and spatial processing (Purves et al. 2018). The temporal lobe participates in hearing, memory, language comprehension, and emotional processing, while the occipital lobe is primarily associated with visual processing (Hubel 1988, Squire et al. 2012).

Different cortical areas communicate continuously. Therefore, complex activities such as reading, speaking, recognizing objects, and coordinated movement depend on networks rather than a single isolated cortical location (Kandel et al. 2021).

11.11.2. Diencephalon

The diencephalon lies between the cerebrum and brainstem and includes the thalamus, hypothalamus, epithalamus, and related structures (Standring 2020). The thalamus serves as a major relay centre for many sensory and motor pathways and participates in attention and consciousness (Purves et al. 2018).

The hypothalamus plays an important role in homeostasis (Saper 2002). It contributes to regulation of body temperature, hunger, thirst, fluid balance, circadian rhythms, autonomic activity, and endocrine function through its relationship with the pituitary gland (Saper 2002, Seeley et al. 2019). These functions link neural control with hormonal regulation.

Because of its broad regulatory role, dysfunction of diencephalic structures may affect several physiological systems simultaneously, including sleep, appetite, temperature regulation, endocrine activity, and autonomic responses (Saper 2002).

11.11.3. Brainstem

The brainstem consists of the midbrain, pons, and medulla oblongata (Standring 2020). It forms a major communication route between the cerebrum, cerebellum, and spinal cord (Kiernan and Barr 2009). Several cranial-nerve nuclei are located within the brainstem, and it contains pathways involved in motor and sensory functions (Purves et al. 2018).

The medulla contains centres that participate in cardiovascular and respiratory regulation, while the pons contributes to communication among different brain regions and participates in respiratory and cranial-nerve functions (Standring 2020). The midbrain is involved in motor control, visual and auditory reflexes, and arousal (Purves et al. 2018).

Because the brainstem contains pathways and centres essential for life, injury or disease in this region can produce severe neurological consequences (Kiernan and Barr 2009). Clinical assessment and appropriate laboratory investigation are therefore particularly important (Deisenhammer et al. 2006).

11.11.4. Cerebellum

The cerebellum is located posterior to the brainstem and is associated mainly with coordination of movement, maintenance of posture, muscle tone, and balance (Ito 2002). It receives information about intended movements and sensory feedback and compares these signals to improve the accuracy of motor activity (Purves et al. 2018).

The cerebellar cortex is organized into functional regions and communicates extensively with the brainstem and cerebral cortex (Standring 2020). It does not normally initiate voluntary movement but helps make movement smooth, coordinated, and appropriately timed (Ito 2002).

Cerebellar dysfunction may cause ataxia, impaired balance, abnormal coordination, intention tremor, and disturbances of gait (Kiernan and Barr 2009). Recognition of these patterns is useful when correlating neurological examination with laboratory and imaging findings (Seeley et al. 2019).

11.12. SPINAL CORD AND REFLEX ACTIVITY

A reflex is a rapid, relatively automatic response to a stimulus (Bear et al. 2020). A typical reflex arc includes a sensory receptor, sensory neuron, central integration region, motor neuron, and effector (Purves et al. 2018). Reflex activity provides protective responses and contributes to posture and physiological regulation.

Spinal reflexes can be integrated within the spinal cord, although the brain can modify many reflex responses (Bear et al. 2020). Examples include withdrawal from a painful stimulus and the stretch reflex (Purves et al. 2018). Reflexes are clinically useful because changes in their strength or pattern can indicate abnormalities in peripheral nerves, spinal pathways, or higher central control (Kiernan and Barr 2009).

Understanding reflex organization also demonstrates how sensory information can be transformed into a motor response without requiring conscious awareness of every component of the pathway (Bear et al. 2020).

11.13. SPECIAL SENSES: AN INTRODUCTION

Special senses are sensory modalities associated with specialized receptor organs and well-defined neural pathways (Purves et al. 2018). They include vision, hearing, equilibrium, olfaction, and gustation (Bear et al. 2020). Unlike general sensations such as touch and pain, special senses depend on highly specialized structures that transform specific environmental stimuli into neural signals (Purves et al. 2018).

Sensory transduction is the process by which receptor cells convert physical or chemical energy into changes in membrane potential and neural activity (Bear et al. 2020). The CNS then processes these signals to create conscious perceptions and appropriate responses (Kandel et al. 2021).

The special senses are clinically important because abnormalities may result from local organ disease, receptor dysfunction, nerve injury, or central nervous-system pathology (Seeley et al. 2019). Laboratory investigations can help identify infectious, inflammatory, metabolic, toxic, or hereditary causes in selected cases (Deisenhammer et al. 2006).

11.14. EYE AND VISION

The eye is the organ responsible for vision (Hubel 1988). It consists of an outer fibrous coat, a vascular layer, and a neural retina (Standring 2020). Light enters through the cornea and pupil and is focused by the lens onto the retina, where photoreceptor cells convert light energy into neural signals (Hubel 1988).

The retina contains rods and cones (Purves et al. 2018). Rods are highly sensitive to low light and contribute mainly to vision in dim conditions, whereas cones provide high-resolution and colour vision under brighter conditions (Hubel 1988). Signals are processed through retinal neural circuits and transmitted through the optic nerve toward visual centres of the brain (Bear et al. 2020).

Normal vision depends on transparent optical media, functional retinal cells, an intact optic pathway, and appropriate cortical processing (Hubel 1988). Disorders affecting any of these components can produce visual impairment. Laboratory studies may assist in selected infectious, inflammatory, metabolic, autoimmune, and hereditary eye disorders (Seeley et al. 2019).

11.15. EAR AND HEARING

The ear is divided into external, middle, and inner portions (Standring 2020). The external ear collects sound waves and directs them toward the tympanic membrane. The middle ear transmits and amplifies mechanical vibrations through the auditory ossicles toward the inner ear (Purves et al. 2018).

The cochlea of the inner ear contains sensory structures responsible for hearing (Pickles 2012). Sound-induced movement of cochlear fluids and membranes stimulates specialized hair cells, which convert mechanical energy into electrical signals (Bear et al. 2020). These signals travel through the auditory component of the vestibulocochlear nerve to central auditory pathways (Pickles 2012).

Hearing impairment may result from abnormalities of sound conduction, sensory receptor damage, neural injury, infection, aging, trauma, or inherited conditions (Pickles 2012, Seeley et al. 2019). Understanding the pathway helps differentiate conductive and sensorineural patterns of hearing loss (Purves et al. 2018).

11.16. VESTIBULAR APPARATUS AND BALANCE

The vestibular system is located within the inner ear and provides information about head position and movement (Purves et al. 2018). It includes the semicircular canals, utricle, and saccule (Standring 2020). Together these structures detect angular acceleration, linear acceleration, and changes in head orientation relative to gravity (Bear et al. 2020).

Specialized hair cells are stimulated by movement of fluid or otolithic structures within the vestibular apparatus (Purves et al. 2018). The resulting signals travel through the vestibular

part of the vestibulocochlear nerve to brainstem and cerebellar centres (Standring 2020). These pathways contribute to balance, posture, and coordinated eye movements (Ito 2002).

Disturbances of vestibular function may cause dizziness, vertigo, imbalance, nausea, and abnormal eye movements (Purves et al. 2018). Clinical assessment may be supplemented by specialized vestibular and neurological investigations (Seeley et al. 2019).

11.17. SMELL AND OLFACTION

Olfaction is the sense of smell and depends on specialized receptor neurons located within the olfactory epithelium of the nasal cavity (Doty 2015). Odorous molecules dissolve in the mucus layer and interact with receptor proteins on the sensory cells, initiating signal transduction (Bear et al. 2020).

Axons of olfactory receptor neurons pass through the cribriform plate and reach the olfactory bulb (Standring 2020). From there, olfactory information is distributed through central pathways to regions involved in conscious smell perception, memory, emotion, and behavioural responses (Doty 2015, Squire et al. 2012).

Loss or alteration of smell may occur with nasal disease, infection, trauma, exposure to certain chemicals, neurological disorders, or age-related changes (Doty 2015). Because olfactory pathways have close relationships with limbic structures, smells can strongly influence memory and emotional responses (Bear et al. 2020).

11.18. TASTE AND GUSTATION

Taste is mediated by specialized receptor cells located mainly within taste buds of the tongue and other parts of the oral cavity (Chandrashekar et al. 2006). The major taste qualities include sweet, salty, sour, bitter, and umami (Bear et al. 2020). Taste receptor cells detect dissolved chemical substances and convert them into signals transmitted through cranial nerves (Chandrashekar et al. 2006).

Information from the anterior tongue is carried predominantly through the facial nerve, while the posterior tongue contributes sensory information through the glossopharyngeal nerve (Standring 2020). Additional taste-related input from the pharyngeal region is associated with the vagus nerve. Signals ultimately reach brain regions responsible for sensory integration and perception (Purves et al. 2018).

Taste interacts closely with smell, texture, temperature, and other oral sensations to produce the overall experience of flavour (Doty 2015). Alterations in taste may occur with infection,

medication effects, nutritional disturbances, oral disease, or neurological dysfunction (Seeley et al. 2019).

11.19. RECEPTORS AND SENSORY PATHWAYS

Sensory receptors are specialized structures that detect changes in the internal or external environment (Purves et al. 2018). They may respond to mechanical, thermal, chemical, or electromagnetic stimuli (Bear et al. 2020). Examples include mechanoreceptors for touch and pressure, thermoreceptors for temperature, nociceptors for potentially damaging stimuli, chemoreceptors for chemical changes, and photoreceptors for light (Purves et al. 2018).

Sensory pathways generally involve a sequence of neurons that carry information from the receptor toward the CNS (Kiernan and Barr 2009). Processing may occur at several levels, including the spinal cord, brainstem, thalamus, cerebellum, and cerebral cortex (Kandel et al. 2021). The final perception depends on the pattern and context of neural activity (Bear et al. 2020).

Laboratory professionals should appreciate that sensory abnormalities can have multiple causes (Seeley et al. 2019). A similar clinical complaint may arise from receptor damage, peripheral nerve disease, central pathway lesions, or systemic metabolic and infectious conditions (Deisenhammer et al. 2006).

11.20. CLINICAL IMPORTANCE AND LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Neurological and sensory disorders may arise from infection, inflammation, vascular disease, trauma, neoplasia, metabolic disturbances, toxic exposure, nutritional deficiency, degeneration, or genetic abnormalities (Seeley et al. 2019). Clinical examination provides important information, while laboratory investigations help identify or support specific causes (Deisenhammer et al. 2006).

Cerebrospinal fluid examination is central to the laboratory investigation of many CNS infections and inflammatory conditions (Deisenhammer et al. 2006). Depending on the suspected disease, investigations may include cell counts, protein and glucose estimation, microscopy, culture, antigen detection, antibody testing, and nucleic-acid amplification methods (Deisenhammer et al. 2006, Seeley et al. 2019). Blood-based investigations may also evaluate metabolic, infectious, autoimmune, nutritional, and genetic causes (Deisenhammer et al. 2006).

Specimen quality is particularly important in neurological diagnostics (Deisenhammer et al. 2006). CSF should be collected in appropriate containers, correctly labelled, transported

promptly, and processed according to the requested tests. Delays, contamination, inappropriate storage, or insufficient specimen volume may compromise interpretation. Laboratory professionals therefore play an important role in accurate and timely neurological diagnosis (Deisenhammer et al. 2006, Seeley et al. 2019).

11.21. CONCLUSION

The nervous system is the major rapid communication and control system of the human body. Its central and peripheral components work together to receive sensory information, integrate signals, control movement, regulate internal organs, and support higher functions such as memory, learning, language, and consciousness. The brain and spinal cord are protected by the skull, vertebral column, meninges, and cerebrospinal fluid.

Neurons generate and transmit electrical signals, while neuroglial cells provide essential structural and functional support. The peripheral and autonomic nervous systems connect the CNS with tissues throughout the body and contribute to voluntary movement and involuntary regulation. Special senses provide highly specialized information through vision, hearing, balance, smell, and taste.

For undergraduate MLT students, understanding the nervous system is important because laboratory investigations contribute significantly to the diagnosis of neurological and sensory disorders. Knowledge of normal anatomy and physiology provides the foundation for understanding abnormal findings, selecting appropriate specimens, performing laboratory procedures correctly, and interpreting results in the clinical context.

REFERENCES

- Bear, M.F., Connors, B.W. and Paradiso, M.A., 2020. *Neuroscience: Exploring the Brain*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer.
- Burnham, W.H., 1917. The significance of stimulation in the development of the nervous system. *The American Journal of Psychology*, 28(1), pp.38-56.
- Chandrashekar, J., Hoon, M.A., Ryba, N.J. and Zuker, C.S., 2006. The receptors and cells for mammalian taste. *Nature*, 444(7117), pp.288-294.
- Deisenhammer, F., Bartos, A., Egg, R., Gilhus, N.E., Giovannoni, G., Rauer, S. and Sellebjerg, F., 2006. Guidelines on routine cerebrospinal fluid analysis. *European Journal of Neurology*, 13(9), pp.913-922.
- Doty, R.L., 2015. *Handbook of Olfaction and Gustation*. 3rd ed. Hoboken: John Wiley & Sons.

- Furness, J.B., 2012. The enteric nervous system and neurogastroenterology. *Nature Reviews Gastroenterology & Hepatology*, 9(5), pp.286-294.
- Hubel, D.H., 1988. *Eye, Brain, and Vision*. New York: Scientific American Library.
- Ito, M., 2002. The molecular organization of cerebellar long-term depression. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 3(11), pp.896-902.
- Jessen, K.R. and Mirsky, R., 2005. The origin and development of glial cells in peripheral nerves. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 6(9), pp.671-682.
- Kandel, E.R., Koester, J.D., Mack, S.H. and Siegelbaum, S.A., 2021. *Principles of Neural Science*. 6th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Kiernan, J.A. and Barr, M.L., 2009. *Barr's The Human Nervous System: An Anatomical Viewpoint*. 9th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Pickles, J.O., 2012. *An Introduction to the Physiology of Hearing*. 4th ed. London: Academic Press.
- Purves, D., Augustine, G.J., Fitzpatrick, D., Hall, W.C., LaMantia, A.S., Mooney, R.D., Platt, M.L. and White, L.E., 2018. *Neuroscience*. 6th ed. Sunderland: Sinauer Associates.
- Saper, C.B., 2002. The central autonomic network: functional organization, dysfunction, and integrative regulation. *Progress in Brain Research*, 137, pp.237-249.
- Seeley, R.R., VanPutte, C., Regan, J. and Russo, A., 2019. *Seeley's Anatomy & Physiology*. 12th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Squire, L.R., Berg, D., Bloom, F.E., Du Lac, S., Ghosh, A. and Spitzer, N.C., 2012. *Fundamental Neuroscience*. 4th ed. San Diego: Academic Press.
- Standring, S., 2020. *Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice*. 42nd ed. Elsevier.

CONTENT

- Chapter 12 -

The Endocrine System: Hormone-Producing Organs

12.1 Introduction to the Endocrine Architecture……234

12.1.1 Morphological Characteristics of Ductless Glands

12.1.2 Vascularization Patterns and Fenestrated Capillary Networks

12.1.3 Anatomical and Functional Axis Organization

12.2 The Hypothalamo-Hypophyseal Complex……..235

12.2.1 Hypothalamic Nuclei and Median Eminence Anatomy

12.2.2 The Pituitary Fossa and Sellar Relations

12.2.3 Adenohypophysis: Structural Lobes, Pars Distalis, and Vasculature

12.2.4 Hypophyseal Portal Circulation Architecture

12.2.5 Neurohypophysis and the Hypothalamo-Hypophyseal Tract

12.3 The Epithalamic and Cervical Endocrine Organs…….238

12.3.1 Pineal Gland: Location, Neurovascular Bundle, and Corpora Arenacea

12.3.2 Thyroid Gland: Gross Morphology, Lobes, and Surgical Fascia

12.3.3 Thyroid Histological Architecture and Colloid Follicles

12.3.4 Parathyroid Glands: Topography, Arterial Supply, and Chief Cell Architecture

12.4 Thoracic and Abdominal Endocrine Glands……..239

12.4.1 The Thymus: Mediastinal Topography and Involution Patterns

12.4.2 Endocrine Pancreas: Structural Topography and Islets of Langerhans

12.4.3 Islet Cytoarchitecture, Cellular Zonation, and Perfusion

12.5 The Adrenal (Suprarenal) Glands……241

12.5.1 Gross Morphology, Fascial Enclosure, and Asymmetrical Topography

12.5.2 Blood Supply, Subcapsular Plexus, and Suprarenal Venous Drainage

12.5.3 Adrenal Cortex: Concentric Zonation

12.5.4 Adrenal Medulla: Chromaffin Tissue and Sympathetic Innervation

12.6 Gonadal and Peripheral Endocrine Structures……244

12.6.1 Male Endocrine Gonad: Leydig Cell Interstitium and Vascularization

12.6.2 Female Endocrine Gonad: The Follicular Spectrum and Corpus Luteum

12.6.3 Diffuse Neuroendocrine System (DNES) and Enteroendocrine Cells

12.6.4 Secondary Endocrine Tissues: Renal, Atrial, and Adipose Architecture

12.7 Applied and Clinical Anatomy for Medical Laboratory Technology……..246

12.7.1 Structural Correlates of Endocrine Venous Sampling

12.7.2 Anatomical Basis of Space-Occupying Sellar and Thyroid Lesions

12.8 Conclusion……..247

References…….247

SVU

Chapter 12

The Endocrine System: Hormone-Producing Organs

Dr. Priya Nandy

Assistant Professor, Department of Medical Laboratory Technology, School of Allied Health Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Telinipara, Barasat-Barrackpore Rd, Bara Kanthalia, West Bengal-700121, India

Brief Overview

The endocrine system is an integrated network of ductless glands and hormone-producing tissues that coordinate metabolic homeostasis, growth, fluid balance, and reproduction. For undergraduate students of Medical Laboratory Technology (MLT), a comprehensive understanding of the gross anatomical architecture, microvascular relations, histological organization, and neuroendocrine pathways of endocrine organs is essential. Endocrine disorders represent a significant portion of diagnostic laboratory caseloads, where evaluating systemic pathology requires an understanding of structural anatomy, venous drainage patterns, and histological zoning. This chapter outlines the anatomical foundations of primary and secondary endocrine structures, detailing the hypothalamo-hypophyseal unit, the cervico-thoracic glands, the retroperitoneal structures, and systemic organ-specific endocrine tissues.

12.1. Introduction to the Endocrine Architecture

12.1.1. Morphological Characteristics of Ductless Glands

Ductless glands discharge signaling molecules directly into the interstitial space and blood vascular network without an epithelial conduit (Standring, 2020). Unlike exocrine glands that develop specialized terminal acini leading to branched ductal trees, endocrine organs organize as cords, clusters, or spherical follicles enveloped by a vascularized connective tissue stroma (Mescher, 2021; Ross & Pawlina, 2020). The functional parenchyma consists of hormone-secreting epithelial cells, while the stroma derives from condensation of surrounding embryonic mesenchyme, which forms delicate reticular networks supporting every endocrine cell cluster (Young et al., 2014).

12.1.2. Vascularization Patterns and Fenestrated Capillary Networks

Endocrine glands are among the most richly vascularized tissues in the human body, receiving arterial blood flows that far exceed their baseline metabolic requirements (Eroschenko, 2017). The microcirculation features extensive networks of fenestrated capillaries (type II) or discontinuous sinusoids (Standring, 2020). These specialized vessels possess trans-endothelial diaphragmed fenestrations (60–80 nm diameter) that allow rapid transvascular transit of macromolecules, peptide hormones, and carrier-bound lipid-soluble messengers into systemic circulation (Amenta et al., 2019; Mescher, 2021).

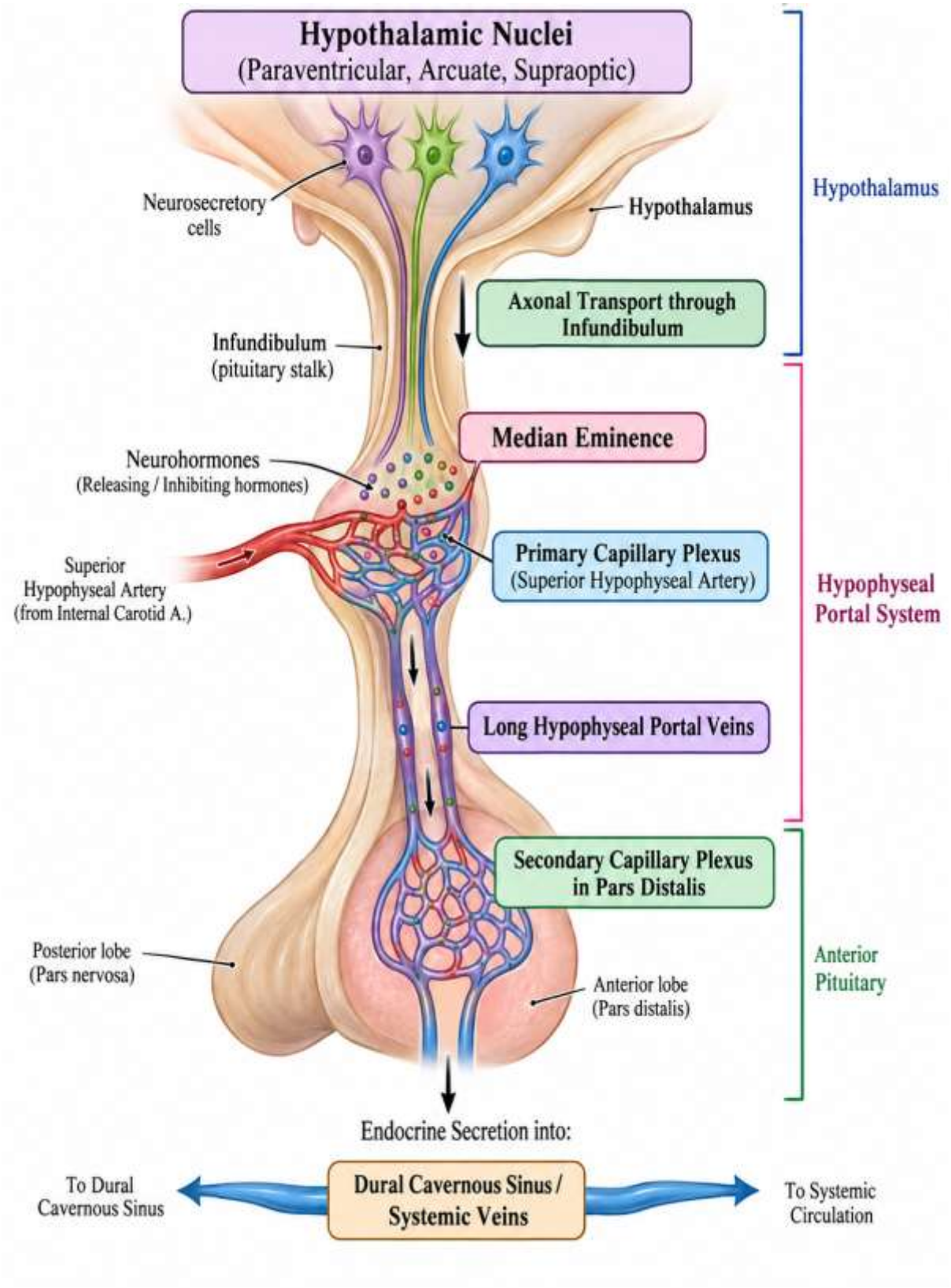
12.1.3. Anatomical and Functional Axis Organization

The spatial organization of endocrine glands follows distinct neuro-anatomical axes that establish precise negative and positive feedback loops (Hall & Hall, 2020). These include the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA), hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid (HPT), and hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal (HPG) axes (Kerr, 2010). In these pathways, superior neural centers directly communicate with master glandular structures via specialized vascular conduits or descending axonal bundles, providing multi-tiered regulatory control (Boron & Boulpaep, 2016; Melmed et al., 2020).

12.2. The Hypothalamo-Hypophyseal Complex

12.2.1. Hypothalamic Nuclei and Median Eminence Anatomy

The hypothalamus forms the floor and inferolateral walls of the third cerebral ventricle, bounded anteriorly by the optic chiasm, laterally by the optic tracts, and posteriorly by the mammillary bodies (Standring, 2020). Specific neurosecretory perikarya within the paraventricular, supraoptic, arcuate, and preoptic nuclei synthesize regulatory releasing and inhibiting neurohormones (Mescher, 2021; Netter, 2019). These non-myelinated axons project into the median eminence—a specialized circumventricular organ lacking a traditional blood-brain barrier—where they terminate on the capillary loops of the primary portal plexus (Hall & Hall, 2020; Lechan & Toni, 2016).



12.2.2. The Pituitary Fossa and Sellar Relations

The hypophysis cerebri (pituitary gland) resides within the sella turcica, a deep central fossa of the sphenoid bone (Sinnatamby, 2011). Superiorly, a horizontal fold of dura mater, the diaphragma sellae, roofs over the fossa, perforated centrally by the infundibular stalk

(Standring, 2020). Lateral to the pituitary fossa lie the paired cavernous sinuses, which contain the internal carotid arteries and cranial nerves III, IV, V_1, V_2, and VI (Wasicky et al., 2018). Immediately anterosuperior to the diaphragma sellae sits the optic chiasm, making sellar enlargements prone to producing bitemporal hemianopsia (Moore et al., 2018).

12.2.3. Adenohypophysis: Structural Lobes, Pars Distalis, and Vasculature

The adenohypophysis originates embryologically from Rathke's pouch (an ectodermal outpocketing of the stomodeum) and comprises three subdivisions: pars distalis, pars tuberalis, and pars intermedia (Moore et al., 2018; Sadler, 2019). The pars distalis constitutes the bulk of the gland and contains two classical cytological populations based on histological dye affinities: chromophobes (40–50%) and chromophils (50–60%) (Mescher, 2021). Chromophils are subdivided into:

- Acidophils: Somatotropes (secreting Growth Hormone) and Lactotropes (secreting Prolactin) (Gartner, 2021).
- Basophils: Corticotropes (secreting ACTH), Thyrotropes (secreting TSH), and Gonadotropes (secreting LH and FSH) (Eroschenko, 2017).

12.2.4. Hypophyseal Portal Circulation Architecture

The adenohypophysis lacks direct systemic arterial blood supply for its parenchymal cords (Standring, 2020). Superior hypophyseal arteries (branches of the internal carotid artery) arborize into a primary capillary plexus in the median eminence (Popa & Fielding, 1930). These vessels drain into long and short hypophyseal portal veins, which descend along the pituitary stalk into the pars distalis, dividing into a secondary capillary plexus (Mescher, 2021; Wislocki & King, 1936). This hypophyseal portal system delivers concentrated hypothalamic releasing and inhibiting factors directly to target adenohypophyseal chromophils before blood drains into the cavernous sinus (Boron & Boulpaep, 2016).

12.2.5. Neurohypophysis and the Hypothalamo-Hypophyseal Tract

The neurohypophysis originates as a ventral neuroectodermal projection from the diencephalon and comprises the infundibular stem and the pars nervosa (Moore et al., 2018). Unlike the adenohypophysis, it is not an epithelial gland, containing approximately 100,000 non-myelinated axons whose cell bodies reside within the supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei of the hypothalamus (Standring, 2020). These unmyelinated fibers form the hypothalamo-hypophyseal tract, which terminates in dilated terminal structures known as Herring bodies that store oxytocin and arginine vasopressin (AVP/ADH) (Mescher, 2021). Release occurs into fenestrated capillaries supplied by the inferior hypophyseal arteries

(Eroschenko, 2017). The parenchymal framework is physically supported by pituicytes, specialized glial cells with extensive branching processes (Ross & Pawlina, 2020).

12.3. The Epithalamic and Cervical Endocrine Organs

12.3.1. Pineal Gland: Location, Neurovascular Bundle, and Corpora Arenacea

The pineal gland (epiphysis cerebri) is a small, piriform neuroendocrine structure located within the epithalamus, suspended between the superior colliculi below the splenium of the corpus callosum (Standring, 2020). Covered externally by the pia mater, its parenchyma consists of cords of pinealocytes surrounded by astrocytic interstitial neuroglia (Kappers, 1960; Mescher, 2021). Postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the superior cervical ganglion reach the gland along internal carotid vessels. A diagnostic histological hallmark is the presence of corpora arenacea ("brain sand")—calcified basophilic laminations of calcium phosphates and carbonates that increase in density throughout adulthood, providing an anatomical midline radiological landmark (Arendt, 1995; Sinnatamby, 2011).

12.3.2. Thyroid Gland: Gross Morphology, Lobes, and Surgical Fascia

The thyroid gland is located in the anterior lower neck, extending from the level of the fifth cervical vertebra down to the first thoracic vertebra (Standring, 2020). It consists of two lateral lobes connected across the tracheal midline by a central isthmus overlying the second to fourth tracheal rings (Moore et al., 2018). An accessory pyramidal lobe extends superiorly toward the hyoid bone in roughly 40% of individuals as a remnant of the thyroglossal duct (Sinnatamby, 2011). The gland is invested by the visceral layer of the pretracheal fascia, anchoring it securely to the cricoid and thyroid cartilages, which causes the gland to ascend and descend during deglutition (Skandalakis et al., 2004).

Arterial Supply:

- Superior Thyroid Artery ◄── External Carotid Artery
- Inferior Thyroid Artery ◄── Thyrocervical Trunk (Subclavian Artery)
- Thyroid Ima Artery (10%) ◄── Brachiocephalic Trunk / Aortic Arch

Venous Drainage:

- Superior Thyroid Vein ──► Internal Jugular Vein
- Middle Thyroid Vein ──► Internal Jugular Vein
- Inferior Thyroid Vein ──► Brachiocephalic Veins

Arterial vascularization is derived from the paired superior thyroid arteries and inferior thyroid arteries (Standring, 2020). In approximately 10% of individuals, an unpaired thyroid ima artery arises directly from the brachiocephalic trunk or aortic arch (Netter, 2019). Venous

clearance occurs through superior and middle thyroid veins (draining into the internal jugular vein) and paired inferior thyroid veins (draining directly into the left and right brachiocephalic veins) (Moore et al., 2018).

12.3.3. Thyroid Histological Architecture and Colloid Follicles

Histologically, the thyroid stores large quantities of prohormone extracellularly within round structural units called thyroid follicles (Mescher, 2021). Each follicle is ringed by a simple monolayer of follicular epithelial cells (thyrocytes) resting on a thin basal lamina, surrounding a luminal compartment filled with gelatinous colloid composed predominantly of thyroglobulin (De Felice & Di Lauro, 2004; Eroschenko, 2017). Cell morphology reflects functional activity: thyrocytes appear low-cuboidal to squamous when inactive, and tall columnar during active TSH-stimulated pinocytosis and proteolysis (Hall & Hall, 2020). Nestled within the interfollicular connective tissue or basal regions of the follicular epithelium lie parafollicular cells (C cells), which synthesize and secrete calcitonin to regulate blood calcium homeostasis (Pearse, 1968; Standring, 2020).

12.3.4. Parathyroid Glands: Topography, Arterial Supply, and Chief Cell Architecture

The parathyroid glands are small, yellow-brown, oval structures typically situated on the posterior medial aspect of each thyroid lobe, tucked within the visceral fascial sheath (Standring, 2020). They are arranged as two superior parathyroids (derived from the fourth pharyngeal pouch) and two inferior parathyroids (derived from the third pharyngeal pouch) (Moore et al., 2018; Sadler, 2019). The arterial supply to both sets of glands derives predominantly from anastomotic branches of the inferior thyroid arteries (Sinnatamby, 2011). Microscopically, each parathyroid gland is enclosed in a thin connective tissue capsule with fine septa subdividing the parenchyma into dense anastomosing cords (Mescher, 2021). Two primary cell types are present:

- Chief (Principal) Cells: Small, polygonal cells with centrally placed round nuclei and pale, faintly acidophilic cytoplasm containing parathyroid hormone (PTH) storage granules (Eroschenko, 2017; Ritter et al., 2012).
- Oxyphil Cells: Larger, rounded, deeply eosinophilic cells containing packed mitochondria, which appear around puberty and progressively increase in number throughout life (Mescher, 2021; Ross & Pawlina, 2020).

12.4. Thoracic and Abdominal Endocrine Glands

12.4.1. The Thymus: Mediastinal Topography and Involution Patterns

The thymus is an asymmetrical bilobed lymphoepithelial and endocrine organ situated in the superior and anterior inferior mediastinum, immediately posterior to the manubrium and body of the sternum (Standring, 2020). Prominent in infants and children, the organ reaches its peak absolute mass (30–40 g) at puberty, after which it undergoes progressive age-related thymic involution, with functional parenchymal cords replaced by fibro-adipose connective tissue (Bodey et al., 1997; Moore et al., 2018). Epithelial reticular cells within the thymic cortex and medulla produce peptide hormones, including thymosin, thymopoietin, and thymulin, which regulate T-lymphocyte maturation and immunocompetence (Mescher, 2021; Savino & Dardenne, 2000).

12.4.2. Endocrine Pancreas: Structural Topography and Islets of Langerhans

The pancreas is an elongated, retroperitoneal accessory digestive gland divided anatomically into a head, neck, body, and tail, nestled within the C-shaped loop of the duodenum and extending horizontally toward the splenic hilum (Sinnatamby, 2011). While 98–99% of the organ consists of exocrine serous acini, the endocrine components exist as roughly 1 to 2 million spherical, microvascularized cell aggregations called the Islets of Langerhans (Standring, 2020). These islets are concentrated most densely within the pancreatic tail (Elayat et al., 1995; Mescher, 2021).

12.4.3. Islet Cytoarchitecture, Cellular Zonation, and Perfusion

Each islet of Langerhans is separated from adjacent exocrine acini by a delicate reticular capsule and is penetrated by a fenestrated capillary meshwork (Eroschenko, 2017). Specialized immunocytochemical staining identifies four major endocrine cell types:

Islet Cell Type	Population (%)	Primary Secretory Product	Spatial Orientation
Beta (β) Cells	60–70%	Insulin, Amylin	Central core of the islet
Alpha (α) Cells	15–20%	Glucagon	Outer peripheral rim
Delta (δ) Cells	5–10%	Somatostatin	Scattered peripherally
PP (F) Cells	1–2%	Pancreatic Polypeptide	Scattered through the parenchyma

Arterioles penetrate the islet core, supplying the central β-cell population first before passing peripherally through α- and δ-cell territories (Boron & Boulpaep, 2016; Bonner-Weir & Orci, 1982). This microvascular pattern allows high local concentrations of core insulin to

flow outwardly and exert direct paracrine suppression over glucagon secretion from peripheral α cells (Hall & Hall, 2020; Unger & Orci, 1977).

12.5. The Adrenal (Suprarenal) Glands

12.5.1. Gross Morphology, Fascial Enclosure, and Asymmetrical Topography

The adrenal (suprarenal) glands are paired retroperitoneal structures located on the anterosuperior aspect of each kidney at the level of the eleventh thoracic to first lumbar vertebrae (Standring, 2020). Both glands are enclosed within the renal fascia (Gerota's fascia) and embedded in perirenal adipose tissue, but are separated from the kidney parenchyma by a thin, fibrous septum (Moore et al., 2018).

Gross morphology exhibits marked bilateral asymmetry:

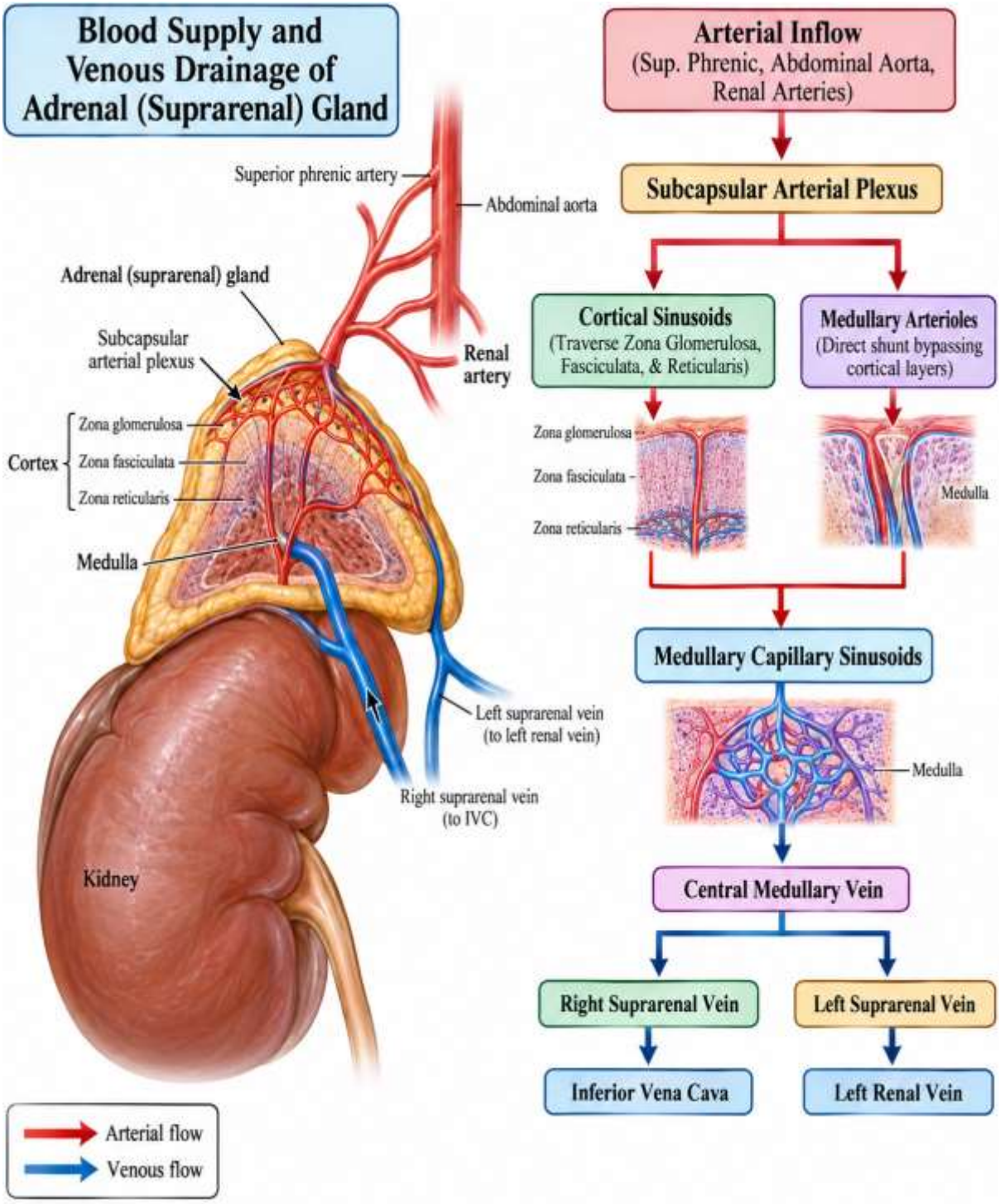
- Right Adrenal Gland: Pyramidal or tetrahedral, sitting capped on the superior pole of the right kidney, directly abutted by the inferior vena cava medially and the bare area of the liver anteriorly (Carmichael, 1989).
- Left Adrenal Gland: Crescentic or semilunar, extending down the medial border of the left kidney toward the renal hilum, related anteriorly to the stomach and pancreas (Sinnatamby, 2011).

12.5.2. Blood Supply, Subcapsular Plexus, and Suprarenal Venous Drainage

The adrenal glands have a high rate of blood delivery per gram of tissue, receiving arterial flow from three primary origins (Standring, 2020):

- Superior Suprarenal Arteries: Arising from the inferior phrenic artery.
- Middle Suprarenal Arteries: Branching directly from the abdominal aorta.
- Inferior Suprarenal Arteries: Originating from the renal arteries.

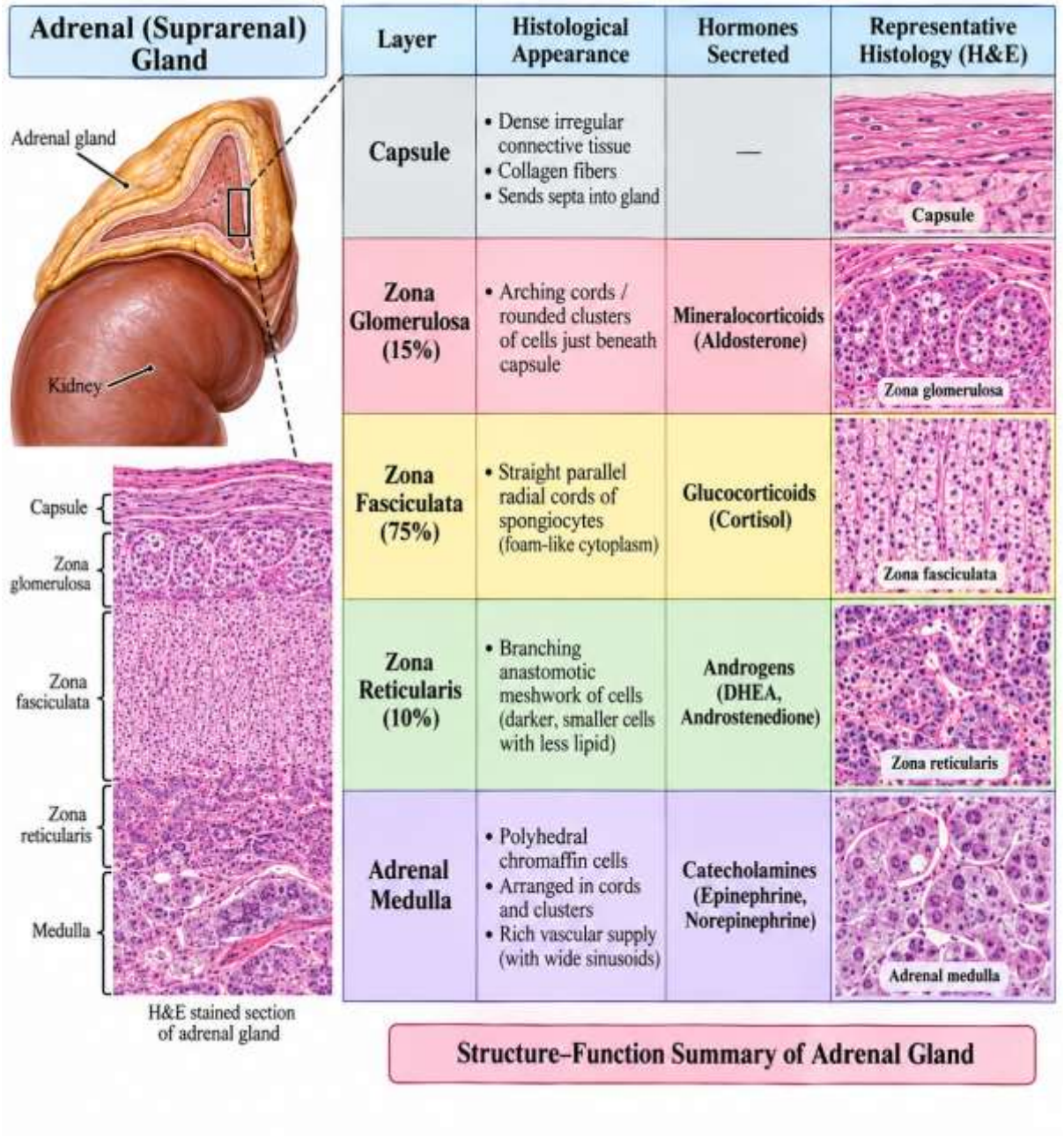
These vessels pierce the outer connective tissue capsule, forming a subcapsular arterial plexus that gives rise to two distinct intra-glandular microvascular pathways (Mescher, 2021). Cortical arterioles form parallel fenestrated sinusoidal capillaries running longitudinally between the cords of the cortex, draining inward to the corticomedullary junction (Vinson, 2003). Medullary arterioles bypass the cortical cords directly through vertical conduits, delivering arterial blood straight to the adrenal medulla (Eroschenko, 2017).



Venous drainage converges into a single, muscular central medullary vein in each gland (Standring, 2020). Asymmetry characterizes the venous outflow: the short right suprarenal vein drains directly into the posterior wall of the inferior vena cava, while the longer left suprarenal vein descends to drain into the left renal vein (often joining the left inferior phrenic vein) (Daunt, 2005; Moore et al., 2018).

12.5.3. Adrenal Cortex: Concentric Zonation

The adrenal cortex comprises approximately 80–90% of the total gland volume, derived embryologically from the coelomic mesoderm (Moore et al., 2018; Sadler, 2019). It is organized into three distinct, concentric histological zones:



- **Zona Glomerulosa:** Directly beneath the capsule, this thin outer zone (15% of cortical volume) consists of closely packed, arched cords or spherical clusters of small pyramidal cells with round, dark-staining nuclei and moderate lipid droplets (Mescher, 2021). It synthesizes mineralocorticoids (primarily aldosterone) regulated by the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS) and serum potassium levels (Gartner, 2021; Hall & Hall, 2020).

- **Zona Fasciculata:** The intermediate, thickest layer (75–80% of cortical volume) consists of long, straight cords of large polyhedral cells oriented perpendicularly to the outer capsule and flanked by parallel fenestrated sinusoids (Eroschenko, 2017). These cells, termed spongiocytes, have pale-staining, vacuolated cytoplasm filled with lipid droplets containing cholesterol precursors for glucocorticoid synthesis (primarily cortisol and corticosterone) controlled by pituitary ACTH (Boron & Boulpaep, 2016; Ross & Pawlina, 2020).
- **Zona Reticularis:** The innermost cortical zone (7–10% of volume) abuts the medulla and consists of small, dark-staining cells arranged in irregular, anastomosing networks (Mescher, 2021). The cells contain few lipid vacuoles and abundant lipofuscin pigment granules, synthesizing adrenal androgens (dehydroepiandrosterone [DHEA] and androstenedione) under ACTH stimulation (Standring, 2020; Young et al., 2014).

12.5.4. Adrenal Medulla: Chromaffin Tissue and Sympathetic Innervation

The adrenal medulla develops from neuroectodermal neural crest cells, functioning essentially as a modified sympathetic ganglion (Moore et al., 2018; Sadler, 2019). Its parenchymal cells, termed chromaffin cells (pheochromocytes), are arranged in spherical clusters or branching cords supported by reticular scaffolding around thin-walled sinusoidal capillaries (Eroschenko, 2017). They oxidize to a brown color when treated with potassium dichromate salts (the chromaffin reaction) due to the presence of catecholamine storage granules (Coupland, 1965; Mescher, 2021).

Chromaffin cells receive direct preganglionic sympathetic innervation from the greater splanchnic nerves ($T5 - T9$ spinal segments) (Standring, 2020). The release of acetylcholine from these preganglionic terminals depolarizes chromaffin cells, inducing exocytosis of epinephrine (80%) and norepinephrine (20%) directly into sinusoidal spaces during fight-or-flight sympathetic responses (Carmichael, 1989; Hall & Hall, 2020).

12.6. Gonadal and Peripheral Endocrine Structures

12.6.1. Male Endocrine Gonad: Leydig Cell Interstitium and Vascularization

The primary endocrine tissue of the testis resides within the loose vascularized interstitial spaces between adjacent seminiferous tubules (Standring, 2020). The interstitial cells of Leydig are large, polygonal endocrine cells featuring round eccentric nuclei and an acidophilic, lipid-rich cytoplasm with an extensive smooth endoplasmic reticulum (Mescher, 2021; Ross & Pawlina, 2020). A unique morphological hallmark is the presence of elongated, rod-shaped crystals of Reinke (Gartner, 2021). Leydig cells synthesize testosterone from

cholesterol precursors under the regulation of luteinizing hormone (LH) secreted by anterior pituitary gonadotropes (Hall & Hall, 2020; Weinbauer et al., 2010). Sertoli cells within the seminiferous tubular epithelium serve an auxiliary endocrine role, secreting inhibin B (which downregulates FSH release) and androgen-binding protein (ABP) (Boron & Boulpaep, 2016).

12.6.2. Female Endocrine Gonad: The Follicular Spectrum and Corpus Luteum

The ovary acts as a cyclically dynamic endocrine organ, its endocrine output dictated by the structural maturation of ovarian follicles within the peripheral cortex (Standring, 2020). Maturing secondary and Graafian follicles develop two concentric cellular sheaths: the inner vascularized theca interna (synthesizing androstenedione under LH influence) and the avascular granulosa layer (expressing the aromatase enzyme, which converts androstenedione to 17β-estradiol under FSH control) (Erickson et al., 1985; Mescher, 2021).

Following ovulation, LH triggers transformation of the collapsed follicle into the corpus luteum (Moore et al., 2018). Granulosa cells hypertrophy into large granulosa-lutein cells (constituting 80% of the parenchymal volume and secreting high amounts of progesterone), while theca interna cells become theca-lutein cells (concentrated in peripheral folds, secreting androgens and estrogens) (Eroschenko, 2017; Stouffer et al., 2013). If pregnancy does not occur, the corpus luteum degenerates into a white, fibrous scar known as the corpus albicans (Standring, 2020).

12.6.3. Diffuse Neuroendocrine System (DNES) and Enteroendocrine Cells

Endocrine secretion is not confined to discrete glands; individual endocrine cells are interspersed among non-endocrine epithelial structures throughout the human body, forming the Diffuse Neuroendocrine System (DNES) or APUD (Amine Precursor Uptake and Decarboxylation) system (Mescher, 2021; Pearse, 1969). In the gastrointestinal tract, these enteroendocrine cells (such as G cells secreting gastrin, I cells secreting cholecystokinin, and S cells secreting secretin) rest on the basement membrane (Rehfeld, 1998; Standring, 2020). They possess apical microvilli that sample luminal contents, responding by releasing peptide hormones basolaterally into nearby mucosal capillary networks (Boron & Boulpaep, 2016).

12.6.4. Secondary Endocrine Tissues: Renal, Atrial, and Adipose Architecture

- **Renal Endocrine Elements:** The Juxtaglomerular Apparatus (JGA) consists of modified smooth muscle juxtaglomerular cells in the wall of the afferent arteriole that synthesize and release renin (Hall & Hall, 2020; Kurtz, 2012). Interstitial peritubular fibroblasts within the renal cortex generate erythropoietin (EPO) in response to localized tissue hypoxia (Fisher, 2003; Mescher, 2021).

- **Atrial Myocardium:** Modified cardiomyocytes located within the walls of the cardiac atria contain dense, membrane-bound storage granules that release Atrial Natriuretic Peptide (ANP) in response to excessive mechanical wall stretch, promoting systemic vasodilation and renal natriuresis (de Bold, 1985; Standring, 2020).
- **Adipose Tissue:** Adipocytes operate as dynamic endocrine components, secreting signaling adipokines—most notably leptin (which acts on the arcuate nucleus of the hypothalamus to regulate satiety) and adiponectin—directly into surrounding capillary beds (Hall & Hall, 2020; Kershaw & Flier, 2004).

12.7. Applied and Clinical Anatomy for Medical Laboratory Technology

12.7.1. Structural Correlates of Endocrine Venous Sampling

In clinical diagnostic laboratories, confirming localized hypersecretory endocrine states (such as primary hyperaldosteronism, ectopic ACTH-secreting tumors, or parathyroid adenomas) frequently requires selective endocrine venous catheterization and blood sampling (Standring, 2020). Technologists process differential hormone ratios between local glandular effluent and peripheral venous blood.

- Adrenal Venous Sampling (AVS): The anatomical asymmetry of suprarenal venous drainage represents a technical hurdle (Daunt, 2005). Catheterizing the right suprarenal vein is difficult due to its short length and direct posterolateral entrance into the inferior vena cava, compared to the longer, downward course of the left suprarenal vein into the left renal vein (Monticone et al., 2015; Moore et al., 2018).
- Inferior Petrosal Sinus Sampling (IPSS): Bilateral catheterization of the inferior petrosal sinuses (which drain the dural cavernous sinuses around the hypophysis) is utilized to measure ACTH gradients, distinguishing central Cushing's disease from peripheral or ectopic ACTH secretion (Boron & Boulpaep, 2016; Oldfield et al., 1991).

12.7.2. Anatomical Basis of Space-Occupying Sellar and Thyroid Lesions

Expanding adenomas within the rigid, bony hypophyseal fossa cannot expand inferiorly without eroding the sphenoid sinus (Wasicky et al., 2018). Consequently, they expand superiorly through the diaphragma sellae, stretching the centrally crossing fibers of the optic chiasm and causing bitemporal hemianopsia (Melmed et al., 2020; Moore et al., 2018).

Similarly, an expanding thyroid goiter or nodule is constrained anteriorly by the infrahyoid "strap" muscles and the pretracheal fascia (Sinnatamby, 2011; Skandalakis et al., 2004). As a

result, enlarged thyroid masses expand posteriorly and medially, compressing the trachea (stridor, dyspnea), the esophagus (dysphagia), and the recurrent laryngeal nerves within the tracheoesophageal groove, resulting in hoarseness of voice (Standring, 2020).

12.8. Conclusion

The endocrine system functions as a complex network of primary ductless organs and secondary diffuse tissues that synthesize, store, and release hormones into specialized microcirculatory beds. The anatomical design of these structures—from the vascular portal conduit of the adenohypophysis and the concentric zoning of the adrenal cortex to the specialized fenestrated capillary loops of the islets of Langerhans—directly facilitates systemic communication. For medical laboratory professionals, mastery of this structural architecture provides the foundational context required to interpret endocrine profiles, resolve localized venous sampling assays, and evaluate clinical pathologies across modern diagnostic medicine.

References

1. Arendt, J. (1995). *Melatonin and the mammalian pineal gland*. Chapman & Hall.
2. Arey, L. B. (2017). *Human histology: A textbook in outline form*. Saunders.
3. Barger, A. C., Liebowitz, M. R., & Muldowney, F. P. (1958). The role of the neurohypophysis in fluid and electrolyte homeostasis. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 258(11), 537–545. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM195803132581106
4. Bodey, B., Bodey, B., Jr., Siegel, S. E., & Kaiser, H. E. (1997). Involution of the mammalian thymus, one of the leading regulators of aging. *In Vivo*, 11(5), 421–440.
5. Bornstein, S. R., & Chrousos, G. P. (1999). Clinical review 104: Adrenocorticotropin (ACTH)- and non-ACTH-mediated regulation of the adrenal cortex: Neural and immune inputs. *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 84(5), 1729–1736. https://doi.org/10.1210/jcem.84.5.5645
6. Boron, W. F., & Boulpaep, E. L. (2016). *Medical physiology* (3rd ed.). Elsevier.
7. Corner, G. W. (1956). The histological cycle of the corpus luteum in the human ovary. *Contributions to Embryology*, 36, 117–146.
8. Coupland, R. E. (1965). *The natural history of the chromaffin cell*. Longmans.
9. Daunt, N. (2005). Adrenal vein sampling: How to make it quick, easy, and successful. *Radiographics*, 25(Suppl 1), S143–S158. https://doi.org/10.1148/rg.25si055514

10. de Bold, A. J., Borenstein, H. B., Veress, A. T., & Sonnenberg, H. (1981). A rapid and potent natriuretic response to intravenous injection of atrial myocardial extract in rats. *Life Sciences*, 28(1), 89–94. https://doi.org/10.1016/0024-3205(81)90370-2
11. DeGroot, L. J., Chrousos, G., Dungan, K., Feingold, K. R., Grossman, A., Hershman, J. M., Koch, C., Korbonits, M., McLachlan, R., New, M., Purnell, J., Rebar, R., Singer, F., & Vinik, A. (Eds.). (2015). *Endotext*. MDText.com, Inc.
12. Dockray, G. J. (2004). Enteroendocrine cell biology and the regulation of gastrointestinal function. *Current Opinion in Gastroenterology*, 20(2), 79–86. https://doi.org/10.1097/00001574-200403000-00004
13. Eroschenko, V. P. (2017). *diFiore's atlas of histology with functional correlations* (13th ed.). Wolters Kluwer.
14. Fisher, D. A. (1989). Thyroid hormone ontogeny and the thyroglossal duct. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 69(1), 1–6.
15. Fortune, J. E. (1994). The follicular spectrum: Theca interna and granulosa cell steroidogenesis during follicular development. *Biology of Reproduction*, 50(2), 225–232. https://doi.org/10.1095/biolreprod50.2.225
16. Funder, J. W., Carey, R. M., Mantero, F., Murad, M. H., Reincke, M., Shibata, H., Stowasser, M., & Young, W. F., Jr. (2016). The management of primary aldosteronism: Case detection, diagnosis, and treatment: An Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 101(5), 1889–1916. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2015-4061
17. Gartner, L. P. (2020). *Textbook of histology* (5th ed.). Elsevier.
18. Goldstein, A. L., Guha, A., Zatz, M. M., Hardy, M. A., & White, A. (1974). Purification and biological properties of thymosin: The basic hormone of the thymus gland. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 69(7), 1800–1803. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.69.7.1800
19. Goormaghtigh, N. (1939). Existence of an endocrine gland in the media of the renal arterioles. *Proceedings of the Society for Experimental Biology and Medicine*, 42(2), 688–689. https://doi.org/10.3181/00379727-42-11029P
20. Griswold, M. D. (1998). The central role of Sertoli cells in spermatogenesis. *Seminars in Cell & Developmental Biology*, 9(4), 411–416. https://doi.org/10.1006/scdb.1998.0249
21. Hall, J. E., & Hall, M. E. (2020). *Guyton and Hall textbook of medical physiology* (14th ed.). Elsevier.

22. Hegedüs, L. (2004). Clinical practice: The clinically solitary thyroid nodule. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 351(17), 1764–1771. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMcp031436
23. Jelkmann, W. (2011). Regulation of erythropoietin production. *The Journal of Physiology*, 589(6), 1251–1258. https://doi.org/10.1113/jphysiol.2010.195057
24. Kocjan, T., & Grossman, A. (2014). Endocrine axes and feedback systems. *Medicine*, 42(8), 419–422. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mpmed.2014.05.006
25. Langerhans, P. (1869). *Contributions to the microscopic anatomy of the pancreas* (Doctoral dissertation). Gustav Lange.
26. Lechan, R. M., & Fekete, C. (2006). The anatomy and chemical neuroanatomy of the hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid axis. *Thyroid*, 17(10), 939–953.
27. Leydig, F. (1850). Zur Anatomie der männlichen Geschlechtsorgane und Analdrüsen der Säugethiere. *Zeitschrift für Wissenschaftliche Zoologie*, 2, 1–57.
28. Macchi, M. M., & Bruce, J. N. (2004). Human pineal physiology and functional neuroanatomy. *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology*, 25(3–4), 177–195. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.yfrne.2004.08.001
29. Melmed, S., Auchus, R. J., Goldfine, A. B., Koenig, R. J., & Rosen, C. J. (Eds.). (2019). *Williams textbook of endocrinology* (14th ed.). Elsevier.
30. Mescher, A. L. (2021). *Junqueira's basic histology: Text and atlas* (16th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.
31. Moore, K. L., Dalley, A. F., & Agur, A. M. R. (2018). *Clinically oriented anatomy* (8th ed.). Wolters Kluwer.
32. Netter, F. H. (2018). *Atlas of human anatomy* (7th ed.). Elsevier.
33. Oldfield, E. H., Doppman, J. L., Nieman, L. K., Chrousos, G. P., Miller, D. L., Katz, D. A., Cutler, G. B., Jr., & Loriaux, D. L. (1991). Petrosal sinus sampling with and without corticotropin-releasing hormone for the differential diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 325(13), 897–905. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199109263251301
34. Parker, L. N. (1999). Adrenal androgen metabolism and the zona reticularis. *Endocrine Reviews*, 20(3), 295–320.
35. Pawlina, W. (2020). *Histology: A text and atlas with correlated cell and molecular biology* (8th ed.). Wolters Kluwer.
36. Pearse, A. G. (1968). The thyroid parenchymatous cells and the source of calcitonin. *Nature*, 211(5049), 598–600.

37. Pearse, A. G. (1969). The cytochemistry and ultrastructure of polypeptide hormone-producing cells of the APUD series and the embryologic, physiologic and pathologic implications of the concept. *Journal of Histochemistry & Cytochemistry*, 17(5), 303–313. https://doi.org/10.1177/17.5.303
38. Popa, G. T., & Fielding, U. (1930). A portal circulation from the pituitary to the hypothalamus. *Journal of Anatomy*, 65(Pt 1), 88–91.
39. Potts, J. T. (2005). Parathyroid hormone: Past and present. *Journal of Endocrinology*, 187(3), 311–325. https://doi.org/10.1677/joe.1.06057
40. Rehfeld, J. F. (1998). The new biology of gastrointestinal hormones. *Physiological Reviews*, 78(4), 1087–1108. https://doi.org/10.1152/physrev.1998.78.4.1087
41. Reinke, F. (1896). Beiträge zur Histologie des Menschen: I. Ueber Krystalloidbildungen in den menschlichen Hoden. *Archiv für Mikroskopische Anatomie*, 47(1), 34–44. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02975073
42. Ross, M. H., & Pawlina, W. (2018). *Histology: A text and atlas with correlated cell and molecular biology* (7th ed.). Wolters Kluwer.
43. Sadler, T. W. (2018). *Langman's medical embryology* (14th ed.). Wolters Kluwer.
44. Saez, J. M. (1994). Leydig cells: Endocrine, paracrine, and autocrine regulation. *Endocrine Reviews*, 15(5), 574–626. https://doi.org/10.1210/edrv-15-5-574
45. Sinnatamby, C. S. (2011). *Last's anatomy: Regional and applied* (12th ed.). Churchill Livingstone.
46. Snell, R. S. (2018). *Snell's clinical neuroanatomy* (8th ed.). Wolters Kluwer.
47. Stagner, J. I., Samols, E., & Bonner-Weir, S. (1988). $\beta \rightarrow \alpha \rightarrow \delta$ direction of intra-islet blood flow in the isolated rat pancreas. *Diabetes*, 37(12), 1715–1721. https://doi.org/10.2337/diab.37.12.1715
48. Standring, S. (Ed.). (2020). *Gray's anatomy: The anatomical basis of clinical practice* (42nd ed.). Elsevier.
49. Tait, J. F., Tait, S. A., & Coghlan, J. P. (2004). The discovery, isolation and structure of aldosterone: Reflections on a 50-year journey. *Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology*, 217(1–2), 1–21. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mce.2003.10.003
50. Unger, R. H., & Orci, L. (1977). Role of glucagon in diabetes: Paracrine relationships in the islets of Langerhans. *Physiological Reviews*, 57(4), 850–874. https://doi.org/10.1152/physrev.1977.57.4.850

51. Winkler, H., & Westhead, E. (1980). The molecular organization of adrenal chromaffin granules. *Neuroscience*, 5(11), 1803–1823. https://doi.org/10.1016/0306-4522(80)90034-7
52. Wislocki, G. B., & King, L. S. (1936). The permeation of the hypophysis of the rhesus monkey by dyes, including a discussion of the hypophyseal portal circulation. *American Journal of Anatomy*, 58(2), 421–472. https://doi.org/10.1002/aja.1000580206
53. Young, B., O'Dowd, G., & Woodford, P. (2013). *Wheater's functional histology: A text and colour atlas* (6th ed.). Churchill Livingstone.
54. Zhang, Y., Proenca, R., Maffei, M., Barone, M., Leopold, L., & Friedman, J. M. (1994). Positional cloning of the mouse obese gene and its human homologue. *Nature*, 372(6505), 425–432. https://doi.org/10.1038/372425a0
55. Zimmerman, R. A., & Bilaniuk, L. T. (1982). Age-related incidence of pineal calcification on computed tomography. *Radiology*, 142(3), 659–662. https://doi.org/10.1148/radiology.142.3.7063680

SVU

CONTENT

- Chapter 13 -

The Reproductive System: Male and Female Anatomy

13.1 Introduction……..254
13.1.1 Learning objectives
13.1.2 General organisation and terminology
13.2 Male reproductive anatomy……255
13.2.1 Components and anatomical position
13.2.2 Scrotum and temperature regulation
13.2.3 Testes and their coverings
13.2.4 Seminiferous tubules and interstitial tissue
13.2.5 Epididymis and ductus deferens
13.2.6 Spermatic cord and inguinal canal
13.2.7 Accessory reproductive glands
13.2.8 Penis and male urethra
13.2.9 Blood supply lymphatics and innervation
13.3 Sperm formation and male reproductive function…….260
13.3.1 Spermatogenesis and spermiogenesis
13.3.2 Structure and transport of sperm
13.3.3 Hormonal control and ejaculation

SVU

13.4 Female internal reproductive organs……..262
13.4.1 Overview and pelvic relations
13.4.2 Ovaries and their attachments
13.4.3 Follicles ovulation and corpus luteum
13.4.4 Uterine tubes
13.4.5 Uterus and its anatomical subdivisions
13.4.5.1 Layers of the uterine wall
13.4.5.2 Cervix and transformation zone
13.4.6 Vagina and vaginal fornices
13.4.7 Pelvic support and peritoneal folds
13.4.8 Blood supply lymphatics and innervation
13.5 External genitalia perineum and mammary glands……267
13.5.1 Vulva and vestibular structures
13.5.2 Perineum and pelvic floor
13.5.3 Mammary gland anatomy and histology
13.6 Female reproductive function and developmental anatomy……269
13.6.1 Oogenesis and meiotic arrest
13.6.2 Ovarian and uterine cycles
13.6.3 Fertilisation implantation and placental interface
13.6.4 Embryological origins and homologous structures
13.6.5 Puberty reproductive ageing and menopause
13.7 Comparative anatomy and clinical correlations……..272
13.7.1 Comparison of male and female systems
13.7.2 Testicular and prostatic conditions
13.7.3 Tubal uterine and ovarian conditions
13.7.4 Histology and laboratory relevance
13.8 Chapter summary and key terms…….273
13.8.1 Chapter summary
13.8.2 Key terms
References.....274

SVU

CHAPTER 13

The Reproductive System: Male and Female Anatomy

Dr. Puja Roy

Assistant Professor, Department of Medical Laboratory Technology, School of Allied Health Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Barasat Rd, Telinipara, Malir Math, Bara Kanthalia, West Bengal 700121, India

13.1 Introduction

The reproductive system comprises the organs that form gametes, secrete reproductive hormones and enable fertilisation. The male system produces and delivers sperm, whereas the female system produces oocytes and provides the environment for fertilisation, implantation, pregnancy and childbirth. Mammary glands support the newborn through milk production. These functions depend on a close relationship between gross anatomy, tissue organisation, blood supply and endocrine regulation. [6, 7]

This chapter describes the male and female reproductive organs in their anatomical setting. It follows the routes taken by sperm and the oocyte, explains the characteristic microscopic features of each organ and relates pelvic support structures to function. Essential physiology is included where it clarifies anatomy. The discussion is intended for undergraduate students of anatomy, allied health sciences and medical laboratory technology. [6, 7]

13.1.1 Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, the learner should be able to identify the male and female reproductive organs; describe their positions, coverings and important relations; trace the pathways of gamete transport; recognise major histological features; compare spermatogenesis with oogenesis; outline hormonal regulation; and connect normal anatomy with selected clinical conditions and laboratory investigations.

13.1.2 General organisation and terminology

The gonads are the testes and ovaries. They have both a gamete-producing function and an endocrine function. Accessory ducts transport reproductive cells, while accessory glands contribute secretions that support reproductive activity. External genitalia participate in sexual function and protect openings of the reproductive tract. Internal organs occupy the pelvis or communicate with it through ducts. [6, 7]

A gamete contains a haploid set of 23 chromosomes. Fertilisation normally restores the diploid complement of 46 chromosomes. The term spermatozoon refers to a mature male gamete. The cell released at ovulation is usually a secondary oocyte arrested in meiosis II; it completes this division only if fertilisation occurs. Anatomical descriptions refer to typical arrangements, while normal variation in organ size, position and external appearance is common. [6, 7]

13.2 Male reproductive anatomy

13.2.1 Components and anatomical position

The male reproductive organs include two testes, two epididymides, paired ductus deferentes, paired ejaculatory ducts, the urethra, seminal vesicles, prostate, bulbourethral glands and penis. The testes lie within the scrotum outside the abdominopelvic cavity. Most accessory glands lie within the pelvis. The penis and scrotum form the principal external genital structures. [1, 2]

The urinary bladder lies superior to the prostate. The seminal vesicles lie posterior to the bladder and anterior to the rectum. These relations explain why enlargement or inflammation of reproductive organs may affect urination or produce pelvic symptoms. Figure 13.1 provides an overview; the urethra serves both urinary and reproductive functions in males, although urine and semen normally pass at different times. [1, 2]

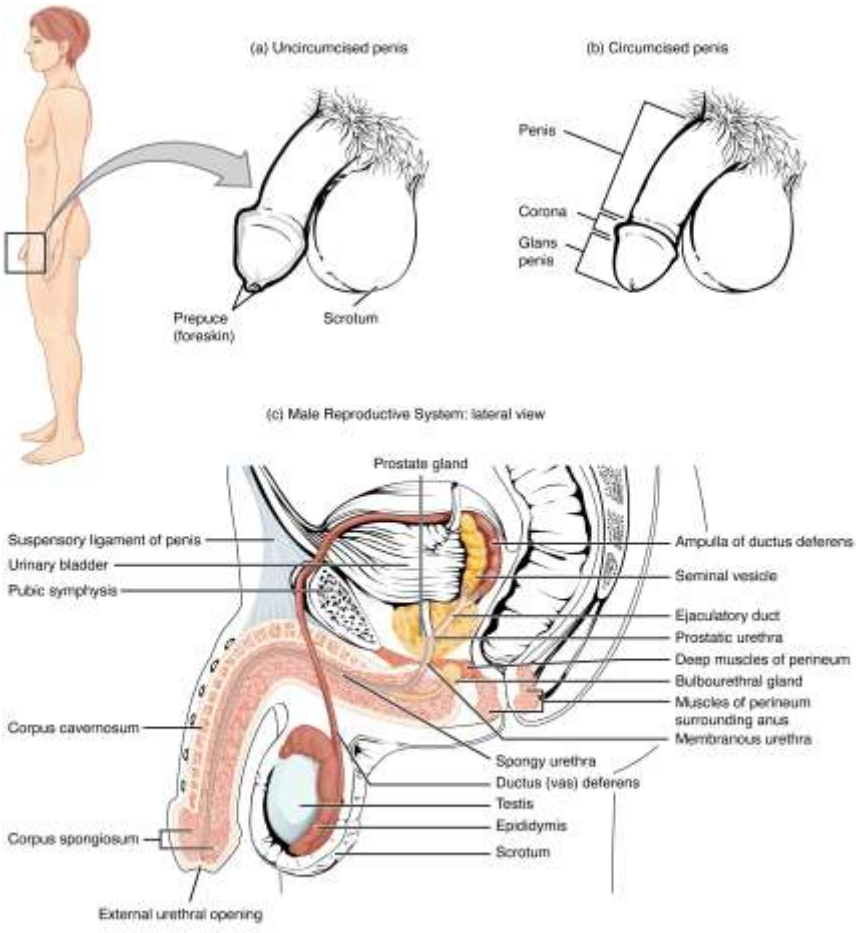


Figure 13.1. Male reproductive system showing the genital organs, accessory glands and their relations to the urinary bladder and rectum.

13.2.2 Scrotum and temperature regulation

The scrotum is a pendulous sac divided internally by a septum into right and left compartments. Its skin is thin, pigmented and folded. Beneath it, the dartos layer contains smooth muscle that wrinkles the skin. The cremaster muscle, derived principally from the internal oblique muscle, raises or lowers the testis in response to temperature and reflex stimulation. [2, 10]

Sperm formation is favoured by a temperature below core body temperature. The scrotal position, sweating, changes in surface area and countercurrent heat exchange between the testicular artery and pampiniform venous plexus help maintain this environment. The left testis commonly hangs lower than the right. Scrotal skin and the testis have different lymphatic drainage because their embryological origins differ. [2, 10]

13.2.3 Testes and their coverings

Each testis is an ovoid organ with medial and lateral surfaces, anterior and posterior borders, and superior and inferior poles. The epididymis is closely related to its posterior aspect. The tunica vaginalis is a serous sac derived from the peritoneal processus vaginalis; its visceral and parietal layers normally enclose a small lubricated potential space. [1, 3]

Deep to the visceral layer is the tough tunica albuginea. It thickens posteriorly to form the mediastinum testis and sends septa into the gland, dividing it into lobules. Coiled seminiferous tubules within these lobules produce sperm. Straight tubules connect the seminiferous tubules to the rete testis in the mediastinum; efferent ductules then carry their contents into the epididymis. [1, 3]

13.2.4 Seminiferous tubules and interstitial tissue

A seminiferous tubule is lined by a complex germinal epithelium containing developing germ cells and Sertoli cells. Spermatogonia lie near the basement membrane, while progressively differentiated cells occupy positions nearer the lumen. Sertoli cells span the epithelium, provide metabolic support, remove residual cytoplasm and help regulate the microenvironment of developing germ cells. [8, 9]

Tight junctions between Sertoli cells establish the blood–testis barrier and separate basal from adluminal compartments. Leydig cells occupy the connective tissue between tubules and synthesise testosterone in response to luteinising hormone. Peritubular myoid cells help move tubular fluid. Thus, germ-cell production and steroid secretion occur in neighbouring but anatomically distinct compartments. [8, 9]

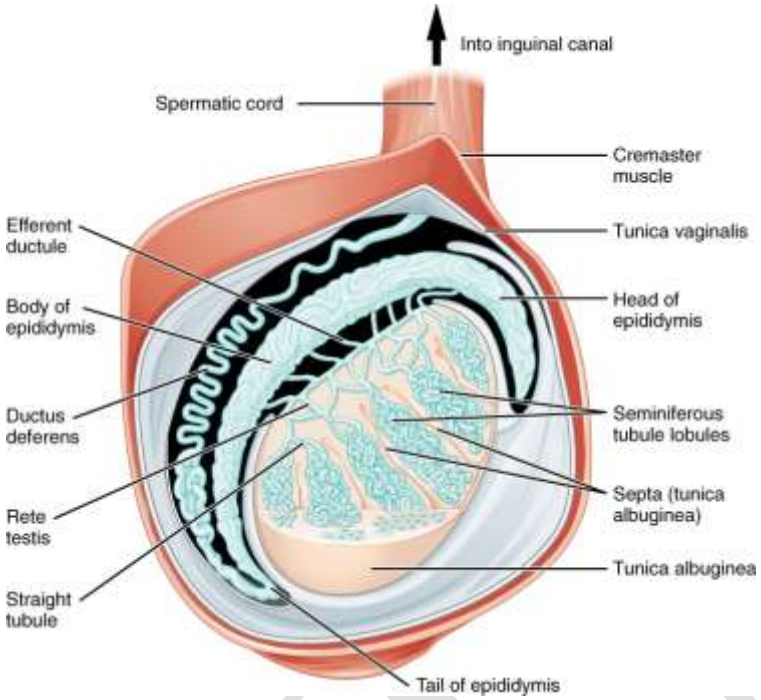


Figure 13.2. Section of the testis showing seminiferous tubules, rete testis, efferent ductules and epididymis.

13.2.5 Epididymis and ductus deferens

The epididymis has a head, body and tail. Its head receives efferent ductules at the superior pole of the testis, its body lies posteriorly, and its tail continues as the ductus deferens. The epididymal duct is highly coiled and lined by pseudostratified columnar epithelium with stereocilia. These long, non-motile microvilli support absorption and secretion. Sperm undergo functional maturation during passage and are stored principally in the distal epididymis. [2, 9]

The ductus deferens has a narrow lumen and a thick smooth-muscle wall that propels sperm during emission. It ascends in the spermatic cord, traverses the inguinal canal, enters the pelvis and passes across the ureter near the bladder. Its terminal dilatation is the ampulla. Each ductus joins the duct of the corresponding seminal vesicle to form an ejaculatory duct, which passes through the prostate and opens into the prostatic urethra. [2, 9]

13.2.6 Spermatic cord and inguinal canal

The spermatic cord suspends the testis and carries the ductus deferens, testicular vessels, pampiniform plexus, lymphatics, autonomic nerves and associated vessels and nerves. Its fascial coverings reflect the abdominal-wall layers encountered during testicular descent. The genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve travels within the cord; the ilioinguinal nerve accompanies it through part of the inguinal canal but is not a content of the cord itself. [2, 3]

The inguinal canal is an oblique passage through the lower anterior abdominal wall. The deep ring lies in the transversalis fascia, whereas the superficial ring is an opening in the external oblique aponeurosis. The pathway is clinically relevant to inguinal hernia, hydrocele and operations on the ductus deferens. [2, 3]

13.2.7 Accessory reproductive glands

The seminal vesicles are paired, folded tubular glands behind the bladder. Their secretions contribute much of the seminal fluid and contain fructose and other substances that support sperm function. Despite their name, they are not the normal principal storage site for sperm. Their ducts unite with the ductus deferentes rather than opening directly into the bladder. [1, 9]

The prostate is a fibromuscular gland inferior to the bladder and surrounding the proximal urethra. Its secretions include enzymes involved in semen liquefaction. Anatomically important regions include peripheral, central and transition zones, together with anterior fibromuscular stroma. The paired bulbourethral glands lie in the deep perineal region; their ducts open into the proximal spongy urethra and provide a lubricating mucus secretion. [1, 9]

Table 13.1 Male accessory glands [1, 9]

Gland	Position and duct opening	Main contribution
Seminal vesicles	Behind bladder; ducts join ductus deferentes	Fructose-rich fluid and much of semen volume
Prostate	Below bladder; ducts open into prostatic urethra	Enzyme-containing fluid involved in semen liquefaction
Bulbourethral glands	Deep perineal region; ducts open into spongy urethra	Mucus for lubrication

13.2.8 Penis and male urethra

The penis consists of a root, body and glans. Two corpora cavernosa lie dorsally and one corpus spongiosum lies ventrally around the spongy urethra. The corpus spongiosum expands proximally as the bulb and distally as the glans. The crura anchor the corpora cavernosa to the ischiopubic rami. A prepuce, when present, covers the glans to a variable extent. [2, 4]

The erectile tissues contain vascular spaces enclosed by connective tissue. The tunica albuginea is particularly strong around the corpora cavernosa. During erection, increased arterial inflow and reduced venous outflow enlarge these spaces. The corpus spongiosum remains relatively less rigid, helping maintain urethral patency. [2, 4]

The male urethra is described as intramural or preprostatic, prostatic, membranous and spongy portions. The membranous portion passes through the external urethral sphincter region. The spongy portion runs through the corpus spongiosum and ends at the external urethral opening on the glans. The ejaculatory ducts enter the prostatic portion, while the bulbourethral ducts enter the spongy portion. [2, 4]

13.2.9 Blood supply lymphatics and innervation

The testicular arteries arise from the abdominal aorta. Venous blood drains through the pampiniform plexus into the testicular veins; the right usually enters the inferior vena cava and the left enters the left renal vein. Testicular lymph drains primarily to lumbar or para-aortic nodes. By contrast, lymph from scrotal skin drains mainly to superficial inguinal nodes. [1, 2]

Branches of the internal iliac arteries supply pelvic reproductive organs, and internal pudendal branches supply much of the penis and perineum. Autonomic fibres regulate glandular secretion, smooth-muscle contraction and vascular changes. Parasympathetic activity facilitates erection, sympathetic pathways contribute strongly to emission, and pudendal somatic pathways mediate sensation and rhythmic perineal muscle activity during expulsion. [1, 2]

13.3 Sperm formation and male reproductive function

13.3.1 Spermatogenesis and spermiogenesis

Spermatogenesis begins at puberty within the seminiferous tubules. Spermatogonia maintain a stem-cell population and give rise to primary spermatocytes. Meiosis I produces secondary spermatocytes, and meiosis II produces haploid spermatids. The subsequent remodelling of spermatids into spermatozoa is termed spermiogenesis; it includes nuclear condensation, acrosome development, flagellum formation and loss of excess cytoplasm. [8, 10]

Release of sperm from Sertoli cells into the tubular lumen is called spermiation. Newly released sperm are not yet fully functionally mature. Epididymal passage supports acquisition of motility and other changes, while capacitation occurs later in the female tract or under suitable laboratory conditions. These processes should be distinguished from one another when interpreting the sequence from germ-cell division to fertilising capacity. [8, 10]

13.3.2 Structure and transport of sperm

A spermatozoon has a head, connecting region and flagellum. The head contains the condensed haploid nucleus and is partly covered by the acrosome. The midpiece contains a

mitochondrial sheath, while the principal piece constitutes most of the tail. The axonemal apparatus and associated structures support flagellar movement; ATP for motility is supplied by metabolic pathways within the cell. [8, 9]

The transport route is: seminiferous tubules, straight tubules, rete testis, efferent ductules, epididymal duct, ductus deferens, ejaculatory duct and urethra. Obstruction at any point may impair sperm delivery even when testicular production continues. Semen comprises sperm together with fluid from the reproductive ducts and accessory glands; semen and sperm are therefore not interchangeable terms. [8, 9]

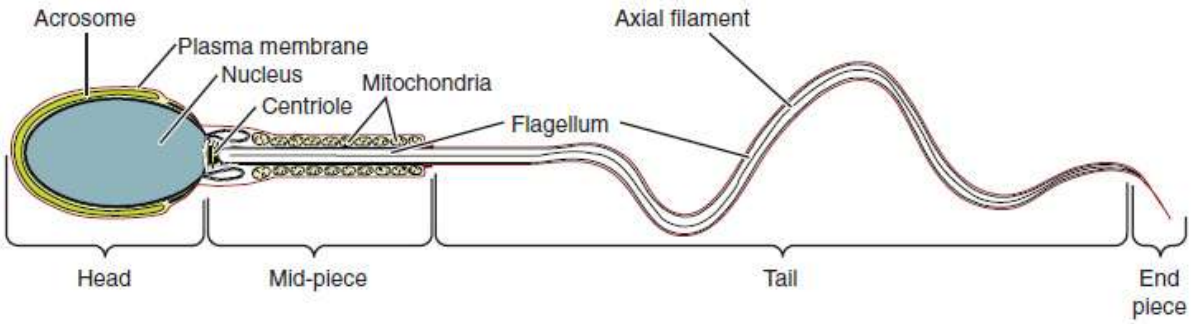


Figure 13.3. Structure of a spermatozoon showing the head, acrosome, midpiece and flagellum.

13.3.3 Hormonal control and ejaculation

Pulsatile gonadotropin-releasing hormone from the hypothalamus stimulates anterior pituitary secretion of luteinising hormone and follicle-stimulating hormone. Luteinising hormone acts on Leydig cells to promote testosterone synthesis. Follicle-stimulating hormone acts on Sertoli cells and, together with a high local testosterone concentration, supports spermatogenesis. Sertoli-cell inhibin B provides feedback chiefly on follicle-stimulating hormone secretion. [10, 11]

Testosterone supports reproductive-tract function, secondary sexual characteristics and feedback regulation of the hypothalamic–pituitary axis. Emission moves sperm and glandular secretions into the posterior urethra. Expulsion then involves coordinated contractions of urethral and perineal structures. Closure of the bladder neck helps prevent semen from entering the bladder. The anatomy of this sequence explains how neural injury or duct obstruction can alter ejaculation without necessarily eliminating hormone production. [10, 11]

13.4 Female internal reproductive organs

13.4.1 Overview and pelvic relations

The internal female reproductive organs are the ovaries, uterine tubes, uterus and vagina. The uterus occupies the central pelvis between the urinary bladder anteriorly and rectum posteriorly. The uterine tubes extend towards the ovaries on either side. The vagina passes inferiorly from the cervix to the vestibule. The ovaries are gonads, whereas the uterus and tubes provide specialised environments for reproductive transport and development. [2, 4]

The female urethra is a separate urinary passage and opens anterior to the vaginal opening. The reproductive tract is not a closed continuous tube at its upper end: each uterine tube opens into the peritoneal cavity near the ovary. This arrangement permits oocyte pickup but also creates a potential route by which infection may spread into the pelvis. [2, 4]

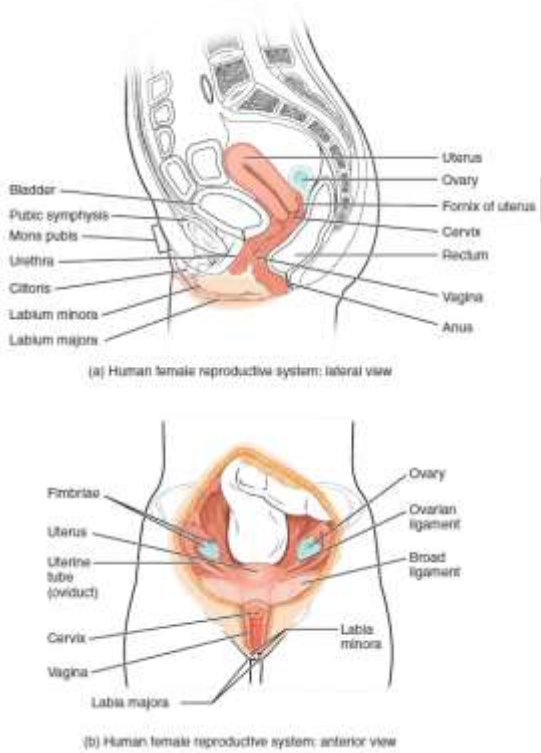


Figure 13.4. Female reproductive organs in sagittal and anterior views, showing pelvic relationships and the uterine cavity.

13.4.2 Ovaries and their attachments

Each ovary is an almond-shaped organ situated near the lateral pelvic wall. Its position varies with age, pregnancy and surrounding structures. The ovarian ligament connects the ovary to the uterus. The suspensory ligament of the ovary attaches it to the lateral pelvic wall and

contains ovarian vessels, nerves and lymphatics. The mesovarium is a short peritoneal fold connecting the ovary to the broad ligament. [1, 8]

The ovarian surface is covered by a simple epithelial layer, beneath which lies a connective-tissue tunica albuginea. The historical term germinal epithelium is misleading because this surface layer does not normally generate the oocytes. The cortex contains follicles at different developmental stages within ovarian stroma. The medulla contains larger blood vessels, lymphatics and nerves. Follicular activity makes ovarian structure change across the reproductive lifespan. [1, 8]

13.4.3 Follicles ovulation and corpus luteum

A primordial follicle contains a primary oocyte surrounded by a single layer of flattened follicular cells. During growth, these cells become cuboidal granulosa cells, proliferate and surround the oocyte with multiple layers. The zona pellucida develops around the oocyte. Surrounding stromal cells differentiate into theca layers, and fluid-filled spaces eventually combine to form an antrum. [8, 9]

In a mature follicle, the oocyte is supported by the cumulus oophorus and surrounded closely by the corona radiata. Ovulation releases a secondary oocyte with associated cells from the ovarian surface. The remaining follicular tissue becomes the corpus luteum, which secretes progesterone and oestrogens. Without continuing hormonal support it regresses and is replaced by a fibrous corpus albicans. Many follicles undergo atresia rather than ovulation. [8, 9]

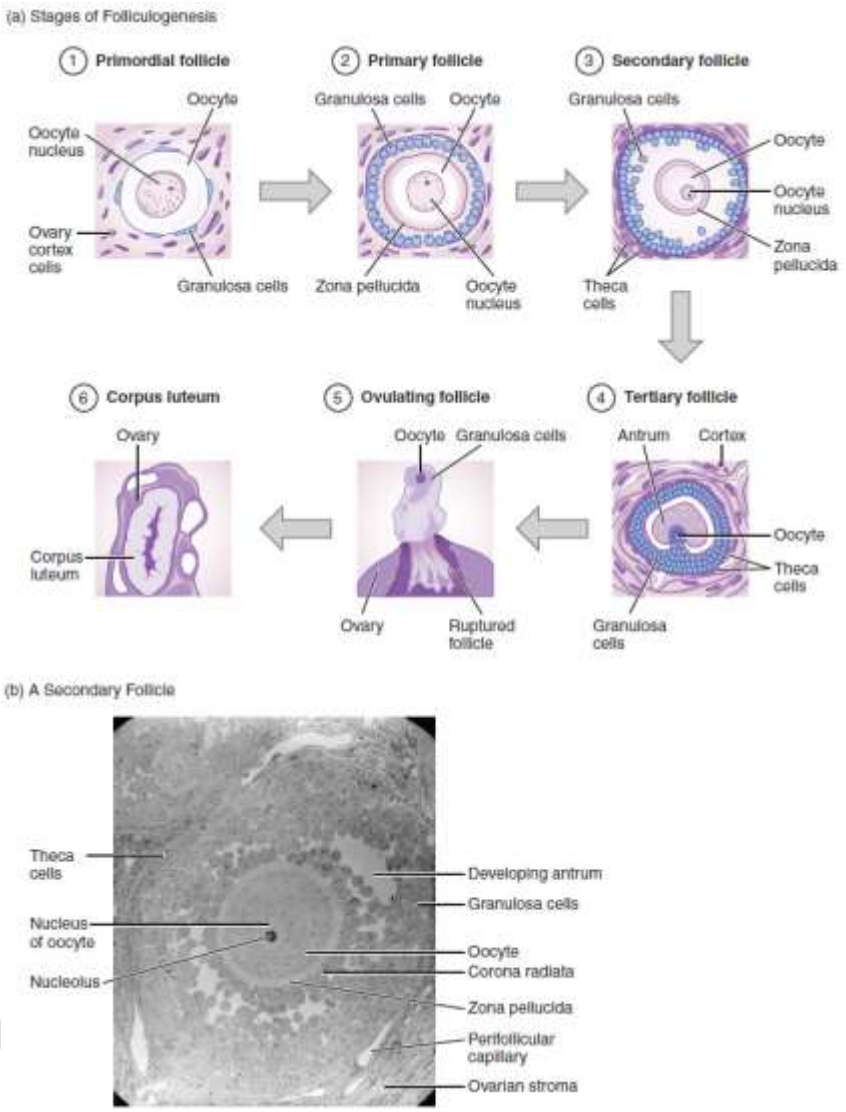


Figure 13.5. Ovarian follicular development, ovulation and formation of the corpus luteum.

13.4.4 Uterine tubes

The uterine or Fallopian tubes extend from the uterus towards the ovaries within the upper margin of the broad ligament. Each has an intramural uterine part, a narrow isthmus, a wider ampulla and a funnel-shaped infundibulum with fimbriae. The fimbriae help direct the released oocyte towards the tubal opening; there is no sealed connection between the ovary and tube. [2, 9]

The mucosa has branching folds lined by simple columnar epithelium with ciliated and secretory cells. Ciliary activity, secretions and smooth-muscle contractions contribute to gamete and embryo transport. Fertilisation usually occurs in the ampulla. The early embryo then travels towards the uterine cavity. Tubal scarring or impaired transport can disturb fertility and increase the likelihood of implantation outside the uterine cavity. [2, 9]

13.4.5 Uterus and its anatomical subdivisions

The uterus is a hollow muscular organ whose size changes with age, parity and pregnancy. The fundus projects above the openings of the uterine tubes. The body forms most of the organ, the isthmus is a narrowed transitional region, and the cervix forms the lower portion. The uterine cavity is approximately triangular in the coronal plane and communicates with the cervical canal below. [1, 2]

Anteversion describes forward inclination of the cervix relative to the vagina, while anteflexion describes forward bending of the body relative to the cervix. These positions are common, but other orientations can be normal. The anterior uterine surface is related to the bladder; posteriorly, the uterus is related to the rectouterine pouch and bowel. Peritoneal reflections create the vesicouterine and rectouterine pouches. [1, 2]

13.4.5.1 Layers of the uterine wall

The endometrium is the inner mucosal lining, consisting of surface epithelium, uterine glands and a vascular stroma. Its functional layer changes with the ovarian cycle and is shed during menstruation. The deeper basal layer persists and regenerates the functional layer. Straight arteries mainly supply the basal region, while spiral arteries supply the functional region. [8, 9]

The myometrium is the thick smooth-muscle layer that enlarges during pregnancy and generates contractions during labour. Muscle fibres surround vessels, helping compress them after placental separation. The outer covering is termed perimetrium where the uterus has a peritoneal serosa; non-peritoneal surfaces instead have connective-tissue adventitia. These layers differ in tissue structure and in their responses to hormonal signals. [8, 9]

13.4.5.2 Cervix and transformation zone

The cervix includes supravaginal and vaginal portions. Its canal extends from the internal os to the external os and contains mucus-secreting simple columnar epithelium. The ectocervix is covered mainly by non-keratinised stratified squamous epithelium. The meeting of these epithelia is the squamocolumnar junction, whose position changes with age and hormonal state. [9, 14]

The transformation zone is the region where columnar epithelium has been or is being replaced by squamous metaplasia. It is clinically important because many cervical precancerous lesions arise here. Cervical mucus changes during the cycle, becoming more favourable to sperm passage near ovulation. The cervical wall contains abundant connective tissue and differs from the more muscular uterine body. [9, 14]

13.4.6 Vagina and vaginal fornices

The vagina is a distensible fibromuscular canal extending from the cervix to the vestibule. The projecting vaginal portion of the cervix creates anterior, posterior and lateral fornices. The posterior fornix is the deepest and lies close to the rectouterine pouch. Anteriorly, the vagina is related to the bladder and urethra; posteriorly, it is related to the rectum and perineal body. [2, 9]

The mucosa is lined by non-keratinised stratified squamous epithelium and is arranged in rugae. The wall also contains smooth muscle and an outer connective-tissue layer. The vagina has no intrinsic glands; lubrication comes from transudation and secretions from neighbouring structures. Oestrogen-dependent epithelial glycogen and the vaginal microbiota contribute to the typically acidic environment during the reproductive years, although this varies with age and circumstances. [2, 9]

13.4.7 Pelvic support and peritoneal folds

The pelvic diaphragm, particularly levator ani, and the endopelvic connective tissues provide major support for the reproductive organs. The cardinal and uterosacral ligaments contribute to support of the cervix and upper vagina. The perineal body is a central fibromuscular attachment point for several perineal muscles and contributes to distal pelvic support. [2, 3]

The broad ligament is a double layer of peritoneum associated with the uterus, tubes and ovaries; it is not the principal load-bearing support of the uterus. Its subdivisions include mesometrium, mesosalpinx and mesovarium. The round ligament travels through the inguinal canal to the labium majus and helps maintain uterine orientation. Damage to muscular and fascial supports can contribute to pelvic organ prolapse. [2, 3]

13.4.8 Blood supply lymphatics and innervation

Ovarian arteries arise from the abdominal aorta. The uterine artery usually arises from the anterior division of the internal iliac artery and anastomoses with ovarian branches. Near the cervix, it passes above the ureter, an important surgical relationship. Vaginal and internal pudendal branches contribute to the lower tract. The right ovarian vein generally enters the inferior vena cava and the left enters the left renal vein. [1, 2]

Ovarian lymph drains mainly to para-aortic nodes. Uterine drainage follows several routes: the fundus can drain along ovarian vessels and via the round ligament, while body and cervical regions drain largely to pelvic nodes. Lower vaginal and vulval drainage reaches inguinal nodes. Autonomic fibres reach internal organs through pelvic plexuses; pudendal branches provide much of the somatic sensation to the external genitalia and lower vaginal region. [1, 2]

13.5 External genitalia perineum and mammary glands

13.5.1 Vulva and vestibular structures

The vulva includes the mons pubis, labia majora, labia minora, clitoris and vestibule. The mons pubis is a fatty prominence over the pubic symphysis. The labia majora are skin folds containing adipose tissue, while the labia minora are thinner folds medial to them. Appearance, pigmentation and symmetry vary widely and should not be treated as evidence of disease by themselves. [2, 4]

The vestibule contains the external urethral and vaginal openings. Greater vestibular glands open near the posterior aspect of the vaginal opening and contribute mucus. Paraurethral glands lie near the urethra. A hymenal rim may border the vaginal opening, but its shape and degree of persistence vary; its appearance cannot establish a person's sexual history. [2, 4]

The clitoris includes a glans, body and paired crura and is composed largely of erectile tissue with a rich sensory supply. The vestibular bulbs are paired masses of erectile tissue beside the vaginal opening. These structures are related developmentally to male erectile tissues, but the female urethra does not pass through the clitoris. [2, 4]

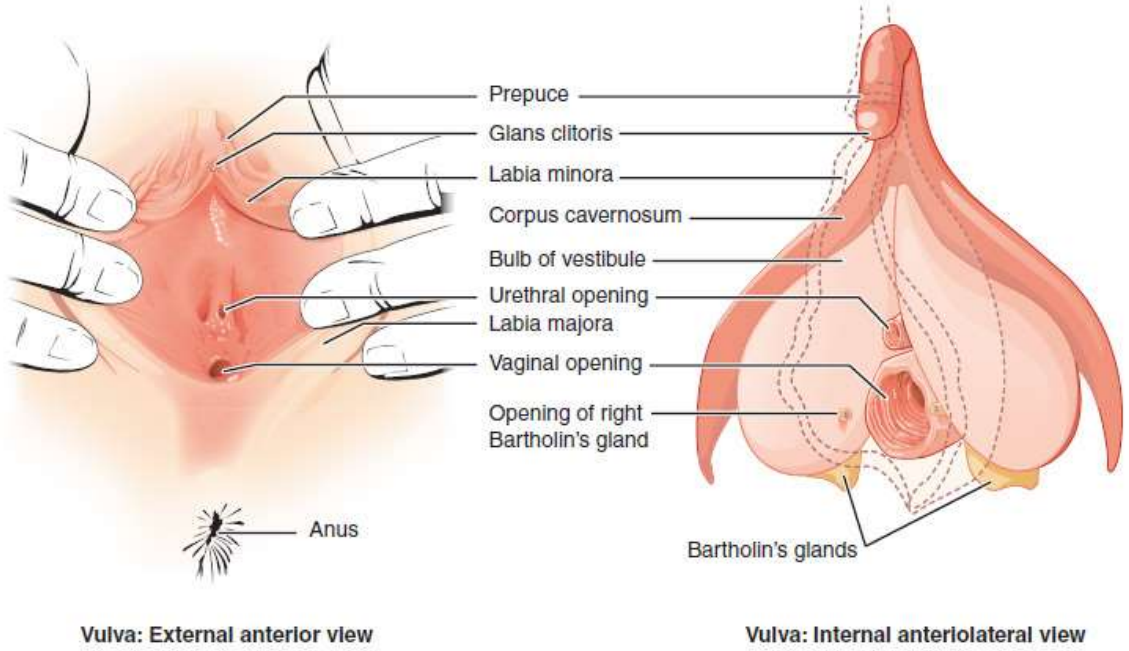


Figure 13.6. External female genitalia and associated erectile structures, with labelled vestibular openings.

13.5.2 Perineum and pelvic floor

The perineum lies inferior to the pelvic diaphragm and is bounded by the pubic symphysis, ischial tuberosities and coccyx. A line between the ischial tuberosities divides it into an

anterior urogenital triangle and a posterior anal triangle. The urogenital triangle contains external genital structures and superficial and deep perineal regions. The anal triangle contains the anal opening and ischioanal fossae. [2, 5]

The bulbospongiosus, ischiocavernosus and transverse perineal muscles participate in support and sexual function. The perineal body lies between the vagina and anus in females and between the bulb of the penis and anus in males. Levator ani forms much of the pelvic floor, supports the pelvic viscera and contributes to continence. Childbirth injury or chronic increases in abdominal pressure may compromise these support mechanisms. [2, 5]

13.5.3 Mammary gland anatomy and histology

The mammary glands are modified skin glands situated within the superficial fascia of the anterior chest wall. Breast tissue overlies mainly pectoralis major and can extend towards the axilla. Connective-tissue septa, commonly called suspensory ligaments, attach the skin to deeper fascia. The nipple contains duct openings, while the surrounding areola contains specialised glands that help protect its surface. [2, 9, 10]

Glandular lobes are subdivided into lobules containing secretory alveoli and small ducts. Ducts converge towards the nipple. During pregnancy, glandular tissue proliferates; during lactation, alveolar epithelial cells secrete milk and surrounding myoepithelial cells help expel it. Prolactin supports milk synthesis, whereas oxytocin causes milk ejection. Adipose tissue contributes substantially to breast size but does not itself produce milk. [2, 9, 10]

Arterial supply comes from branches including internal thoracic, lateral thoracic and intercostal vessels. Most lymph drains towards axillary nodes, with additional drainage to parasternal and other pathways. These connections are central to understanding the spread of breast malignancy. Breast tissue is present in males as well, although it is usually much less developed. [2, 9, 10]

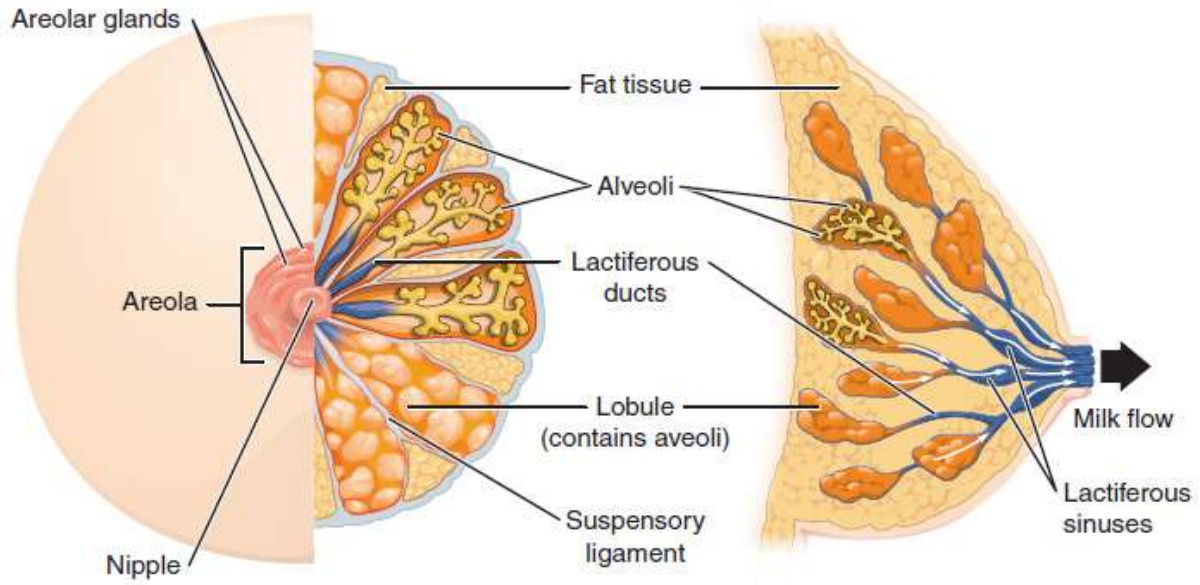


Figure 13.7. Mammary gland showing glandular tissue, ducts, nipple and supporting structures.

13.6 Female reproductive function and developmental anatomy

13.6.1 Oogenesis and meiotic arrest

Oogenesis begins before birth. Oogonia proliferate and enter meiosis to become primary oocytes, which remain arrested in prophase I within ovarian follicles. From puberty onwards, selected follicles develop during reproductive cycles. Shortly before ovulation, the selected primary oocyte normally completes meiosis I to produce a secondary oocyte and a first polar body. [8, 12]

The secondary oocyte begins meiosis II and arrests at metaphase II. Completion normally follows fertilisation, producing another polar body. Unequal cytoplasmic division preserves most of the cytoplasm in one large reproductive cell. Unlike continuous sperm production, the ovarian follicle pool is finite and progressively declines through recruitment and atresia. The terms follicle and oocyte describe different structures: a follicle includes both the germ cell and its surrounding somatic cells. [8, 12]

13.6.2 Ovarian and uterine cycles

The ovarian cycle includes a follicular phase, ovulation and a luteal phase. Follicle-stimulating hormone supports follicular growth, and rising oestradiol promotes endometrial proliferation. Sustained high oestradiol near midcycle can generate positive feedback and the luteinising hormone surge that triggers ovulation. After ovulation, the corpus luteum produces progesterone together with oestrogens. [10, 11]

The uterine cycle includes menstrual, proliferative and secretory phases. Progesterone transforms the proliferative endometrium into a secretory lining suited to implantation. If pregnancy does not occur, corpus luteum regression and declining steroid levels lead to breakdown of the functional endometrium. Cycle length varies, and ovulation should not be assumed to occur on day 14 in every individual. Cycle phase is essential context for both histology and reproductive hormone interpretation. [10, 11]

Table 13.2 Related ovarian and endometrial changes [10, 11]

Ovarian event	Predominant hormonal pattern	Endometrial response
Early follicular phase	Low ovarian steroids; FSH supports recruitment	Menstruation followed by early regeneration
Later follicular phase	Increasing oestradiol	Proliferation of glands and stroma
Ovulation	LH surge following sustained high oestradiol	Transition towards postovulatory conditions
Luteal phase	Progesterone with oestrogens from corpus luteum	Secretory glands and stromal changes
Luteal regression without pregnancy	Falling progesterone and oestrogens	Breakdown of functional layer

13.6.3 Fertilisation implantation and placental interface

Following ovulation, the secondary oocyte enters the uterine tube. Sperm must undergo capacitation before successfully interacting with the oocyte coverings and membrane. Fertilisation usually occurs in the ampulla and involves fusion of the gametes, completion of oocyte meiosis and formation of the zygote. Cleavage divisions occur as the conceptus moves towards the uterus. [10, 13]

The blastocyst normally begins implantation into receptive endometrium several days after fertilisation. Trophoblastic tissue contributes to the placenta and produces human chorionic gonadotropin, which initially maintains the corpus luteum. The placenta later becomes a major endocrine organ and the interface for maternal–fetal exchange. Maternal and fetal blood normally remain in separate circulations, exchanging substances across placental tissues rather than freely mixing. [10, 13]

13.6.4 Embryological origins and homologous structures

Early embryos have an indifferent gonadal stage and both mesonephric and paramesonephric duct systems. In typical testicular differentiation, Sertoli-cell anti-Müllerian hormone

promotes regression of the paramesonephric ducts, while testosterone supports mesonephric duct derivatives such as the epididymis, ductus deferens and seminal vesicles. Dihydrotestosterone contributes importantly to development of the prostate and male external genitalia. [12, 13]

In typical female development, the paramesonephric ducts form the uterine tubes, uterus, cervix and contribute to the upper vagina; the urogenital sinus contributes to the lower vagina and vestibular region. Fusion and canalisation of the duct systems are necessary for normal uterine development. The shared origins of external structures explain anatomical homologies. Variations in sex development may involve chromosomes, gonadal differentiation, hormone production or tissue responsiveness. [12, 13]

Table 13.3 Selected developmental homologies [12, 13]

Shared precursor	Typical male derivative	Typical female derivative
Indifferent gonad	Testis	Ovary
Genital tubercle	Penis	Clitoris
Urogenital folds	Ventral penile structures and enclosing urethral folds	Labia minora
Labioscrotal swellings	Scrotum	Labia majora
Comparable urogenital sinus gland buds	Bulbourethral glands	Greater vestibular glands

13.6.5 Puberty reproductive ageing and menopause

Puberty involves maturation of hypothalamic–pituitary–gonadal signalling and development of secondary sexual characteristics. Testicular enlargement and subsequent sperm production characterise male reproductive maturation. Female puberty includes breast development, maturation of the reproductive tract and eventually menarche, although early cycles may not consistently include ovulation. [10, 11]

With reproductive ageing, the ovarian follicle reserve declines and cycles eventually cease. Natural menopause is recognised retrospectively after 12 months without menstruation when another cause does not explain the absence. Reduced ovarian steroid production is associated with changes in the endometrium and urogenital tissues. Male reproductive ageing is more gradual and variable; sperm production may persist even as endocrine function and fertility change. [10, 11]

13.7 Comparative anatomy and clinical correlations

13.7.1 Comparison of male and female systems

Both systems contain gonads, hormone-responsive tissues, transport pathways and erectile structures. Their arrangements reflect different roles in reproduction. Male ducts deliver numerous small motile gametes, while the female tract receives sperm and supports the development of the conceptus. Distinguishing these functions helps explain why anatomically related structures have different adult forms. [6, 7]

Table 13.4 Comparison of reproductive systems [6, 7]

Feature	Male	Female
Gonad	Testis	Ovary
Germ-cell production	Spermatogenesis from puberty; many sperm	Oogenesis begins before birth; finite follicle pool
Transport pathway	Epididymis, ductus deferens, ejaculatory duct, urethra	Uterine tube, uterine cavity, cervix and vagina
Gamete	Small, flagellated spermatozoon	Large secondary oocyte at ovulation
Principal gonadal steroids	Testosterone	Oestrogens and progesterone
Urinary relationship	Urethra shared with semen pathway	Urethra separate from vagina
Gestation and lactation	No specialised gestational organ	Uterus supports gestation; breasts support lactation

13.7.2 Testicular and prostatic conditions

Cryptorchidism is failure of a testis to reach its usual scrotal position. Its anatomical basis relates to testicular descent and the inguinal route. A hydrocele is fluid accumulation within the tunica vaginalis, whereas a varicocele is dilatation of the pampiniform plexus. Testicular torsion twists the spermatic cord and compromises blood supply; sudden severe scrotal pain requires urgent clinical assessment because delay can threaten viability. [2, 14]

Benign prostatic enlargement commonly involves the transition zone around the urethra and may obstruct urinary flow. Many prostatic carcinomas arise in the peripheral zone. These tendencies are anatomical patterns rather than diagnostic rules. Prostate-specific antigen is not cancer-specific, and an abnormal result must be interpreted with clinical information and appropriate investigation. [2, 14]

13.7.3 Tubal uterine and ovarian conditions

Pelvic inflammatory disease may damage the uterine tubes and produce scarring that impairs transport. An ectopic pregnancy is implantation outside the normal endometrial cavity, most often in a uterine tube; rupture can cause serious internal bleeding. Endometriosis involves

endometrial-like tissue outside the uterus, while adenomyosis involves endometrial glands and stroma within the myometrium. [2, 14]

Uterine leiomyomas are benign smooth-muscle tumours whose effects depend partly on location: submucosal lesions distort the cavity, intramural lesions lie within the wall and subserosal lesions project externally. Ovarian cysts represent a broad category rather than a single diagnosis. Pelvic organ prolapse reflects failure of muscular and connective-tissue support, illustrating that reproductive symptoms can arise from surrounding structures as well as the organs themselves. [2, 14]

13.7.4 Histology and laboratory relevance

Anatomical knowledge guides specimen identification, processing and interpretation. In testicular sections, seminiferous tubules must be distinguished from interstitial tissue. In ovarian sections, follicles, corpora lutea and stromal tissue vary with age and cycle phase. Endometrial glands and stroma change across the cycle, so a histological description should be considered alongside clinical timing and hormone exposure. [9, 14]

Semen analysis evaluates features such as volume, sperm concentration, motility and morphology. Collection completeness, abstinence interval, transport conditions and time to examination affect interpretation, and the laboratory should follow its validated protocol. A single semen result does not by itself establish fertility or infertility. Reproductive hormone results likewise require the relevant age, cycle stage, medicines and clinical context. [10, 14]

Cervical cytology examines cellular morphology, whereas human papillomavirus testing identifies viral targets; they answer related but different questions. Correct sampling of the relevant cervical region, prompt preservation and unambiguous patient identification are essential. Pregnancy testing detects human chorionic gonadotropin but does not by itself establish pregnancy location or viability. Tissue diagnosis and biochemical testing complement, rather than replace, clinical assessment and imaging. [9, 14]

13.8 Chapter summary and key terms

13.8.1 Chapter summary

The testes produce sperm in seminiferous tubules and testosterone in interstitial Leydig cells. Sperm pass through the rete testis, efferent ductules and epididymis before entering the ductus deferens, ejaculatory ducts and urethra. Accessory glands provide much of the seminal fluid. Scrotal temperature regulation, an intact duct system and coordinated autonomic and somatic activity support male reproductive function. [6, 7]

The ovaries contain follicles and secrete reproductive hormones. Uterine tubes collect the ovulated oocyte and usually provide the site of fertilisation. The uterus has a cyclically changing endometrium, a muscular myometrium and a cervix that communicates with the vagina. Pelvic muscles, fascial condensations and ligaments maintain organ support. The vulva contains protective and erectile structures, and mammary glands support postnatal nutrition. [6, 7]

Gross anatomy, histology, development and endocrine regulation must be studied together. Their relationships explain normal transport, tissue changes across the lifespan, patterns of disease and the interpretation of reproductive laboratory specimens. Anatomical variations and differences in cycle phase are part of the context in which a finding is assessed. [6, 7]

13.8.2 Key terms

Gonad: an organ producing gametes and reproductive hormones. Seminiferous tubule: the testicular tubule in which sperm develop. Sertoli cell: a supporting cell of the seminiferous

epithelium. Leydig cell: a testosterone-producing interstitial cell. Epididymis: a coiled duct involved in sperm maturation and storage. Spermiogenesis: remodelling of a spermatid into a spermatozoon. [6, 8]

Follicle: an oocyte with its surrounding supporting cells. Ovulation: release of a secondary oocyte from an ovarian follicle. Corpus luteum: a temporary endocrine structure formed after ovulation. Endometrium: the uterine mucosa. Myometrium: the uterine smooth-muscle layer. Transformation zone: the cervical region associated with replacement of columnar by squamous epithelium. Vulva: the collective external female genital structures. Perineal body: a central fibromuscular attachment point in the perineum. [6, 8]

References

[1] Standring S, editor. Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice. 42nd ed. Elsevier.

[2] Dalley AF II, Agur AMR. Moore's Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 9th ed. Wolters Kluwer.

[3] Splittgerber R. Snell's Clinical Anatomy by Regions. 10th ed. Wolters Kluwer.

[4] Drake RL, Vogl AW, Mitchell AWM. Gray's Anatomy for Students. 4th ed. Elsevier.

[5] Netter FH. Netter Atlas of Human Anatomy: A Systems Approach. 8th ed. Elsevier.

[6] Tortora GJ, Derrickson B. Principles of Anatomy and Physiology. 16th ed. Wiley.

[7] Marieb EN, Hoehn K. Human Anatomy & Physiology. 11th ed. Pearson.

[8] Mescher AL. Junqueira's Basic Histology: Text and Atlas. 17th ed. McGraw Hill.

[9] Pawlina W, Ross MH. Histology: A Text and Atlas: With Correlated Cell and Molecular Biology. 8th ed. Wolters Kluwer.

[10] Hall JE, Hall ME. Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology. 14th ed. Elsevier.

[11] Barrett KE, Barman SM, Brooks HL, Yuan JX-J. Ganong's Review of Medical Physiology. 26th ed. McGraw Hill.

[12] Sadler TW. Langman's Medical Embryology. 14th ed. Wolters Kluwer.

[13] Moore KL, Persaud TVN, Torchia MG. The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology. 11th ed. Elsevier.

[14] Kumar V, Abbas AK, Aster JC, editors. Robbins & Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease. 10th ed. Elsevier.

“FROM THE MICROSCOPIC WONDERS OF CELLS TO THE COMPLEX HARMONY OF ORGAN SYSTEMS, UNDERSTANDING THE HUMAN BODY UNLOCKS THE SCIENCE OF LIFE”